Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia

management of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia in children and young people younger than 16 years in primary and secondary care

National Collaborating Centre for Women’s and Children’s Health

Commissioned by the National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence

Draft for consultation 22 October to 17 December 2009
Appendix H – Meta-analyses (Forest plots) conducted as part of guideline development ...................... 200
Appendix I – Cost effectiveness of polymerase chain reaction for diagnosis in suspected meningococcal
disease .....................................................................................................................................................210
Appendix J – Cost effectiveness of antibiotics for treatment of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal
disease ..................................................................................................................................................... 220
Appendix K – Cost effectiveness of crystalloid versus colloid intravenous fluid for resuscitation in
suspected meningococcal septicaemia .....................................................................................................229
Appendix L – Cost effectiveness of complement deficiency screening in survivors of meningococcal
disease ..................................................................................................................................................... 233

The care pathway and appendices E–G are in separate files.
Guideline development

Guideline development group membership and acknowledgements

Guideline development group members

Angela Cloke  Patient and carer representative
Linda Glennie  Head of Research and Medical Information, Meningitis Research Foundation
Caroline Haines  Consultant Nurse Paediatric Intensive and High Dependency Care, University Hospitals Bristol NHS Foundation Trust
Paul Heath  Reader in Paediatric Infectious Diseases and Honorary Consultant, St George’s, University of London
J Simon Kroll  Professor of Paediatrics and Molecular Infectious Diseases, Imperial College London and Honorary Consultant in Paediatrics, St Mary’s Hospital, Imperial College Healthcare NHS Trust, London
Ian Maconochie  Consultant in Paediatric Accident and Emergency Medicine, St Mary’s Hospital, Imperial College Healthcare NHS Trust, London and Honorary Clinical Senior Lecturer, Imperial College, London
Sheila McQueen  Principal Lecturer in Child Health, Northumbria University, Newcastle upon Tyne
Philip Monk  Consultant in Health Protection, Health Protection Agency, East Midlands (South) Health Protection Team
Simon Nadel  Consultant in Paediatric Intensive Care, St Mary’s Hospital, London and Clinical Director of Women’s and Children’s Directorate, St Mary’s NHS Trust
Nelly Ninis  Consultant in General Paediatrics, St Mary’s Hospital, London
Andrew Pollard  Professor of Paediatric Infection and Immunity, University of Oxford and Honorary Consultant Paediatrician, Oxford Children’s Hospital (GDG Chair)
Martin Richardson  Consultant Paediatrician, Peterborough and Stamford Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust
Matthew Thompson  Senior Clinical Scientist, University of Oxford and General Practitioner, Oxford
Alistair Thomson  Consultant Paediatrician, Mid Cheshire Hospitals NHS Foundation Trust, Crewe

National Collaborating Centre for Women’s and Children’s Health staff

Shannon Amoils  Research Fellow (to January 2009)
Jay Banerjee  Clinical Co-Director (to March 2009)
Paula Broughton-Palmer  Senior Work Programme Coordinator (to October 2008)
Shona Burman-Roy  Research Fellow (from February to March 2009)
Andrew Clegg  Information Scientist (to May 2008)
Ella Fields  Research Assistant (from June 2009)
Rupert Franklin  Project Manager (from February 2009)
Paul Jacklin  Senior Health Economist
Rosalind Lai  Information Scientist (from December 2008)
Moira Mugglestone  Director of Guideline Development (from April 2009)
Maria Pella  Work Programme Coordinator (from October 2008 to March 2009)
Julia Saperia  Research Fellow (from June to August 2009)
Roz Ullman  Senior Research Fellow (to June 2009)
Danielle Worster  Information Scientist (from May to December 2008)

External Advisers
James Stuart  Visiting Professor of Epidemiology, University of Bristol
David Turner  Clinical Associate Professor in Microbiology, University of Nottingham
and Honorary Consultant Microbiologist, Nottingham University Hospitals NHS Trust

Acknowledgements
We thank:

- Malcolm Guiver, Health Protection Agency North West, Manchester for providing data on costs associated with polymerase chain reaction
- Robin Harbour, Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network, Edinburgh for providing details of search terms used in the SIGN guideline on management of invasive meningococcal disease in children and young people
- Paul Holloway, Imperial College Healthcare Trust, St Mary's Hospital, London for providing data on costs associated with complement deficiency screening
- Lise Nigrovic, Children's Hospital Boston, USA, for providing data on cerebrospinal fluid white cell count data
- Mary Ramsay, Centre for Infections, Health Protection Agency, London for providing data on incidence of and mortality from bacterial meningitis caused by Neisseria meningitidis and Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib)
- Iain Gillespie, Environmental and Enteric Diseases Department and Department of Healthcare Associated Infection and Antimicrobial Resistance, Centre for Infections, Health Protection Agency, London for providing data on incidence of Listeria monocytogenes meningitis
- Mark Lillie, Department of Healthcare Associated Infection and Antimicrobial Resistance, Centre for Infections, Health Protection Agency, London for providing data on antibiotic resistance in pneumococci

[Other acknowledgements to be completed before final publication.]
1 Summary of recommendations and care pathway

1.1 Key priorities for implementation

Symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia

Use tables 3.2 and 3.3 to identify children and young people who may have bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia. Non-specific signs, such as fever and vomiting, are common in both conditions.

Table 3.2 Symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom/sign</th>
<th>Children under 2 years (including neonates)</th>
<th>Children and young people 2 years or older</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Early</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold hands and feet</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irritability</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg pain</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lethargy</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory symptoms</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Late</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulging fontanelle</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>Not relevant at this age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical shock</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confusion</td>
<td>Not relevant at this age</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convulsions/seizures</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal neurological signs</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impaired consciousness</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neck stiffness</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petechial rash</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
<td>++ (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpuric rash</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photophobia</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid deterioration in condition</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ prevalence less than 25%
++ prevalence 25–50%
+++ prevalence more than 50%

1 The prevalence figures are derived from studies reviewed for the guideline. See sections 3.1 and 3.2 for details.
Table 3.3 Symptoms and signs of meningococcal septicaemia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom/sign</th>
<th>Children under 2 years (including neonates)</th>
<th>Children and young people 2 years or older</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Early</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold hands and feet</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irritability</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg pain</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lethargy</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory symptoms</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Late</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulging fontanelle</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>Not relevant at this age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical shock</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confusion</td>
<td>Not relevant at this age</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convulsions/seizures</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal neurological signs</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impaired consciousness</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neck stiffness</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petechial rash</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpuric rash</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photophobia</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid deterioration in condition</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ prevalence less than 25%
++ prevalence 25–50%
+++ prevalence more than 50%
NK prevalence not known

Management in the pre-hospital setting
Transfer children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia to secondary care as an emergency by telephoning 999.

Diagnosis in secondary care
Non-specific tests for meningococcal disease
Do a full blood count, C-reactive protein (CRP), coagulation, blood culture, polymerase chain reaction (PCR), blood gas and glucose for children and young people with an unexplained petechial rash and fever (or history of fever) and any of the following:

- spreading rash
- purpura
- signs of bacterial meningitis (see table 3.2)
- signs of meningococcal septicaemia (see table 3.3)
looking unwell.

These children and young people should be considered to be at high risk of having meningococcal disease and intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\(^2\) should be started immediately.

**Polymerase chain reaction**

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis (including meningococcal meningitis) submit blood and CSF samples for PCR testing to confirm the diagnosis.

**Contraindications to lumbar puncture**

In children and young people aged 28 days or older with suspected bacterial meningitis, perform a lumbar puncture unless any of the following contraindications are present:

- signs suggesting raised intracranial pressure
  - reduced level of consciousness (Glasgow Coma Score less than 9)
  - relative bradycardia and hypertension
  - focal neurological signs
  - abnormal posture
  - unequal, dilated or poorly responsive pupils
  - papilloedema
  - abnormal doll’s eye movements
- uncorrected shock (tachycardia and poor peripheral perfusion and/or hypotension)
- extensive or extending purpura
- after convulsions
  - within 30 minutes of a convulsive seizure lasting 30 minutes or less
  - following a prolonged convulsive seizure (lasting more than 30 minutes)
  - following a tonic seizure
- coagulation abnormalities
  - clotting study results (if obtained) outside the normal range
  - platelet count below 100 x 10\(^9\)/litre
  - receiving anticoagulant therapy
- local superficial infection at potential lumbar puncture site
- respiratory insufficiency (for children and young people in whom lumbar puncture has a high likelihood of resulting in respiratory failure).

**Management in secondary care**

**Fluids for bacterial meningitis**

Do not restrict fluids in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis unless there are signs of raised intracranial pressure or evidence of increased antidiuretic hormone secretion.

**Intravenous fluid resuscitation**

In children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia:

---

\(^2\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.
if there are signs of shock give an immediate fluid bolus of 20ml/kg sodium chloride 0.9% over 5–10 minutes. Give the fluid intravenously or via an intraosseous route and reassess the child or young person immediately afterwards.

if despite the initial 20ml/kg sodium chloride 0.9% bolus the signs of shock persist, immediately give a second bolus of 20ml/kg of intravenous or intraosseous sodium chloride 0.9% or human albumin 4.5% solution over 5–10 minutes.

if following two bolus infusions (total 40ml/kg) the signs of shock persist:
  
  - immediately give a third bolus 20ml/kg of intravenous or intraosseous sodium chloride 0.9% or human albumin 4.5% solution over 5–10 minutes
  - call for on-site anaesthetic assistance for urgent tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation
  - start treatment with vasoactive drugs
  - be aware that some children and young people may require large volumes of fluid over a short period of time to restore their circulating volume and consider giving further fluid boluses at 20ml/kg of intravenous or intraosseous sodium chloride 0.9% or human albumin 4.5% solution over 5–10 minutes based on clinical signs and appropriate laboratory investigations.
  - discuss further management with a paediatric intensivist.

Retrieval and transfer to tertiary care

Healthcare professionals involved in the treatment of seriously ill children and young people should be trained in the recognition and management of meningococcal disease.

Long-term management

Children and young people who have had bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia should be reviewed by a paediatrician with the results of their hearing test 4-6 weeks after discharge from hospital to discuss morbidities associated with their condition and offered referral to appropriate services. The following morbidities should be specifically considered:

- hearing loss
- orthopaedic complications (damage to bones and joints)
- skin complications (including scarring from necrosis)
- psychosocial problems
- neurological and developmental problems
- renal failure.

1.2 Recommendations

Chapter 3 Symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia

Use tables 3.2 and 3.3 to identify children and young people who may have bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia. Non-specific signs, such as fever and vomiting, are common in both conditions.

Table 3.2 Symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis

---

3 The prevalence figures are derived from studies reviewed for the guideline. See sections 3.1 and 3.2 for details.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom/sign</th>
<th>Children under 2 years (including neonates)</th>
<th>Children and young people 2 years or older</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Early</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold hands and feet</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irritability</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg pain</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lethargy</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory symptoms</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Late</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulging fontanelle</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>Not relevant at this age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical shock</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confusion</td>
<td>Not relevant at this age</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convulsions/seizures</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal neurological signs</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impaired consciousness</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neck stiffness</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petechial rash</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
<td>++ (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpuric rash</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photophobia</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid deterioration in condition</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ prevalence less than 25%
++ prevalence 25–50%
+++ prevalence more than 50%
NK prevalence not known

Table 3.3 Symptoms and signs of meningococcal septicaemia
| Clinical shock | ++ | ++ |
| Confusion | Not relevant at this age | ++ |
| Convulsions/seizures | + | + |
| Focal neurological signs | NK | NK |
| Impaired consciousness | ++ | +++ |
| Neck stiffness | + | ++ |
| Petechial rash | ++ | ++ |
| Purpuric rash | + | + |
| Photophobia | + | + |
| Rapid deterioration in condition | +++ | +++ |

+ prevalence less than 25%
++ prevalence 25–50%
+++ prevalence more than 50%
NK prevalence not known

Be aware that classical signs of meningitis (neck stiffness, bulging fontanelle, high-pitched cry) are often absent in infants with bacterial meningitis (This recommendation is from ‘Feverish illness in children’ [NICE clinical guideline 47]).

Be aware that children and young people with bacterial meningitis commonly present with non-specific signs including fever, vomiting, respiratory symptoms and irritability. Some children with bacterial meningitis will present with seizures (see table 2 in ‘Feverish illness in children’ [NICE clinical guideline 47]).

Healthcare professionals should consider other non-specific features of the child’s or young person’s presentation, such as the level of parental concern (particularly compared with previous illness in the child or young person or their family), how quickly the illness is progressing, and clinical judgement of the overall severity of the child’s or young person’s illness.

Remain alert to the possibility of meningococcal disease when assessing children or young people with acute febrile illness.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis undertake and record physiological observations of heart rate, respiratory rate, SpO₂, blood pressure, temperature and neurological assessment (for example the Alert, Voice, Pain, Unresponsive [AVPU] scale) at least hourly.

Chapter 4 Management in the pre-hospital setting

Transfer children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia to secondary care as an emergency by telephoning 999.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia, give parenteral antibiotics at the earliest opportunity, either in primary or secondary care.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia, do not give parenteral antibiotics if this will delay urgent transfer to hospital.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia, if antibiotics are administered before admission to hospital, give intramuscular benzylpenicillin (children under 1 year 300 mg, children 1–9 years 600 mg, children and young people 10 years and over 1.2 g).

Do not give benzylpenicillin or any other antibiotic before admission to hospital to children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia who have a history of severe allergy to penicillins or cephalosporins (such as collapse, loss of consciousness, difficulty in breathing or rash).

---

4 The dosages given in the recommendation are consistent with the SPCs for benzylpenicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 11 of 244
In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia who have a history of intolerance to penicillins or cephalosporins (such as diarrhoea or vomiting) give parenteral benzylpenicillin.

Chapter 5 Diagnosis in secondary care

Non-specific tests for meningococcal disease

Perform a very careful examination for signs of underlying meningitis or septicaemia in children and young people presenting with petechial rashes (see tables 3.2 and 3.3).

Give intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\(^5\) (see ‘Empiric Antibiotics’ on page 15) immediately if any of the following occur at any point during the assessment of a child or young person:

- a rash becomes purpuric
- petechiae start to spread
- the child or young person looks unwell
- signs of meningitis or septicaemia are found (see tables 3.2 and 3.3).

Do a full blood count, C-reactive protein (CRP), coagulation, blood culture, polymerase chain reaction (PCR), blood gas and glucose for children and young people with an unexplained petechial rash and fever (or history of fever) and any of the following:

- spreading rash
- purpura
- signs of bacterial meningitis (see table 3.2)
- signs of meningococcal septicaemia (see table 3.3)
- looking unwell.

These children and young people should be considered to be at high risk of having meningococcal disease and intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\(^6\) should be started immediately (see ‘Empiric Antibiotics’ on page 15) i.

Do a full blood count and CRP (with coagulation, blood culture, PCR, and blood gas if the blood sample is sufficient) on presentation for children and young people with a non-spreading petechial rash and fever (or history of fever) who do not have any purpura, signs of meningitis or septicaemia (see tables 3.2 and 3.3) and who do not look unwell.

- Children and young people with a raised CRP and/or raised white blood cell count (especially if the neutrophil count is raised) should be considered to be at increased risk of having meningococcal disease and treated with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily) immediately (see ‘Empiric Antibiotics’ on page 16) i.

- Children and young people with a normal CRP and normal white blood cell count are less likely to have meningococcal disease.

  o Assess clinical progress [vital signs [respiratory rate, heart rate, blood pressure, capillary refill time, conscious level, temperature and saturations] and carry out observations [at least hourly]] over the next 4–6 hours to determine the likelihood of the child or young person having meningococcal disease.

  o If doubt remains, treat with antibiotics and admit to hospital.

---

\(^5\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^6\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.
If the child or young person is assessed as being at low risk of meningococcal disease and is discharged after initial observation advise parents or carers to return to hospital if the child or young person looks unwell.

Consider full blood count and clotting studies for children and young people presenting with a non-spreading petechial rash, which may be present for more than 24 hours, without a fever (or any history of fever) and who do not look unwell. These children and young people are unlikely to have meningococcal disease and other differential diagnoses should be considered.

In children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia, anticipate, monitor and correct the following metabolic disturbances using local or national protocols:

- hypoglycaemia
- acidosis
- hypokalaemia
- hypocalcaemia
- hypomagnesaemia
- anaemia
- coagulopathy.

Non-specific tests for bacterial meningitis

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis do a CRP and white blood cell count.

Do not use a normal CRP and white blood cell count to rule out bacterial meningitis.

If there is a raised CRP or white blood cell count in the presence of a non-specifically abnormal (that is, possibly viral) cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) treat as suspected bacterial meningitis.

If no CSF is available or if CSF findings are uninterpretable, manage suspected bacterial meningitis in children and young people as if the diagnosis is confirmed, regardless of the CRP and white blood cell count.

Polymerase chain reaction

In children and young people with suspected meningococcal disease, submit EDTA (ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid) whole blood routinely for real-time PCR testing to confirm the diagnosis. If lumbar puncture is performed, submit CSF for PCR analysis. The blood sample should be taken as soon as possible after admission (up to 72 hours).

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis (including meningococcal meningitis) submit blood and CSF samples for PCR testing to confirm the diagnosis.

Skin lesions and throat swabs for meningococcal disease

Do not use skin biopsies, aspirates (samples aspirated with a needle and syringe from a petechial/purpuric skin lesion), scrapings or throat swabs for the diagnosis of meningococcal disease in children and young people.

Lumbar puncture and cerebrospinal fluid parameters

Perform a lumbar puncture as a primary investigation in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis unless this is contraindicated (see Section 5.6 and Section 5.8).

Do not allow lumbar puncture to delay the administration of parenteral antibiotics.

Lumbar puncture results (white blood cell count, protein and glucose) should be made available within 4 hours to support clinical decision making with regard to adjunctive steroid therapy (see section 6.7).
In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis, send a CSF sample for examination for white blood cells, total protein and glucose concentrations, and a Gram stain, and a corresponding blood sample for a laboratory-determined glucose concentration.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis, the results of CSF microscopy and biochemical analyses should be made available within 4 hours of the CSF sample being taken to support clinical decision making with regard to adjunctive steroid therapy (see section 6.7).

In children and young people aged 28 days or older, start antibiotic treatment for bacterial meningitis if the CSF white blood cell count is abnormal (more than 5 cells/microlitre or more than one neutrophil is present), regardless of other CSF variables.

In children and young people aged 28 days or older with suspected bacterial meningitis, perform a lumbar puncture unless any of the following contraindications are present:

- signs suggesting raised intracranial pressure
  - reduced level of consciousness (Glasgow Coma Score less than 9)
  - relative bradycardia and hypertension
  - focal neurological signs
  - abnormal posture
  - unequal, dilated or poorly responsive pupils
  - papilloedema
  - abnormal ‘doll’s eye’ movements
- uncorrected shock (tachycardia and poor peripheral perfusion and/or hypotension)
- extensive or extending purpura
- after convulsions
  - within 30 minutes of a convulsive seizure lasting 30 minutes or less
  - following a prolonged convulsive seizure (lasting more than 30 minutes)
  - following a tonic seizure
- coagulation abnormalities
  - clotting study results (if obtained) outside the normal range
  - platelet count below 100 x 10⁹/litre
  - receiving anticoagulant therapy
- local superficial infection at potential lumbar puncture site
- respiratory insufficiency (for children and young people in whom lumbar puncture has a high likelihood of resulting in respiratory failure).

If pleocytosis is present and there is a history suggesting a risk of tuberculosis, evaluate for the diagnosis of tuberculosis in line with ‘Tuberculosis’ (NICE clinical guideline 33).

**Contraindications to lumbar puncture**

In children and young people aged 28 days or older with suspected bacterial meningitis, consider alternative diagnoses if the child or young person is significantly unwell and has CSF variables within the accepted normal ranges.

In neonates, start antibiotic treatment for bacterial meningitis if the CSF white blood cell count is abnormal (20 cells/microlitre or more). If the CSF white blood cell count is less than 20 cells/microlitre, bacterial meningitis should still be considered if other symptoms and signs are present (see table 3.2).

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis, consider alternative diagnoses if the child or young person is significantly unwell and has CSF variables within the accepted normal ranges.
In neonates with suspected bacterial meningitis do not perform a lumbar puncture if any of the following contraindications are present.

- signs suggesting raised intracranial pressure other than a full or bulging fontanelle
  - relative bradycardia and hypertension
  - focal neurological signs
  - abnormal posturing
  - unequal, dilated or poorly responsive pupils
  - papilloedema
  - abnormal doll’s eye movements

- uncorrected shock (tachycardia and poor peripheral perfusion and/or hypotension)

- extensive or extending purpura

- after convulsions
  - within 30 minutes of a convulsive seizure lasting 30 minutes or less

- coagulation abnormalities
  - clotting study results (if obtained) outside the normal range
  - platelet count below 100 x 10^9/litre
  - receiving anticoagulant therapy

- local superficial infection at potential lumbar puncture site

- respiratory insufficiency (for neonates in whom lumbar puncture has a high likelihood of resulting in respiratory failure).

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis, if contraindications to lumbar puncture exist at presentation consider delaying lumbar puncture until there are no longer contraindications (see recommendations above). Delayed lumbar puncture is especially worthwhile if there is diagnostic uncertainty or unsatisfactory clinical progress.

Perform a lumbar puncture in children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia (see table 3.3), unless there are signs of shock or other contraindications (see recommendations above).

Use local or national protocols for management of seizures in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia.

**Repeat lumbar puncture in neonates**

Do not perform a repeat lumbar puncture in neonates who are receiving the antibiotic treatment appropriate to the causative organism and are making a good clinical recovery.

Do not perform a repeat lumbar puncture before stopping antibiotic therapy in neonates who are clinically well.

Perform a repeat lumbar puncture in neonates who have persistent or re-emergent fever, deterioration in clinical condition, new clinical findings (especially neurological findings), or persistently abnormal inflammatory markers.

**Cranial computer tomography for bacterial meningitis**

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis use clinical assessment (including clinical evaluation for signs of raised intracranial pressure), not a cranial computed tomography (CT) scan, to decide whether it is safe to perform a lumbar puncture.
In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis who have a reduced conscious level (Glasgow Coma Score less than 9) or focal neurological signs, perform a CT scan to detect other possible intracranial pathologies.

Clinically stabilise children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis before CT scanning (see Section 6.6).

Do not delay treatment to undertake a CT scan in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis if a decision is made to perform a CT scan, ensure it is undertaken in consultation with the anaesthetist, paediatrician or intensivist.

Do not perform a lumbar puncture in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis if a CT scan shows radiological evidence of raised intracranial pressure.

Use local or national protocols to treat raised intracranial pressure in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis.

**Chapter 6 Management in secondary care**

**Empiric antibiotics**

Where ceftriaxone is the recommended treatment, do not use it at the same time as administering calcium-containing infusions. Instead, use cefotaxime (50 mg/kg three times daily).7

In children younger than 3 months where cefotaxime (with or without ampicillin or amoxillin) is the recommended treatment, use ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)8 as an alternative but avoid using it in children who are jaundiced, hypoalbuminaemic, acidic or born prematurely as it may exacerbate hyperbilirubinaemia. Do not use ceftriaxone at the same time as administering calcium-containing infusions.

Treat suspected bacterial meningitis in children and young people aged 3 months or older with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)9 without delay.

Treat suspected bacterial meningitis in children younger than 3 months with intravenous cefotaxime (50 mg/kg three times daily)10 plus amoxicillin (50–100 mg/kg daily)11 or ampicillin (125 mg four times daily)12 without delay.

Treat suspected bacterial meningitis in children and young people who have recently travelled outside the UK or have had prolonged or multiple exposure to antibiotics (within the past 3 months) with vancomycin in addition to cefotaxime (50 mg/kg three times daily)13 or ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)14 plus amoxicillin [50–100 mg/kg daily]15 or ampicillin [125 mg four times daily]16 in children younger than 3 months.

---

7 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for cefotaxime. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

8 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

9 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

10 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

11 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for amoxicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

12 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for amoxicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

13 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for cefotaxime. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

14 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

15 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for amoxicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

16 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for amoxicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.
Treat suspected meningococcal disease in children and young people with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\textsuperscript{17} without delay.

If tubercular meningitis is part of the differential diagnosis use antibiotic treatment appropriate for tuberculosis in line with ‘Tuberculosis’ (NICE clinical guideline 33).

**Antibiotics for confirmed disease**

In children and young people aged 3 months or older with confirmed bacterial meningitis caused by *H influenzae* type b treat with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\textsuperscript{18} for 10 days in total unless directed otherwise by the results of antibiotic sensitivities.

In children and young people aged 3 months or older with confirmed bacterial meningitis caused by *S pneumoniae* treat with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\textsuperscript{19} for 14 days unless directed otherwise by the results of antibiotic sensitivities.

In children younger than 3 months with confirmed bacterial meningitis caused by Group B streptococcus treat with intravenous cefotaxime (50 mg/kg three times daily)\textsuperscript{20} for at least 14 days. If the clinical course is complicated\textsuperscript{21} consider extending the duration of treatment and consulting an expert in paediatric infectious diseases.

In children younger than 3 months with confirmed bacterial meningitis caused by *L monocytogenes* treat with intravenous amoxicillin (50–100 mg/kg daily)\textsuperscript{22} or ampicillin (125 mg four times daily)\textsuperscript{23} for 21 days plus gentamicin for at least the first 7 days.

In children younger than 3 months with confirmed bacterial meningitis caused by Gram-negative bacilli treat with intravenous cefotaxime (50 mg/kg three times daily)\textsuperscript{24} for at least 21 days unless directed otherwise by the results of antibiotic sensitivities. If the course is complicated\textsuperscript{25} consider extending the duration of treatment and consulting an expert in paediatric infectious diseases.

In children and young people aged 3 months or older with confirmed bacterial meningitis caused by *S pneumoniae* treat with intravenous cefotaxime (50 mg/kg three times daily)\textsuperscript{26}, plus ampicillin (125 mg four times daily)\textsuperscript{27} or amoxicillin (50–100 mg/kg daily)\textsuperscript{28} for at least 14 days. If the clinical course is complicated\textsuperscript{30}...
consider extending the duration of treatment and consulting an expert in paediatric infectious
diseases.

In children and young people with confirmed meningococcal disease, treat with intravenous
ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\(^{31}\) for 7 days in total unless directed otherwise by the results of
antibiotic sensitivities.

In children and young people with unconfirmed but clinically suspected meningococcal
disease treat with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\(^{32}\) for 7 days in total.

**Fluids for bacterial meningitis**

Assess children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis for:

- signs of shock
- raised intracranial pressure
- signs of dehydration.

Refer to ‘Diarrhoea and vomiting in children’ (NICE clinical guideline 84) for assessment of shock
and dehydration.

Correct any dehydration in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial
meningitis using enteral fluids or feeds, or intravenously with isotonic fluids (for example, sodium
chloride 0.9% or sodium chloride 0.9% with glucose 5% or dextrose 5%).

Do not restrict fluids in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial
meningitis unless there are signs of raised intracranial pressure or evidence of increased
anti-diuretic hormone secretion.

Give full-volume maintenance fluids to children and young people with suspected or confirmed
bacterial meningitis to avoid hypoglycaemia and maintain electrolyte balance.

Use enteral feeds as maintenance fluid in children and young people with suspected or
confirmed bacterial meningitis who can tolerate enteral feeds.

If intravenous maintenance fluid is required, use isotonic fluids (for example, sodium chloride
0.9% with glucose 5% or dextrose 5%). In neonates use glucose 10% and added sodium for
maintenance.

Monitor fluid administration and urine output in children and young people with suspected or
confirmed bacterial meningitis to ensure adequate hydration and avoid overhydration.

Monitor electrolytes and blood glucose regularly (at least daily during the acute phase) in
children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis.

If there are signs of raised intracranial pressure or evidence of shock in children and young
people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis, initiate emergency management for
these conditions and discuss ongoing fluid management with a paediatric intensivist.

**Starting resuscitation fluids and vasoactive agents for meningococcal disease and type
and volume of intravenous fluids for meningococcal septicaemia**

In children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia:

- if there are signs of shock give an immediate fluid bolus of 20 ml/kg sodium chloride 0.9%
over 5–10 minutes. Give the fluid intravenously or via an intraosseous route and reassess
the child or young person immediately afterwards

- if despite the initial 20 ml/kg sodium chloride 0.9% bolus the signs of shock persist,
immediately give a second bolus of 20 ml/kg of intravenous or intraosseous sodium
chloride 0.9% or human albumin 4.5% solution over 5–10 minutes

---

\(^{31}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers
will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{32}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers
will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.
if following two bolus infusions (total 40 ml/kg) the signs of shock persist:

- immediately give a third bolus 20 ml/kg of intravenous or intraosseous sodium chloride 0.9% or human albumin 4.5% solution over 5–10 minutes
- call for on-site anaesthetic assistance for urgent tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation
- start treatment with vasoactive drugs
- be aware that some children and young people may require large volumes of fluid over a short period of time to restore their circulating volume and consider giving further fluid boluses at 20 ml/kg of intravenous or intraosseous sodium chloride 0.9% or human albumin 4.5% solution over 5–10 minutes based on clinical signs and appropriate laboratory investigations

- discuss further management with a paediatric intensivist.

Vasoactive therapy

If shock remains intractable despite adequate fluid resuscitation (more than 40 ml/kg) and increasing requirements for either intravenous adrenaline or intravenous noradrenaline, or both, consider potential reasons (such as persistent acidosis, incorrect dilution, extravasation) and discuss further management options with a paediatric intensivist.

Use local or national protocols for the administration of vasoactive agents in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia.

Intubation

In self-ventilating children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia with signs of increased respiratory distress administer 10–15 litre face mask oxygen via a reservoir rebreathing mask.

In children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia, if there is a threatened loss of airway patency, implement airway-opening manoeuvres, and start bag–valve mask ventilation before tracheal intubation.

In children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia, administer tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation for the following indications:

- threatened, or actual loss of airway patency (for instance loss of gag reflex)
- the need for any form of assisted ventilation, for example bag–mask ventilation
- clinical assessment of increased work of breathing
- apnoea
- hypoventilation
- features of respiratory failure, including:
  - irregular respiration (for instance Cheyne–Stokes breathing)
  - hypoxia (PaCO₂ less than 13 kPa or 97.5 mmHg) in air
  - hypercapnia (PaCO₂ greater than 6 kPa or 45 mmHg)
- continuing shock following infusion of 40 ml/kg of resuscitation fluid
- signs of raised intracranial pressure
- impaired mental status
  - a Glasgow Coma Scale drop of 3 or more, or a score of less than 9, or a fluctuation in conscious level
  - moribund state

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ((October 2009)) Page 19 of 244
• control of intractable seizures
• need for stabilisation and management to allow brain imaging or transfer to PICU or another hospital

A healthcare professional with expertise in airway management should undertake tracheal intubation.

Use local or national protocols for intubation in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia.

**Corticosteroids for bacterial meningitis**

Give dexamethasone (0.15 mg/kg to a maximum dose of 10 mg, four times daily for 4 days) as soon as possible if lumbar puncture reveals any of the following:

• frankly purulent CSF
• bacteria on Gram stain
• a CSF white blood cell count greater than 1000/microlitre
• CSF pleocytosis and a protein concentration greater than 1 g/litre.

If tuberculosis is in the differential diagnosis, refer to ‘Tuberculosis’ (NICE clinical guideline 33) before administering steroids, because steroids may be harmful if given without antituberculous therapy.

If dexamethasone is not given before or with the first dose of antibiotics, but is appropriate, administer a first dose within 4 hours wherever possible, but not later than 12 hours.

After the first dose of dexamethasone always discuss the decision to continue dexamethasone with a senior paediatrician.

Do not use corticosteroids in children younger than 3 months with suspected bacterial meningitis.

**Corticosteroids for meningococcal septicaemia**

Do not treat children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia with high-dose corticosteroids (defined as dexamethasone 0.6 mg/kg/day or an equivalent dose of other corticosteroids).

In children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia and shock that is unresponsive to vasoactive agents, steroid replacement therapy using low-dose corticosteroids (hydrocortisone 25 mg/m² four times daily) should be used only when directed by a paediatric intensivist.

**Adjunctive therapies**

Do not use activated protein C or recombinant bacterial permeability-increasing protein in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia.

**Severity scoring systems**

Monitor children and young people with meningococcal disease closely after admission to hospital for signs of deterioration.

---

33 The dosage given in the recommendation is based on high-quality evidence and is consistent with established clinical practice (see the full guideline for further details). The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients. Dexamethasone does not have UK marketing authorisation for use at the dose specified in the recommendation. Such use is an off-label use. Informed consent should be obtained and documented in line with normal standards in emergency care.

34 The dosage given in the recommendation is based on high-quality evidence and is consistent with established clinical practice (see the full guideline for further details). The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients. Hydrocortisone does not have UK marketing authorisation for use at the dose specified in the recommendation. Such use is an off-label use. Informed consent should be obtained and documented in line with normal standards in emergency care.
Be aware that children and young people with meningococcal disease can deteriorate rapidly, regardless of the results of any initial assessment of severity.

### Retrieval and transfer to tertiary care

Children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal disease who need resuscitation should be discussed with a paediatric intensivist as soon as possible. Transfer of children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal disease to tertiary care should be undertaken by an experienced paediatric intensive care retrieval team comprising medical and nursing staff.

Healthcare professionals involved in the treatment of seriously ill children and young people should be trained in the recognition and management of meningococcal disease.

### Chapter 7 Long-term management

#### Long-term effects of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia

Before discharging children and young people with bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia from hospital:

- consider their requirements for follow-up, taking into account potential sensory, neurological, psychosocial, orthopaedic, cutaneous and renal morbidities, and
- discuss potential long-term effects and likely patterns of recovery with the child or young person and their parents or other family members, and provide them with opportunities to discuss issues and ask questions.

Offer children and young people with bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia and their parents or carers:

- information about and access to further care immediately after discharge, and
- contact details of patient support organisations including meningitis charities that can offer support, befriending, in-depth information, advocacy, counselling, and written information to signpost families to further help, and
- advice on accessing future care.

Perform a formal audiological test in children and young people who have had bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia as soon as possible, preferably before discharge, within 4 weeks of being fit to test.

Offer children and young people found to have a severe or profound deafness an assessment for cochlear implants.

Children and young people who have had bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia should be reviewed by a paediatrician with the results of their hearing test 4-6 weeks after discharge from hospital to discuss morbidities associated with their condition and offered referral to appropriate services. The following morbidities should be specifically considered:

- hearing loss
- orthopaedic complications (damage to bones and joints)
- skin complications (including scarring from necrosis)
- psychosocial problems
- neurological and developmental problems
- renal failure.

Inform the child’s or young person’s GP, health visitor and school nurse (for school-age children and young people) about their bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia.
Healthcare professionals with responsibility for monitoring the child’s or young person’s health should be alert to possible late-onset sensory, neurological, orthopaedic and psychosocial effects of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia.

**Immunological testing**

Test children and young people for complement deficiency if they have had either:

- meningococcal disease caused by serogroups other than B, or
- previous serious bacterial infections (including meningococcal disease).

Children and young people with recurrent episodes of meningococcal disease should be assessed by a specialist in infectious disease or immunology.

Do not test children and young people for complement deficiency who have had either:

- meningococcal disease caused by serogroup B meningococcus, or
- unconfirmed meningococcal disease.

If a child or young person who has had meningococcal disease has a parent or sibling with a history of complement deficiency, test for complement deficiency.

If a child or young person who has had meningococcal disease is found to have complement deficiency, test their parents and siblings for complement deficiency.

Testing for complement deficiency should follow laboratory protocols.

Refer children and young people with complement deficiency to a healthcare professional with expertise in the management of the condition.

Do not test children and young people for immunoglobulin deficiency if they have had meningococcal disease, unless they have a history suggestive of an immunodeficiency.

### 1.3 Key priorities for research

**Symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease**

What are the symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease in children and young people aged under 16 years that differentiate between these conditions and minor self-limiting infections (including those characterised by fever)?

**Why this is important**

Research is needed from primary and secondary care settings on the diagnostic accuracy of symptoms and signs suggestive of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease in children and young people. The research should focus on identifying individual symptoms and signs, or groups of symptoms and signs, that are effective as predictors of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease and which differentiate effectively between these conditions and minor self-limiting infections. The research should include consideration of the effectiveness of symptoms and signs of acute feverish illness as predictors of meningococcal disease. Consideration should also be given to the age of the child or young person (in terms of the relevance of particular symptoms and signs) and the clinical setting at presentation. Suitable study designs would include diagnostic accuracy studies as well as observational studies (such as case–control studies), and the research could include a systematic review of studies that have already been published.

**Predictive value of blood test results and cerebrospinal fluid findings**

What are the normal ranges for blood and CSF parameters in children and young people in the UK?

**Why this is important**

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 22 of 244
Bacterial meningitis is a rare disease that is not easily distinguishable clinically from aseptic meningitis. It is, however, important to recognise those children who are most likely to have bacterial meningitis to direct appropriate management of the condition and to avoid inappropriate treatment of aseptic meningitis. Since the introduction of vaccines to protect against Hib, meningococcus serogroup C and pneumococcus, no high-quality studies involving previously healthy children and young people have been conducted in the UK to determine normal ranges for blood test results or CSF findings in bacterial and aseptic meningitis. Such studies are needed to provide reference values to help interpret blood test results and CSF findings in children (especially neonates) and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis.

**Albumin and crystalloid solutions for fluid resuscitation**

How effective is albumin 4.5% solution compared with crystalloid saline 0.9% solution for fluid resuscitation in children and young people with septic shock?

Why this is important

There are theoretical reasons why albumin solution may be more effective than crystalloid solution in children and young people with septic shock. However, no clinical studies have evaluated the effectiveness of albumin solution in children and young people with meningococcal disease. Concerns about the safety of colloids such as albumin solution led to a widespread change in clinical practice in the 1990s to using crystalloid solutions, despite a lack of evidence of equivalent effectiveness. Although albumin solution is considerably more expensive than crystalloid solution, a small additional benefit of albumin over crystalloid (one death prevented in more than 14,000 treated cases) would make the use of albumin solution cost effective. Randomised controlled trials are therefore needed to compare the effectiveness of albumin and crystalloid solutions in children and young people with septic shock.

**Adjunctive corticosteroid treatment**

What is the effectiveness of corticosteroids as an adjunct to antibiotic treatment in neonates with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis?

Why is this important

Neonatal bacterial meningitis is associated with high morbidity, despite the availability of antibiotics that are highly effective against the leading causes of bacterial meningitis in this age group. New approaches to management are needed because there are currently no vaccines to protect against infection from the causative organisms. Corticosteroids are effective as an adjunct to antibiotic treatment in older children with meningitis caused by Hib, and in adults with bacterial meningitis but there is insufficient evidence to support a recommendation for adjunctive corticosteroid treatment in neonates. Extrapolation from older age groups would be inappropriate because the spectrum of organisms causing infection in neonates is different, and the impact on the developing brain of the causative organisms during inflammation may not be the same. A large-scale randomised controlled trial is therefore needed to compare the effectiveness of antibiotic treatment plus corticosteroids with antibiotic treatment alone in neonates with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis.

**Steroid replacement treatment**

How effective is steroid replacement treatment in children and young people with vasopressor-unresponsive shock caused by sepsicaemia, including meningococcal septicaemia?

Why this is important

Well-conducted but relatively small randomised clinical trials involving adults only suggest that low-dose corticosteroid replacement treatment may ameliorate haemodynamic failure and inflammatory dysregulation associated with severe sepsis. Such treatment may also improve outcomes following septic shock. Severe sepsis in children and young people differs from that in adults in that multiple-organ dysfunction is less common in children and young people, and mortality is lower. A randomised controlled trial involving children and young people is needed to evaluate the effectiveness of corticosteroid replacement treatment. Studies involving adults...
only suggest that those with normal adrenal function have worse outcomes if they receive steroids than those with adrenal dysfunction, and so the proposed trial should consider whether testing for adrenal dysfunction before starting steroid replacement treatment improves outcomes.

1.4 Research recommendations

Chapter 3 Symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia

What are the symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease in children and young people aged under 16 years that differentiate between these conditions and minor self-limiting infections (including those characterised by fever)?

Why this is important

Research is needed from primary and secondary care settings on the diagnostic accuracy of symptoms and signs suggestive of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease in children and young people. The research should focus on identifying individual symptoms and signs, or groups of symptoms and signs, that are effective as predictors of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease and which differentiate effectively between these conditions and minor self-limiting infections. The research should include consideration of the effectiveness of symptoms and signs of acute feverish illness as predictors of meningococcal disease. Consideration should also be given to the age of the child or young person (in terms of the relevance of particular symptoms and signs) and the clinical setting at presentation. Suitable study designs would include diagnostic accuracy studies as well as observational studies (such as case-control studies), and the research could include a systematic review of studies that have already been published.

Chapter 4 Management in the pre-hospital setting

Does the administration of pre-hospital antibiotics improve outcomes in children and young people with suspected meningococcal disease?

Why this is important

The GDG has recommended administration of antibiotics (benzylpenicillin) for children and young people with suspected meningitis in the pre-hospital setting, in accordance with advice issued by the Chief Medical Officer (PL/CMO/99/1). However, no evidence was identified to indicate whether such practice improves outcomes. Research is needed to evaluate the effectiveness of administering antibiotics in the pre-hospital setting. Suitable research designs would include observational studies (e.g. cohort studies or case-control studies) to compare outcomes in children and young people with suspected meningococcal disease according to whether or not they receive antibiotics before admission to hospital. The studies could evaluate the effect of immediate versus delayed administration of antibiotics and comparison of outcomes in children and young people in whom meningococcal disease is confirmed after hospital admission, and those in whom an alternative diagnosis is made.

Chapter 5 Diagnosis in secondary care

Cerebrospinal fluid parameters

What are the normal ranges for blood and CSF parameters in children and young people in the UK?

Why this is important

Bacterial meningitis is a rare disease that is not easily distinguishable clinically from aseptic meningitis. It is, however, important to recognise those children who are most likely to have bacterial meningitis to direct appropriate management of the condition and to avoid inappropriate treatment of aseptic meningitis. Since the introduction of vaccines to protect against Hib, meningococcus serogroup C and pneumococcus, no high-quality studies involving bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009)
previously healthy children and young people have been conducted in the UK to determine normal ranges for blood test results or CSF findings in bacterial and aseptic meningitis. Such studies are needed to provide reference values to help interpret blood test results and CSF findings in children (especially neonates) and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis.

Repeat lumbar puncture in neonates

Does repeat lumbar puncture in neonates with bacterial meningitis alter the prognosis?

Why this is important

Bacterial meningitis in neonates differs from bacterial meningitis in older children in several ways, including the causative organisms and the risk of relapse even after a long course of antibiotics (with the risk being greater in neonates). This has led some healthcare professionals to repeat lumbar puncture before stopping antibiotic treatment to ensure that the CSF is sterile. The GDG found no evidence from which to evaluate the effectiveness of repeat lumbar puncture for preventing relapse of bacterial meningitis in neonates. A study is required in neonates with documented bacterial meningitis to determine what factors are associated with relapse and whether repeat lumbar puncture alters the prognosis. All neonates included in the study would need to receive a specified antibiotic regimen (tailored to the causative pathogen), involving similar dosages, dosing intervals and duration of treatment. The following data should be collected for each neonate in the study: signs and symptoms, blood test results (inflammatory markers), CSF findings (microbiology and chemistry) and central nervous system imaging. All variables should be measured at the start and end of treatment. Follow-up should continue for 1 month after stopping antibiotic treatment, and longer-term follow-up (at 2 years) should also be conducted. Any deterioration in clinical condition should prompt a full clinical assessment, blood analysis, lumbar puncture, and imaging, from which it will be possible to evaluate the risk of relapse according to whether or not repeat lumbar puncture is undertaken.

Chapter 6 Management in secondary care

Empiric antibiotics

In children and young people what are the risk factors for meningitis and septicaemia caused by cephalosporin-resistant strains of pneumococcus?

Why this is important

Although serious invasive disease due to cephalosporin-resistant pneumococci is rare in the UK, the recommended regimen for empiric antibiotic treatment of suspected meningitis and septicaemia in children and young people will not treat cephalosporin-resistant pneumococci adequately. A delay in starting suitable alternative treatment (vancomycin with or without rifampicin) may result in worse outcomes. The ability to identify at presentation those children and young people who are likely to be infected with cephalosporin-resistant strains of pneumococcus would ensure that optimal antibiotic treatment could be started as soon as possible. Additionally, the ability to confidently exclude the possibility of cephalosporin-resistant pneumococci would mean that potentially toxic empiric antibiotic treatment could be avoided. Resistance of pneumococcus to penicillin is generally higher in: countries other than the UK; children who have been exposed to oral or parenteral antibiotics recently (e.g. in the previous 3 months), over a prolonged period of time, or on multiple occasions; and children with underlying health problems. The current evidence base is insufficient to determine accurately the risks of cephalosporin-resistant pneumococcal infection according to the duration, number, or type of antibiotic treatment, or the time period over which previous antibiotic exposure or foreign travel is relevant. Large-scale epidemiological studies (e.g. cohort studies or case-control studies) are needed to evaluate these risks.

Type and volume of intravenous fluids for meningococcal septicaemia

How effective is albumin 4.5% solution compared with crystalloid saline 0.9% solution for fluid resuscitation in children and young people with septic shock?

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 25 of 244
Why this is important

There are theoretical reasons why albumin solution may be more effective than crystalloid solution in children and young people with septic shock. However, no clinical studies have evaluated the effectiveness of albumin solution in children and young people with meningococcal disease. Concerns about the safety of colloids such as albumin solution led to a widespread change in clinical practice in the 1990s to using crystalloid solutions, despite a lack of evidence of equivalent effectiveness. Although albumin solution is considerably more expensive than crystalloid solution, a small additional benefit of albumin over crystalloid (one death prevented in more than 14,000 treated cases) would make the use of albumin solution cost effective. Randomised controlled trials are therefore needed to compare the effectiveness of albumin and crystalloid solutions in children and young people with septic shock.

Corticosteroids for meningococcal septicaemia

How effective is steroid replacement treatment in children and young people with vasopressor-unresponsive shock caused by septicaemia, including meningococcal septicaemia?

Why this is important

Well-conducted but relatively small randomised clinical trials involving adults only suggest that low-dose corticosteroid replacement treatment may ameliorate haemodynamic failure and inflammatory dysregulation associated with severe sepsis. Such treatment may also improve outcomes following septic shock. Severe sepsis in children and young people differs from that in adults in that multiple-organ dysfunction is less common in children and young people, and mortality is lower. A randomised controlled trial involving children and young people is needed to evaluate the effectiveness of corticosteroid replacement treatment. Studies involving adults only suggest that those with normal adrenal function have worse outcomes if they receive steroids than those with adrenal dysfunction, and so the proposed trial should consider whether testing for adrenal dysfunction before starting steroid replacement treatment improves outcomes.

Adjunctive therapies

Do anticoagulant and anti-inflammatory treatments such as activated protein C improve outcomes in children and young people with disseminated intravascular coagulation and severe sepsis, including meningococcal septicaemia?

Why this is important

Given the possibility of an improvement in outcomes in children and young people with septic shock and disseminated intravascular coagulation following treatment with activated protein C, and positive results reported in adults with septic shock, a randomised controlled trial to evaluate the effectiveness of activated protein C in children and young people with severe sepsis and disseminated intravascular coagulation is needed.

Does early intervention with anti-endotoxin treatments such as recombinant bactericidal permeability-increasing protein improve outcomes in children and young people with severe meningococcal septicaemia?

Why this is important

Disease progression in meningococcal septicaemia is rapid and so anti-endotoxin treatment is likely to be effective only if it is given early in the course of disease. A multi-centre randomised controlled trial involving children and young people with severe sepsis reported that the mean time of delivery of recombinant bactericidal permeability-increasing protein rBPI21 was 5.9 hours after receiving initial antibiotic treatment. The results of the trial suggest that rBPI21 might be more effective if given earlier in the course of the disease, such as when children are first diagnosed and treated in the emergency department, or within 2 hours of giving intravenous antibiotics. A further randomised controlled trial is needed to evaluate the effectiveness of such practice in children and young people with severe meningococcal septicaemia.
Severity scoring systems

Are severity scoring systems useful for directing clinical management of suspected or confirmed meningococcal disease in children and young people?

Why this is important

Scoring systems are used widely in clinical research to classify the severity of suspected or confirmed meningococcal disease in children and young people. They are also used in clinical practice in some areas of the UK. Such systems can be applied relatively easily at presentation, and sequentially thereafter. If severity scoring systems can be used to identify changes in clinical condition that would direct clinical management to improve outcomes they could have widespread applicability in clinical practice. Studies are, therefore needed to evaluate the usefulness of severity scoring systems for meningococcal disease in children and young people. The outcomes evaluated in the studies should include mortality and morbidity; they could also include satisfaction with care among children and young people, their parents or carers and other family members.

Chapter 7 Long-term management

Long term effects of meningococcal disease

Does routine follow-up reduce the incidence of psycho-social stress and long term morbidity in children and young people who have had bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia and their families?

Why this is important

Access to follow-up therapies (such as occupational therapy) and other services for children and young people who have had bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia is recommended. Qualitative research is needed to evaluate the effectiveness of this practice. It should seek to elicit views and experiences of the children and young people themselves and the impact on their parents or carers and other family members.

1.5 Care pathway

The care pathway is presented in a separate file for consultation.
2 Development of the guideline

2.1 Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia in children and young people

This guideline covers bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia, focusing on management of these conditions in children and young people aged younger than 16 years in primary and secondary care, and using evidence of direct relevance to these age groups where available.

Bacterial meningitis

Bacterial meningitis is an infection of the surface of the brain (meninges) by bacteria that have usually travelled there from mucosal surfaces via the bloodstream. In children and young people aged 3 months or older the most frequent causes of bacterial meningitis include Neisseria meningitidis (meningococcus), Streptococcus pneumoniae (pneumococcus) and Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib; see Table 2.1). These organisms occur normally in the upper respiratory tract and can cause invasive disease when acquired by a susceptible person. In neonates (children younger than 28 days) the most common causative organisms are Streptococcusagalactiae (Group B streptococcus), Escherichia coli, S. pneumoniae and Listeria monocytogenes (see Table 2.2). These organisms are likely to be acquired around the time of birth from the maternal genital and gastrointestinal tract.1

Table 2.1: Incidence of and mortality from bacterial meningitis in children aged under 16 years in England and Wales by causative organism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organism (period of data collection source of isolate)</th>
<th>Number of cases</th>
<th>Number of deaths (case fatality rate %)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Neisseria meningitidis (mid 2006 to mid 2007, all invasive)</em></td>
<td>790 (aged &lt;16 years) (includes 38 aged &lt; 3 months)</td>
<td>25 (3.2%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Streptococcus pneumoniae (2005, meningitis: cerebrospinal fluid/blood)</strong></td>
<td>232 (aged &lt; 15 years) (includes 9 aged &lt; 2 months)</td>
<td>N/A (6% to 11%) varies by age and is an amalgamation of data from 1998-2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) (mid 2006 to mid 2007, all invasive)</em></td>
<td>53 (aged &lt;15 years) (includes 6 aged &lt; 3 months)</td>
<td>1 (1.9%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: * Health Protection Agency; ** Johnson et al. (2007)²
The most recent United Kingdom (UK) national surveillance study of bacterial meningitis in neonates (aged < 28 days) was conducted in 1996–1997 and identified a case fatality rate of 10% in bacteriologically proven cases. Comparison with the previous national surveillance study (which was conducted in 1985–1987) revealed little change in the overall incidence of neonatal bacterial meningitis (0.22 cases per 1,000 live births in 1985–1987 versus 0.21 cases per 1,000 live births in 1996–1997). Although mortality has fallen significantly there has been no change in the rate of sequelae. A recent national study focusing specifically on Group B streptococcus in children in the first 90 days of life was conducted in 2000–2001 and reported a meningitis case fatality rate of 12.4%. Infection with L. monocytogenes is rare, accounting for approximately 5% of cases of neonatal meningitis; most cases involve early onset (age < 7 days), occur predominantly in premature infants, and are related to maternal infection. Traditionally, pregnancy-associated L. monocytogenes has been considered capable of causing meningitis and sepsis in infants aged up to 3 months, but current epidemiological data indicate that nearly all pregnancy-associated cases present clinically in the first month of life (for example, of 72 cases of L. monocytogenes meningitis diagnosed between 1990 and 2007, only one occurred at age >4 weeks; source: Health Protection Agency, London).

The epidemiology of paediatric bacterial meningitis in the UK has changed dramatically in the last two decades following the introduction of vaccines developed to control the bacteria that cause meningitis. Hib was the main cause of bacterial meningitis in children aged under 5 years before the introduction of the Hib conjugate vaccine in 1992. It is now the third most common causative organism after N. meningitidis and S. pneumoniae (see Table 2.1). Reduction in the incidence of disease caused by serogroup C meningococcus in the UK after the introduction of the MenC conjugate vaccine in 1999 has been equally marked. A reduction in the incidence of pneumococcal disease is already evident following the introduction of the pneumococcal conjugate vaccine in 2006 (see http://www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAweb&HPAwebStandard/HPAweb_C/1207821645727) and is likely to decline further. The pneumococcal conjugate vaccine covers only seven serotypes of pneumococcus, although 91 have been described. As no vaccine is currently licensed against serogroup B meningococcus this pathogen is now the most common cause of meningitis (and septicaemia) in children and young people aged 3 months or older (see http://www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAweb&HPAwebStandard/HPAweb_C/1234859712887?p=1201094595391). The incidence of pneumococcal meningitis in children younger than 3 months may decline as a result of vaccination through population (or ‘herd’) immunity. However, serotypes not included in the current vaccine (for example, ST1), appear to be more likely to cause disease in this age group than in older age groups. For example, the percentage of invasive pneumococcal disease serotypes found in the seven-valent vaccine before widespread vaccination was 47% for those aged under 1 month compared with 88% for children aged 1–4 years. Thus, population immunity with the current pneumococcal conjugate vaccine may have minimal impact on pneumococcal meningitis in children younger than 3 months.

This guideline does not consider meningitis associated with tuberculosis (TB), because tubercular meningitis (or meningeal TB) is covered in ‘Tuberculosis: clinical diagnosis and management of
tuberculosis, and measures for its prevention and control'. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) clinical guideline 33. However, some features of the presentation of tuberculosis meningitis are indistinguishable from bacterial meningitis.

**Meningococcal disease**

Most *N. meningitidis* infections are asymptomatic, but occasionally the organism invades the bloodstream (usually within a few days of a susceptible person acquiring the organism) to cause meningococcal disease. Meningococcal disease most commonly presents as bacterial meningitis (15% of cases) or septicaemia (25% of cases), or as a combination of the two syndromes (60% of cases). Rarely the disease presents as pneumonia, arthritis, osteomyelitis, pericarditis, endophthalmitis or conjunctivitis. Meningococcal disease is the leading infectious cause of death in early childhood, making its control a priority for clinical management (as well as public health surveillance and control; see below). The disease can be fatal within hours of the first symptoms appearing, and many experts believe that lives could be saved by earlier recognition and prompt and appropriate emergency management. This view is supported by research in adults on the ‘golden hours’ that suggests that the initial management of patients with meningococcal disease may be critical in determining outcome (see for example, [http://www.acep.org/publications.aspx?id=37782](http://www.acep.org/publications.aspx?id=37782)).

Disease-causing meningococci are encapsulated with polysaccharides, the chemical nature of which determines the serogroup of the organism. Serogroups A, B, C, W135 and Y are the main causes of invasive meningococcal disease. Most meningococcal disease in Europe is caused by serogroups B and C, but the serogroup distribution varies over time; following introduction of the MenC conjugate vaccine (which protects against serogroup C meningococcus), almost all cases of meningococcal disease in England and Wales are now caused by serogroup B.

The highest incidence of meningococcal disease occurs among children aged under 2 years; another period of increased risk occurs in adolescence and early adulthood. The disease is more frequent in winter months and is associated with smoking, crowding and recent viral respiratory illness. The case fatality rate is about 10%, with the highest mortality rates occurring in people with fulminant meningococcal septicaemia (meningococcal septicaemia that strikes suddenly and with great severity).

**Notification and public health management**

Under the Public Health (Infectious Diseases) Regulations 1988, registered medical practitioners in England and Wales have a legal requirement to notify a ‘Proper Officer’ of the local authority (usually the Consultant in Communicable Disease Control) of suspected cases of meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia [see, for example, [http://www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAwebFile/HPAweb_C/1205310733613](http://www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAwebFile/HPAweb_C/1205310733613)]. The purposes of notification are to prompt local investigation and public health action to control the disease, including prevention of nosocomial (healthcare-associated) transmission and transmission in the community. The resulting data are also used for analysis of local and national trends. The Health Protection Agency (HPA) has issued guidance on public health management of meningococcal disease in the UK, which covers laboratory investigation of suspected cases, local and national public health surveillance, and public health action after a case to prevent secondary infection, including chemoprophylaxis [using antibiotics and/or vaccines] in close contacts, the wider community, and healthcare settings [see [http://www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAwebFile/HPAweb_C/1194947389261](http://www.hpa.org.uk/web/HPAwebFile/HPAweb_C/1194947389261)]. Specific recommendations contained in the HPA guidance include:

- isolation of the index case during the first 24 hours of treatment with antibiotics (after this the index case ceases to be infectious)
- use of surgical masks by healthcare professionals during initial management to reduce the possibility of exposure to large particle droplets (especially during airway management procedures), so avoiding the need for chemoprophylaxis
use of chemoprophylaxis only for those healthcare professionals whose mouth or nose is directly exposed to large particle droplets or secretions from the respiratory tract of a probable or confirmed case of meningococcal disease during acute illness until 24 hours of systemic antibiotics has been completed; general medical or nursing care of cases is not an indication for prophylaxis.

2.2 Aim and scope of the guideline

This clinical guideline concerns the management of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia in children and young people younger than 16 years in primary and secondary care. It has been developed with the aim of providing guidance in the following areas:

- diagnosis of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia (covering symptoms and signs, identification of levels of risk based on probabilities of combinations of signs and symptoms, and differentiating between meningococcal septicaemia and other causes of non-blanching rash)

- management of suspected bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia in primary care and in the pre-hospital setting

- management of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia in secondary care (covering choice of antibiotics, fluid resuscitation, timing and role of intubation and the decision to initiate it, corticosteroids for the treatment of meningitis, use of scoring systems such as the Glasgow meningococcal septicaemia prognostic score (GMSPS) in diagnosis and management, and the role of recombinant bacterial permeability increasing protein (Bpi) and activated protein C)

- retrieval and transfer to secondary and tertiary care

- choice and timing of investigations (blood tests, aspirates and swabs, lumbar puncture, radiology and immunological testing)

- information that should be given to parents and carers (at the time of initial presentation, after diagnosis, regarding short- and long-term effects, and including significant psychological and physical morbidities).

The following groups are specifically excluded from the guideline:

- children and young people with known immunodeficiency

- children and young people with brain tumours, existing hydrocephalus or intracranial shunts

- neonates already receiving care in neonatal units.

Further information about the areas covered in the guideline is available in the ‘scope’ of the guideline (reproduced in Appendix A).

2.3 For whom is the guideline intended?

This guideline is of relevance to those who work in or use the National Health Service (NHS) in England, Wales and Northern Ireland, in particular:

- healthcare professionals involved in the care of children and young people with bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia (including paediatricians, general practitioners (GPs) and nurses)

- those responsible for commissioning and planning healthcare services, including primary care trust commissioners, Health Commission Wales commissioners, and public health and trust managers
parents and carers of children and young people with bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia.

A version of this guideline for patients and their parents and carers is available from the NICE website (www.nice.org.uk/xxx) or from NICE publications on 0845 003 7783 (quote reference number xxx). [This paragraph to be completed in the final published guideline.]

### 2.4 Other relevant documents

This guideline is intended to complement other existing and proposed works of relevance, including the following guidance published by NICE:

- ‘Feverish illness in children’, NICE clinical guideline 47
- ‘Tuberculosis’, NICE clinical guideline 33
- ‘Intrapartum care’, NICE clinical guideline 55
- ‘The epilepsies’, NICE clinical guideline 20

This guideline also draws on clinical questions and searches developed for the Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN) clinical guideline on management of invasive meningococcal disease in children and young people. The HPA guidance on public health management of meningococcal disease in the UK should also be considered in conjunction with this guideline.

### 2.5 Who has developed the guideline?

The guideline was developed by a multi-professional and lay GDG convened by the National Collaborating Centre for Women’s and Children’s Health (NCC-WCH). Membership included:

- eight paediatricians (including paediatricians specialising in emergency medicine and infectious diseases)
- a GP
- two nurses specialising in paediatric critical care
- a public health physician
- two parent/carer members.

NCC-WCH staff provided methodological support for the guideline development process, undertook systematic searches, retrieved and appraised the evidence, developed health economic models, and wrote successive drafts of the guideline.

Two external advisers were appointed by the GDG to advise on topics relevant to the guideline.

All GDG members’ and external advisers’ potential and actual conflicts of interest were recorded on declaration forms provided by NICE (summarised in Appendix B). None of the interests declared by GDG members constituted a material conflict of interest that would influence recommendations developed by the GDG.

Organisations with interests in the management of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia in children and young people aged under 16 years were encouraged to register as stakeholders for the guideline. Registered stakeholders were consulted throughout the guideline development process. The types of organisations eligible to register as stakeholders included:

- national patient and carer organisations that directly or indirectly represent interests of children and young people aged under 16 years with bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia and their families
national organisations that represent healthcare professionals who provide services for children and young people aged under 16 years with bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia.

- companies that manufacture preparations and/or products used in the management of bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia in children and young people aged under 16 years.

- providers and commissioners of health services in England, Wales and Northern Ireland.

- statutory organisations such as the Department of Health and the Welsh Assembly Government.

- research organisations that have undertaken nationally recognised research in relation to the topics covered in the guideline.

A list of registered stakeholder organisations for this guideline is presented in Appendix C.

2.6 Guideline development methodology

This guideline was commissioned by NICE and developed in accordance with the process outlined in successive editions of ‘The guidelines manual’ [see http://www.nice.org.uk/guidelinesmanual]. Table 2.3 summarises the key stages of the process and which version of the guidelines manual was followed at each stage. In accordance with NICE’s Equality Scheme [see http://www.nice.org.uk/aboutnice/howwework/NICEEqualityScheme.jsp], ethnic and cultural considerations and factors relating to disabilities were considered by the GDG at every stage of the process and addressed specifically in individual recommendations where relevant.

Table 2.3 Stages in the NICE guideline development process and versions of ‘The guidelines manual’ followed at each stage

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>2007 version</th>
<th>2009 version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scoping the guideline (determining what the guideline would and would not cover)</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparing the work plan (agreeing timelines, milestones, guideline development group constitution, etc.)</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forming and running the GDG</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Developing clinical questions</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identifying evidence</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reviewing and grading evidence</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incorporating health economics</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Making group decisions and reaching consensus</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linking guidance to other NICE guidance</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating guideline recommendations</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing the guideline</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stakeholder consultation on the draft guideline</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finalising and publishing the guideline (including pre-publication check)</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Declaring and dealing with conflicts of interest</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Developing clinical questions and identifying evidence

The GDG formulated clinical questions based on the scope (see Appendix D). These formed the starting point for subsequent evidence reviews. Relevant published evidence to answer the clinical questions was identified by applying systematic search strategies (see Appendix E) to the following databases: Medline (1950 onwards), Embase (1980 onwards), Cumulative Index to Nursing and Allied Health Literature (CINAHL; 1982 onwards using the Ovid platform and 1987 onwards using the Ebsco platform), and three Cochrane databases (Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials, Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, and the Database of Abstracts of Reviews of Effects). For searches related to long-term sequelae of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease we also searched PsycInfo (1967 onwards). Searches to identify economic studies were undertaken using the above databases and the NHS Economic Evaluation Database (NHS EED). Except where specifically stated, the searches were not limited by date or language of publication (although publications in languages other than English were not reviewed). Generic and specially developed search filters were used to identify particular study designs, such as randomised controlled trials (RCTs). There was no systematic attempt to search grey literature (conferences, abstracts, theses and unpublished trials), nor was hand searching of journals not indexed on the databases undertaken.

Towards the end of the guideline development process, the searches were updated and re-executed, to include evidence published and indexed in the databases by 1 June 2009.

Reviewing and grading evidence

Evidence relating to clinical effectiveness was reviewed and graded using the hierarchical system presented in table 2.4. This system reflects the susceptibility to bias inherent in particular study designs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Source of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1++</td>
<td>High-quality meta-analyses, systematic reviews of randomised controlled trials (RCTs), or RCTs with a very low risk of bias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1+</td>
<td>Well-conducted meta-analyses, systematic reviews of RCTs, or RCTs with a low risk of bias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1−</td>
<td>Meta-analyses, systematic reviews of RCTs, or RCTs with a high risk of bias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2++</td>
<td>High-quality systematic reviews of case–control or cohort studies; high-quality case–control or cohort studies with a very low risk of confounding, bias or chance and a high probability that the relationship is causal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2+</td>
<td>Well-conducted case–control or cohort studies with a low risk of confounding, bias or chance and a moderate probability that the relationship is causal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2−</td>
<td>Case–control or cohort studies with a high risk of confounding, bias or chance and a significant risk that the relationship is not causal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Non-analytical studies (for example, case reports, case series)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Expert opinion, formal consensus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The type of clinical question dictates the highest level of evidence that may be sought. In assessing the quality of evidence, each study was assigned a quality rating coded as ‘++’, ‘+’ or ‘−’. For issues of therapy or treatment, the highest possible evidence level (EL) is a well-conducted systematic review or meta-analysis of RCTs (EL = 1++) or an individual RCT (EL = 1+). Studies of poor quality were rated as ‘−’. Studies rated as ‘−’ should not be used as a basis for making a recommendation, but they may be used to inform recommendations. For issues of prognosis, the highest possible level of evidence is a cohort study (EL = 2).
For each clinical question, the highest available level of evidence was sought. Where appropriate (for example, if a systematic review, meta-analysis or RCT was identified to answer a question), studies of a weaker design were not considered. Where systematic reviews, meta-analyses and RCTs were not identified, other appropriate experimental or observational studies were sought. For diagnostic tests, test evaluation studies examining the performance of the test were used if the effectiveness (accuracy) of the test was required, but where an evaluation of the effectiveness of the test in the clinical management of patients and the outcome of disease was required, evidence from RCTs or cohort studies was optimal. For studies evaluating the accuracy of a diagnostic test, sensitivity, specificity, positive predictive values (PPVs) and negative predictive values (NPVs) were calculated or quoted where possible (see Table 2.5). Likelihood ratios (LRs) were also quoted where reported.

Table 2.5 ‘2 × 2’ table for calculation of diagnostic accuracy parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference standard positive</th>
<th>Reference standard negative</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test positive a (true positive)</td>
<td>b (false positive)</td>
<td>a+b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test negative c (false negative)</td>
<td>d (true negative)</td>
<td>c+d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total a+c</td>
<td>b+d</td>
<td>a+b+c+d = N (total number of tests in study)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sensitivity = a/(a+c), specificity = d/(b+d), PPV = a/(a+b), NPV = d/(c+d)

The hierarchical system described above covers studies of treatment effectiveness. However, it is less appropriate for studies reporting accuracy of diagnostic tests. In the absence of a validated ranking system for this type of test, NICE has developed a hierarchy of evidence that takes into account various factors likely to affect the validity of such studies (see Table 2.6).

Table 2.6 Levels of evidence for studies of the accuracy of diagnostic tests

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Type of evidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ia</td>
<td>Systematic review (with homogeneity)(^a) of level-1 studies(^b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ib</td>
<td>Level-1 studies(^b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Level-2 studies; systematic reviews of level-2 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Level-3 studies; systematic reviews of level-3 studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Consensus, expert committee reports or opinions and/or clinical experience without explicit critical appraisal; or based on physiology, bench research or ‘first principles’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\) Homogeneity means there are minor or no variations in the directions and degrees of results between individual studies that are included in the systematic review.

\(^b\) Level-1 studies are studies that use a blind comparison of the test with a validated reference standard (gold standard) in a sample of patients that reflects the population to whom the test would apply.

\(^c\) Level-2 studies are studies that have only one of the following:

- Narrow population (the sample does not reflect the population to whom the test would apply)
- Use a poor reference standard (defined as that where the ‘test’ is included in the ‘reference’, or where the ‘testing’ affects the ‘reference’)
- The comparison between the test and reference standard is not blind
- Case-control studies.

\(^d\) Level-3 studies are studies that have at least two or three of the features listed above.

Some studies were excluded from the reviews after obtaining copies of the corresponding publications because they did not meet inclusion criteria specified by the GDG (see Appendix F). Clinical evidence from included studies was extracted into evidence tables for each question (see Appendix G), and a brief summary of each study was included in the guideline text. Where possible, dichotomous outcomes are presented as relative risks (RRs) or odds ratios (ORs) with 95% confidence intervals (CIs),

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 35 of 244
and continuous outcomes are presented as mean differences with 95% CIs or standard deviations (SDs).

The body of evidence identified for each clinical question was synthesised qualitatively in clinical evidence statements. Quantitative synthesis (meta-analysis) was also undertaken for specific areas of the guideline, with results being presented in the text as pooled RRs, pooled ORs or weighted mean differences (WMDs). Additionally Forest plots are presented for the effectiveness of empiric antibiotics for the treatment of suspected bacterial meningitis and effectiveness of corticosteroids for the treatment of bacterial meningitis (see Appendix H).

**Incorporating health economics**

The aims of the health economic input to the guideline were to inform the GDG of potential economic issues relating to the management of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia in children and young people aged under 16 years, and to ensure that recommendations represented a cost-effective use of healthcare resources. Health economic evaluations aim to integrate data on benefits or harms (ideally in terms of quality adjusted life years (QALYs)) and costs of different care options.

The GDG prioritised a number of clinical questions where it was thought that economic considerations would be particularly important in formulating recommendations. For this guideline the areas prioritised for economic analysis were as follows:

- polymerase chain reaction (PCR) for confirming diagnosis in suspected meningococcal disease (see Section 5.3 and Appendix I for details of a health economic model developed to address this issue)
- antibiotics for treatment of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease (see Sections 6.1 and 6.2 and Appendix J for details of a health economic model developed to address this issue)
- crystalloid versus colloid intravenous fluid for resuscitation in suspected meningococcal septicaemia (see Section 6.5 and Appendix K for details of a ‘what-if’ analysis developed to address this issue)
- complement deficiency screening in survivors of meningococcal disease (see Section 7.3 and Appendix L for details of a ‘what-if’ analysis developed to address this issue).

**GDG interpretation of the evidence and creating recommendations**

For each clinical question, recommendations for clinical care were derived using, and linked explicitly to, the evidence that supported them. In the first instance, informal consensus methods were used by the GDG to agree clinical and, where appropriate, cost effectiveness evidence statements. Statements summarising the GDG’s interpretation of the evidence and any extrapolation from the evidence used to form recommendations were also prepared to ensure transparency in the decision-making process.

In areas where no substantial clinical research evidence was identified, the GDG considered other evidence-based guidelines and consensus statements or used their collective experience to identify good practice. The health economics justification in areas of the guideline where the use of NHS resources (interventions) was considered was based on GDG consensus in relation to the likely cost effectiveness implications of the recommendations. The GDG also identified areas where evidence to answer their clinical questions was lacking and used this information to formulate recommendations for future research.

Towards the end of the guideline development process, formal consensus methods were used to consider all the clinical care recommendations and research recommendations that had been drafted previously. The GDG identified ten ‘key
priorities for implementation’ (key recommendations) and five high-priority research recommendations. The key priorities for implementation were those recommendations likely to have the biggest impact on patients’ care and outcomes in the NHS as a whole; they were selected using a variant of the nominal group technique (see the NICE guidelines manual). The priority research recommendations were selected in a similar way.

**Stakeholder involvement in the guideline development process**

Registered stakeholder organisations were invited to comment on the draft scope and the draft guideline. Stakeholder organisations were also invited to undertake a pre-publication check of the final guideline to identify factual inaccuracies. The GDG carefully considered and responded to all comments received from stakeholder organisations. The comments and responses, which were reviewed independently for NICE by a guideline review panel, are published on the NICE website. [This paragraph will apply to the final published guideline.]

**2.7 Specific considerations for this guideline**

For this guideline, the effectiveness of interventions was assessed against the following broad outcome categories:

- mortality
- incidence of seizures
- loss of limbs
- relapse of infection
- duration of hospital stay
- need for rehabilitation
- adverse effects of antibiotic treatment
- immediate, short-term and long-term neurological complications (including hearing loss, visual impairment, mobility and ambulation problems, and psychosocial/behavioural problems).

Some of the clinical questions developed for the SIGN guideline on management of invasive meningococcal disease in children and young people were sufficiently similar to clinical questions developed for this guideline that SIGN search strategies could be updated and used as search strategies for this guideline. For other questions, the GDG developed original search strategies. Some searches were restricted by year of publication, for example to target studies conducted after the introduction of the Hib conjugate vaccine, or by country of study, for example to target studies conducted in high-income (developed) countries, so that the pathogens and clinical settings reported in the studies were relevant to current epidemiology and NHS clinical practice in England in Wales (see individual chapters for further details). Studies involving adults as well as children and young people were included where data were presented separately for children and/or young people.

Where the evidence supported it, the GDG made separate recommendations for the management of different conditions (bacterial meningitis, meningococcal septicaemia and, in some cases, meningococcal disease). Unless otherwise specified the recommendations refer to all children and young people aged under 16 years. The GDG also used the term neonate in some recommendations.
2.8 Schedule for updating the guideline

Clinical guidelines commissioned by NICE are published with a review date 3 years from the date of publication. Reviewing may begin before 3 years have elapsed if significant evidence that affects guideline recommendations is identified sooner.
3 Symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia

3.1 Symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis

Introduction

It is important for healthcare professionals to be aware of clinical features that can be used to help identify children and young people presenting with possible bacterial meningitis. Meningitis involves inflammation of the meninges and spinal cord, so it is typically associated with symptoms and signs that result from this inflammation. Meningitis can be caused by several types of infective organisms, including bacteria (see Section 2.1) and viruses; identifying infection due to bacterial meningitis is particularly important because prompt recognition and referral for emergency admission are essential in order to initiate antibiotic treatment.

Clinical question

In children and young people under 16 years of age, what symptoms and signs or combinations of symptoms and signs are predictive of bacterial meningitis?

Previous UK guidelines

‘Feverish Illness in children’, NICE clinical guideline 47 contains the following recommendations on meningitis.

Meningitis should be considered in a child with fever and any of the following features:

- neck stiffness
- bulging fontanelle
- decreased level of consciousness
- convulsive status epilepticus.

Healthcare professionals should be aware that classical signs of meningitis (neck stiffness, bulging fontanelle, high-pitched cry) are often absent in infants with bacterial meningitis.

Studies considered in this section

All study designs evaluating symptoms and signs, or combinations of symptoms and signs, predictive of meningitis (bacterial and/or aseptic (where no bacteria are detected on testing)) were considered for this section. Studies providing diagnostic accuracy values (or sufficient information to derive diagnostic accuracy values) were included; however the majority of the studies were retrospective. Only research conducted in high-income countries was included.
Studies involving adults as well as children and young people were included where data were presented separately for children and/or young people. Findings were presented for three age groups: children aged 2-18 years, children under 2 years, and neonates. Studies relating to meningococcal disease were excluded (although some of them would have included data on children and young people with bacterial meningitis).

Overview of available evidence

Nine retrospective studies were included, of which eight were cohort studies and one was a cross-sectional study, and three prospective cohort studies of children with diagnosed bacterial meningitis. Baseline data at presentation were used to estimate the frequency of clinical signs and symptoms of bacterial meningitis. Eight studies provided information for children aged up to 18 years, five studies provided information for children under 2 years, and one study provided information for neonates. Two studies compared the incidence of signs and symptoms in viral (aseptic) and bacterial meningitis in 'all children' and one for children under 2 years. All of the studies obtained information on the frequency of clinical symptoms and signs from hospital records. No studies were identified in relation to the frequency of clinical features in primary care settings, or in the pre-hospital phase of illness. Nor were any studies identified that allowed calculation of diagnostic characteristics of any of the clinical features.

Review findings

Incidence of individual signs and symptoms of bacterial meningitis

All children

Results from eight studies were included.

Although specific outcome measures varied, evidence from six studies suggested that most children with meningitis presented with a temperature over 38°C or fever (incidence range 85% to 95%). Two cohort studies and one cross-sectional study reported that just under three-quarters of children with meningitis had vomiting (incidence range 70% to 73%), although one cohort study reported that only 52% of children had vomited and 48% had nausea. Incidence rates for headache varied from 3% to 58% in the four cohort studies reporting this symptom.

The findings of all eight studies suggested that under a third of children with meningitis presented having a seizure (13% to 30%). Evidence from three cohort studies [EL 2 to 3] identified shock as a less common finding at presentation (8% to 17%). All except one study reported conscious state, although definitions and data categories varied across studies. Evidence from four cohort studies suggested that over two thirds of children with meningitis experienced impaired consciousness (60% to 87%), with 8% to 12% presenting with coma in one cross-sectional study and one cohort study. Between 20% and 53% of children were described as 'irritable' or 'agitated' in three cohort studies and one cross-sectional study.

Photophobia was identified in 5% of participants in the one cohort study that reported this symptom. In another cohort study, in which 110/159 participants were under 2 years old, 71% (32%) children had a bulging fontanelle. Six cohort studies and one cross-sectional study reported the incidence of neck stiffness, which ranged from 62% to 75%; one cohort study reported that back rigidity was present in 46% of children.

Brudzinski’s sign was elicited in 66% of children and Kernig’s sign in 53% of children in one cohort study which also reported that 83% of participants had one of three signs (neck stiffness, Kernig’s sign, Brudzinski’s sign) present.

Respiratory symptoms were estimated using different measures in five studies. The incidence of respiratory symptoms was estimated as 25% and 32% in two cohort studies; one cohort study reported that 41% of children had catarrh, another cohort study reported that 12% of children had a chest infiltrate on X-ray, and one cohort study found that 34% were in respiratory distress.
The incidence of otitis media was reported as 14% and 49% in two cohort studies, and 12% of children exhibited focal neurological abnormalities in one cohort study.

**Children under 2 years**

Results from five cohort studies were included. Three cohort studies reported that 69% to 96% of children with meningitis presented with temperature over 38°C or fever. The same studies found that over one-third of children vomited (60%; 31% and 55.2%), and poor feeding was commonly reported (45% and 76%) in two studies. The incidence of seizures ranged from 22% to 55.2% in four cohort studies. Details of the child’s conscious state were provided in all five studies, but definitions and data capture categories were not consistent. In two cohort studies over half of children were described as ‘irritable’ and in three cohort studies between 28% and 54% of children were described as ‘lethargic’. One cohort study reported that 96% of children were ‘lethargic or irritable’ and another cohort study found that 80% were ‘lethargic or comatose’. Two studies reported that 3% and 6% of children were comatose, respectively.

**Incidence of the ‘classical’ signs of meningitis varied across the studies.** All five studies reported neck stiffness (incidence range 13% to 56%), three reported bulging fontanelle (incidence range 41% to 45%), one reported photophobia (7%) and two reported Brudzinski’s sign (11% and 68%) and Kernig’s sign (10% and 36%). The latter study reported that 72% of children exhibited at least one of three ‘classical’ signs of meningitis (neck stiffness, Brudzinski’s sign or Kernig’s sign). However, in another study over half (55%) of children did not exhibit neck stiffness or bulging anterior fontanelle. Approximately one-third of children (incidence 29% and 38%) in two studies were in respiratory distress.

**Neonates**

One retrospective cohort study conducted in the United States of America (USA) examined hospital case notes of 24 ‘older’ neonates (aged 2-6 weeks) who were diagnosed with bacterial meningitis (by cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), blood and urine culture and bacterial antigen detection). Fever and irritability were noted in 79% of the neonates; however, the classical symptoms of nuchal rigidity and bulging fontanelle were not usually evident (17% and 13%, respectively). Twenty-five percent of participants were described as lethargic and 17% had seizures. Non-specific gastrointestinal symptoms (anorexia and/or vomiting, diarrhoea and abdominal distension) were more frequent (reported in 50%, 29%, 17% of participants, respectively) than respiratory symptoms (respiratory distress (17%) and apnoea (13%)).

**Signs and symptoms of bacterial versus those of viral or aseptic meningitis**

Two cohort studies compared the signs and symptoms of bacterial meningitis to those found in viral and aseptic meningitis in children aged under 16 years. One retrospective cohort study reported that more children with bacterial meningitis presented with fever (90% versus 82%, p=0.026) and seizures (19% versus 3%, p=0.01) than did those with viral meningitis. However, in viral meningitis nausea (79% versus 48%, p=0.005), vomiting (81% versus 52%, p=0.009), headache (78% versus 10%, p=0.0001) and neck stiffness (88% versus 62%, p=0.006) were more common than in bacterial meningitis. There was no significant difference in the incidence of photophobia between the two groups. One prospective cohort study reported that all signs and symptoms recorded were observed significantly more frequently in children with bacterial meningitis compared to those with aseptic meningitis (shock 17% versus 7%, p=0.04; lethargic or comatose state 87% versus 45%, p=0.0001; toxic/moribund state 87% versus 45%, p=0.0001; neck stiffness 74% versus 32%, p=0.0001; Brudzinski’s sign 66% versus 26%, p=0.0001; Kernig’s sign 53% versus 15%, p=0.0001; and at least one of three ‘classical’ signs of meningitis (neck stiffness, Brudzinski’s sign or Kernig’s sign) 83% versus 44%, p=0.0001).

**Children under 2 years**

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 41 of 244
One prospective cohort study reported that in children under 2 years old most signs and symptoms were observed more frequently with bacterial meningitis compared to those with aseptic meningitis (lethargic or comatose state 80% versus 46%, p<0.03; toxic/moribund state 40% versus 12%, p=0.006; bulging fontanelle 44% versus 12%, p=0.0002; neck stiffness 52% versus 5%, p=0.0001; Brudzinski’s sign 68% versus 16%, p<0.001; Kernig’s sign 36% versus 7%, p=0.0008; and at least one of three ‘classical’ signs of meningitis (neck stiffness, Brudzinski’s sign or Kernig’s sign) 72% versus 17%, p=0.0001). The incidence of shock was not significantly different between the two groups (16% versus 8%, ’p=NS’).

Evidence statements

Incidence of individual signs and symptoms of bacterial meningitis

All children

The observational studies identified for inclusion did not present diagnostic accuracy characteristics (sensitivity, specificity, etc) of clinical features of meningitis. Furthermore, the studies were heterogeneous in terms of study populations, years in which the studies were conducted (in relation to availability of Hib conjugate vaccine, pneumococcal conjugate vaccine, etc), and types of setting. Only one small study was identified which described clinical features in children referred from primary care; no other data from primary care or emergency departments were identified. The findings may, therefore, apply more to hospitalised children, than those seen at first contact. There is consistent evidence that the vast majority of children with bacterial meningitis presented with high fever (six studies). Two-thirds of children experienced ‘impaired consciousness’ (six studies). Over half the children studied had vomited (four studies), and less than one third had a first seizure at presentation (eight studies). The incidence of an irritable or agitated state varied from 20% to 53% (four studies). Shock was reported in 8-17% of cases (three studies). Neck stiffness was experienced by 60 to 75% of children (seven studies), and evidence from one study suggested that over 80% of children experienced Brudzinski’s sign, Kernig’s sign or neck stiffness. Reporting of respiratory symptom outcomes varied, but depending on definition, respiratory symptoms were reported in 12% (X-ray chest infiltrate) to 40% (catarrh) (five studies). Incidence of otitis media varied in the two studies that reported this outcome. Focal neurological abnormalities were identified in about 10% of children in a further study.

Children under 2 years

In children under 2 years, conscious state was reported mostly in terms of irritability, lethargy or comatose state in single or grouped categories. The evidence suggests that more children were irritable than lethargic, although both states were common and a comatose state occurred in about 5% of children (five studies). Bulging fontanelle was reported in over 50% of cases (three studies), although the incidence of other typical signs of meningitis (Brudzinski’s sign, Kernig’s sign or neck stiffness) varied across studies reporting these outcomes, suggesting that these signs would be less reliable in children under 2 years (neck stiffness, six studies; Brudzinski’s and Kernig’s sign, two studies). One-third of children presented in respiratory distress (two studies).

Neonates

Evidence from one small study suggests that most ‘older’ neonates with bacterial meningitis present with symptoms of fever and irritability, and one-half have anorexia and/or vomiting. Seizures, bulging fontanelle and neck stiffness were reported in less than 20% of neonates.

Signs and symptoms of bacterial versus those of viral or aseptic meningitis

All children

The studies identified compared the frequency of clinical features between children who were evaluated for possible meningitis and those who were subsequently identified as having bacterial or viral meningitis based on spinal fluid examinations. The evidence was limited for several reasons. First, the studies were small (n = 119 and n = 92, respectively). Second, the spectrum of viral meningitis was likely to be more severe than that in a ‘typical’ group of children with viral meningitis because all the children had spinal fluid examinations (so they must have...
been sufficiently suggestive clinically of meningitis to require invasive testing). Third, neither of the studies included clinical features identified before admission to hospital, and so they were likely to represent a more severe spectrum. Finally, diagnostic characteristics (e.g. sensitivity, specificity) of clinical features were not reported in the studies.

Clinical findings from two studies were available for this age group, but signs and symptoms of bacterial meningitis were compared to those of viral meningitis in one study and aseptic meningitis in the other study. Although nausea, vomiting, headache and neck stiffness were reported more frequently with viral meningitis, more children with bacterial meningitis presented with the more serious symptoms of fever and seizures. Photophobia was not a predictor of meningitis type.

The second study captured more serious clinical outcomes (shock, lethargic or comatose state, and toxic or moribund state) and these were reported more frequently in children with bacterial meningitis than in those with aseptic meningitis. Typical meningitis signs (Brudzinski’s sign, Kernig’s sign and at least one of the three ‘classical’ signs of meningitis (neck stiffness, Brudzinski’s sign and Kernig’s sign)) were reported more frequently in bacterial meningitis, as was neck stiffness, in contrast to the first study.

Children under 2 years

One study showed that, in children under 2 years, there was no difference in the incidence of shock between those with bacterial and aseptic meningitis. All other symptoms recorded (lethargic or comatose state, toxic or moribund state, bulging fontanelle, neck stiffness, Brudzinski’s sign, Kernig’s sign, and at least one of three ‘classical’ signs of meningitis (neck stiffness, Brudzinski’s sign and Kernig’s sign)) were reported more frequently in bacterial meningitis.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

The GDG found no studies which provided frequencies of clinical features in children with bacterial meningitis before admission to hospital.

Studies of clinical features noted at or during hospital admission were limited in quality. In particular, none of them allowed the sensitivity or specificity of clinical features to be calculated. The studies were also varied in the type of bacterial meningitis, the stage of the illness, type of hospital setting and country. These studies were also likely to be subject to work-up bias in that only children who had clinical suspicion/predictors of meningitis (e.g. neck stiffness) were likely to proceed to have the reference test (lumbar puncture).

The studies identified show that children with bacterial meningitis are likely to have non specific features of infection such as fever, vomiting, decreased appetite, and non-specific respiratory symptoms. Many, but not all, will have neck stiffness or decreased level of consciousness. A minority of children will have seizures or shock. Infants (children under 2 years) are more likely to present with irritability, lethargy, decreased level of consciousness, and some will have bulging fontanelle and neck stiffness. Bacterial and viral causes of meningitis cannot be reliably differentiated based on clinical features alone. However, children with viral meningitis are less likely to have shock, decreased level of consciousness or seizures than are those with bacterial meningitis.

3.2 Symptoms and signs of meningococcal septicaemia

Introduction

Identifying children and young people who may have meningococcal disease can be difficult. In some patients the illness may be obvious, while in others it may be difficult to differentiate from more common self-limiting infections. There are several reasons why meningococcal disease can present a diagnostic challenge in clinical settings providing first contact care such as primary care or emergency departments. First, the disease is very rare and so most healthcare professionals will see only one or two cases in their entire career. It is, therefore, difficult for many healthcare professionals to gain much experience in recognising the disease. Second, patients
may present at an early stage of the disease, before obvious features have had time to
emerge. At this stage clinical features may be vague and non-specific. Third, the disease
progresses very rapidly, with most children being admitted to hospital within about 24 hours of
the illness starting. This can leave little time to ‘wait and see’ if clinical features are evolving.
Finally, the frequency of clinical features varies between children of different ages.

Clinical question

In children and young people under 16 years of age, what symptoms and signs or combination
of symptoms and signs are predictive of meningococcal septicaemia?

Previous UK guidelines

‘Feverish Illness in children’, NICE clinical guideline 4723 contains recommendations relating to
signs and symptoms of meningococcal disease which were based on three prospective studies
and one retrospective study. Any child presenting with fever and rash may have
meningococcal disease if any of the following features are present: ill-looking child, lesions larger
than 2mm in diameter, capillary refill time of 3 seconds or longer and neck stiffness.

The SIGN guideline on management of invasive meningococcal disease in children and young
people26 recommends that the following features in an ill child should prompt consideration of
diagnosis of invasive meningococcal disease: petechial rash, altered mental state, cold hands
and feet, extremity pain, fever, headache, neck stiffness and skin mottling.

Studies considered in this section

All study designs evaluating symptoms and signs, or combinations of symptoms and signs, which
may be predictive of meningococcal septicaemia were considered for this section. Where
possible, the diagnostic accuracy of symptoms and signs was reported. In most studies, there
was insufficient data to calculate such values. Only studies from high-income settings were
included because of differences in the patterns of presentation of meningococcal disease in
countries where primary care is unavailable and children present late to secondary care.
Retrospective studies with more than 50 cases were included.

Overview of available evidence

Ten studies were included, of which one was a systematic review,40 [EL=2+] three were
prospective cohort studies,41-43 [EL= 2+ and II] and six were retrospective case series44-49 [EL=3].
The three prospective cohort studies investigated the incidence of meningococcal disease in
children presenting with a petechial or haemorrhagic rash. The retrospective review studies
involved children with confirmed or probable meningococcal disease and described the
incidence of presenting symptoms.

Review findings

A systematic review of mainly descriptive studies40 [EL=2+] examined current (1998) knowledge
on signs and symptoms of meningococcal disease. The review included a total of eight studies;
all except two reported clinical findings from the time of hospital admission, although some also
included information from GP referral letters. All except two studies were conducted
retrospectively. Only one study used primary care data for the recognition of meningococcal
disease. The sample size in the studies ranged from 69 to 298. Three studies included in the
review involved adults (20% or less of the study population). Presentation with N. meningitidis
infection ranged from non-specific acute febrile illness through meningitis to fulminant
septicaemia with purpuric rash and shock. Fever was present in 71-100% of cases, vomiting in 34-
76% of cases, and lethargy in 28-89% of cases. Non-specific upper respiratory tract symptoms
were reported in up to half of patients in the week before admission to hospital.

For some symptoms the range of incidence was very wide: neck stiffness was reported in six
studies and ranged from 11% to 79% of cases; convulsions were reported in five studies and
ranged from 4% to 21%; and lethargy, reported in three 3 studies, ranged from 21% to 89%.
Features specific for meningococcal disease (petechial or purpuric rash) were reported in seven studies and ranged from 48% to 80% of cases. The presence of neck stiffness and rash was reported in only one study and was recorded in 26% of cases. Details of signs and symptoms reported in each study included in the review are presented in table 3.1.

A prospective cohort study \(^4^2\) [EL=2+] sought to determine the incidence of meningococcal disease in children with fever and petechiae presenting to the emergency department of a tertiary care hospital in the USA (1982–1983). One hundred and ninety patients enrolled with the following selection criteria: presence of fever or history of fever (>38°C); petechial rash; and age less than 21 years. The number of petechiae was measured using a scale of 0 to 2 (e.g. 0 indicated petechiae <10 and 2 indicated generalised petechiae). The age range of patients was 3 months to 15 years. Seven percent (13/190) of children who presented with fever and petechiae had meningococcal disease (eight children had meningococcal meningitis; five had bacteraemia caused by \(N.\) meningitidis). Two children had bacteraemia caused by other organisms. Patients with invasive bacterial disease (bacteraemia without meningitis) and patients with meningitis only appeared more ill, were more likely to have signs of meningeal irritation and were more likely to have petechiae below the nipple line compared with patients with nonbacteraemic disease.

A prospective cohort study \(^4^1\) [EL=II] determined criteria for early distinction between meningococcal disease and other conditions with similar clinical features, and aimed to identify other causes for haemorrhagic rashes accompanied by fever. Two hundred and sixty-four infants and children admitted to paediatric departments in five Danish hospitals were included (1993–1996). Inclusion criteria were: presence of haemorrhages in the skin, irrespective of size, detected at admission or during the stay in hospital; rectal temperature above 38°C at some time within the 24 hours before inclusion; and age greater than 1 month and less than 16 years. An aetiological agent was identified in 28% subjects. Thirty-nine children (15%) had meningococcal disease. Two percent had another type of invasive bacterial infection. The study reported that five clinical features (presence of characteristic skin haemorrhages, universal distribution of skin haemorrhages, maximum diameter of skin haemorrhages >2mm, poor general condition and nuchal rigidity) independently predicted meningococcal disease (see table 3.1). CIs were wide, reflecting the small numbers of children included in the analysis.

### Table 3.1 Clinical features of meningococcal disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical feature</th>
<th>OR</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Characteristic skin haemorrhages</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>2.5 to 50.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Universal distribution of skin haemorrhages</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>1.1 to 23.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum diameter of skin haemorrhages &gt;2 mm</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>1.5 to 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor general condition</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>3.1 to 62.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuchal rigidity</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>1.1 to 44.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ninety-seven percent of children with meningococcal disease had two or more of the above clinical features. The sensitivity and false positive rates of a diagnostic algorithm based on a simple additive index using these five clinical features (scores ranging from 0 to 5) were as follows: ≥1, 97%, 49%; ≥2, 97%, 12%; and ≥3, 82%, 5%, respectively.

A prospective cohort study \(^4^3\) [EL=II] examined what clinical features and investigations in children with a non-blanching rash predicted meningococcal infection. A total of 233 infants and children aged 15 years and younger with a non-blanching rash admitted to a paediatric accident and emergency department in the UK were included (1998–1999). Petechiae were defined as non-blanching spots in the skin, less than 2mm in diameter, known to be new in onset. The lesions were classed as purpura if they were more than 2mm in diameter. Fifteen children with obvious alternative diagnoses (including Henoch–Schonlein purpura, idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura, acute leukaemia and a known clotting disorder) were excluded. Twenty-four children (11%) had proven meningococcal disease. Children with meningococcal infection were more likely to be ‘ill’ (OR 16.7, 95% CI 5.8 to 47.6), to have an axillary temperature >38.5°C (OR 8.0, 95% CI 2.7 to 23.8), purpura (OR 37.2, 95% CI 11.7 to 118.3), and a capillary refill time of more than 2 seconds (OR 29.4, 95% CI 9.4 to 92.6) than were children who did not have...
meningococcal infection. The sensitivities, specificities, PPVs and NPVs were: ill appearing 79%, 81%, 35% and 97%, respectively; purpura 83%, 88%, 47% and 98%, respectively; fever >38.5°C 58%, 81%, 27% and 94%, respectively; fever >37.5°C 79%, 55%, 18% and 95%, respectively; capillary refill >2 seconds 83%, 85% 42% and 98%, respectively.

A retrospective case series\textsuperscript{49} [EL=3] conducted in a UK hospital investigated clinical features of meningococcal disease in children and young people under 16 years. Sixty-nine children were included in the study: there were 31 males (mean age 1.75 years) and 39 females (mean age 2.73 years). On presentation, 56 (81%) of the children had a temperature higher than 38°C and 41 (60%) had shock and/or an abnormal neurological sign. Twenty-three children over the age of 3 years presented with a headache, although the total number of children over 3 years was not specified. On admission, 34 (49%) children had a petechial rash, compared to 13 (39%) with a non-petechial rash. Among five deaths reported, all five children were severely ill at presentation and three (60%) had petechial rash on admission.

A retrospective case series\textsuperscript{44} [EL=3] examined the predominant presenting features of patients notified with probable or suspected meningococcal disease in the Auckland area in the 18 months from January 1998 (n=248, median age 4 years, range 1 month to 88 years). All probable cases of meningococcal disease (clinically compatible but without serological or bacteriological confirmation) and confirmed cases (those clinically compatible cases where laboratory tests isolated \textit{N. meningitidis} from a normally sterile site, or meningococcal antigen in CSF, or a positive PCR) were analysed. Presenting features were extracted from initial admission notes, GP referral letters or ambulance observer sheets by age group (child if <10 years, young person if ≥10 years) and discharge diagnosis (septicaemia or meningitis or both). In children, fever was present in 96% cases, rash in 66% cases, lethargy in 64%, vomiting and nausea in 59%, irritability in 45%, refusing food and drink in 42%, headache in 27% and cough in 27% of cases. In young people fever was present in 92%, headache in 81%, vomiting and nausea in 77%, muscle ache or joint pain in 65%, rash in 64%, lethargy in 57%, neck stiffness in 53% and chills in 39%. The most common presenting features of meningococcal disease in those who had septicaemia at discharge were fever (98%), rash (70%), vomiting and nausea (64%) and lethargy (60%). Those who had meningitis as the diagnosis at discharge most commonly presented with fever (93%), vomiting and nausea (66%), lethargy (64%) and rash (58%).

A retrospective case series conducted in the UK\textsuperscript{46} [EL=3] used a telephone questionnaire to study 103 cases of all ages with a clinical diagnosis of meningococcal meningitis (1997). Patients were classified as having meningitis in 46 (45%) cases and meningitis with septicaemia in 57 (55%) cases. In the age group 0–4 years the most common presenting features for meningococcal meningitis and septicaemia were fever (98% cases), rash (83%), drowsiness (80%), vomiting (67%), and neck stiffness (57%). Among children aged 5–14 years the most common clinical features were fever (94% cases), rash (94%), neck stiffness (82%), headache (76%), and drowsiness and vomiting (53% each). Among cases aged 15–24 years the most common clinical features were fever (100% cases), rash and neck stiffness (72%), headache (67%), and drowsiness and intensive care admission (50% each). Shock was reported in 31% of children aged 0–4 years, and in 35% of children aged 5–14 years. Nine percent of patients died. 14% (8/57) had meningitis and septicaemia and 4% (2/46) had predominantly meningitis.

A retrospective case series\textsuperscript{44} [EL=3] sought to determine the frequency of extremity pain or refusal to walk in children with meningococcal disease. Medical records of 274 people with invasive meningococcal disease who were aged under 20 years were reviewed. Patients with signs or symptoms of extremity pain or refusal to walk were identified on the basis of history or physical examination. Sixteen percent (45/274) of patients had extremity symptoms as part of their presenting histories and/or at physical examination. Children with meningococcal disease who presented with extremity symptoms were significantly older than those without extremity symptoms (mean age 77.9 months versus 44 months, p<0.001).

A retrospective case series\textsuperscript{47} [EL=3] reviewed admission records of 407 children with invasive meningococcal disease in two paediatric tertiary referral centres and two regional paediatric units in Ireland (1995–2000). Symptoms that occurred before hospitalisation included fever (present in 97%–99% of cases), rash (present in 84%–88% of cases), irritability (present in 35%–36%
of cases), and neck stiffness (present in 5-6% of the cases). All the values reported were dependent on serotype.

A retrospective case series\(^48\) [EL=3] aimed to determine the frequency and time of onset of clinical features of meningococcal disease to enable clinicians to make an early diagnosis before admission to hospital. Four hundred and forty-eight children aged 16 years or younger were included. Most children had only non-specific symptoms in the first 4–6 hours, but almost all were admitted to hospital within 24 hours. The most common early features were cold hands and feet (35-47%), leg pain (31-63%, excluding infants) and abnormal colour (17-21%, described as pallor or mottling). Haemorrhagic rash was reported in 42-70% of cases. Meningism was reported in about half the children aged over 5 years (46-53%), and about one-half of these children presented with photophobia. The most common late feature was confusion or delirium (43-49% of cases). In all age groups symptoms progressed in the following order: fever, symptoms of sepsis, and classical symptoms of haemorrhagic rash, impaired consciousness, and meningism. Three features of sepsis occurred earlier in the illness: these were leg pain (median 7 hours, 37%), abnormal skin colour (10 hours, 18.6%), and cold hands and feet (12 hours, 43.2%).

The classical features of haemorrhagic rash, meningism and impaired consciousness developed later (median onset 13–22 hours). Seventy-two percent of children had earlier symptoms (leg pains, cold hands and feet, and abnormal skin colour) that developed first at a median time of 8 hours.

**Evidence statement**

The diagnostic accuracy of individual or combinations of clinical signs and symptoms for identifying meningococcal disease in primary and secondary care settings was not reported in most of the studies included in the review. Children with meningococcal disease present with a wide variety of clinical features, depending on their age, the duration of illness, and whether they have focal infection (e.g. meningitis) or sepsicaemia. Evidence shows that in the initial stages of the disease, children have non-specific features of a febrile illness which may be similar to those seen with minor respiratory or gastrointestinal illnesses, such as coryza and diarrhoea. Thus meningococcal disease is not always obvious at the child’s initial presentation to primary or emergency care settings. The vast majority of children with meningococcal disease present with fever, nausea and vomiting, drowsiness and irritability, and decreased appetite, but these are relatively non specific clinical features.

**GDG Interpretation**

Symptoms which are considered typical of meningeal irritation, namely headache, neck stiffness or photophobia occur in a minority of children before hospital admission but they are more likely to occur in older children and young people.

In the early stages of illness the majority of children experience pain in the extremities, paleness (mottled or pallid appearance, or cyanosis) and cold extremities (despite the presence of fever).

Clinical features vary with the age of the child: infants are less likely to have signs of meningism, extremity pain or haemorrhagic rash, whereas older children and young people are more likely to have meningism, confusion, haemorrhagic rash, or extremity pain.

The majority of children with meningococcal disease will develop a haemorrhagic rash during their illness, but this may be absent in the pre-hospital phase of the illness, and may initially be blanching or macular in nature.

Although the presence of petechiae in a febrile child can indicate the presence of serious bacterial infection, especially \(N.\) meningitidis, the majority of children seen with petechial rashes in emergency and primary care settings will not have meningococcal disease. The clinical features in a febrile child that are more likely to suggest meningococcal disease in a child with petechiae are an overall ill appearance, a widespread distribution of petechiae, petechiae that are larger than 2mm, prolonged capillary refill time, signs of meningeal irritation.
**Recommendations**

Use tables 3.2 and 3.3 to identify children and young people who may have bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia. Non-specific signs, such as fever and vomiting, are common in both conditions.

---

### Table 3.2 Symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom/sign</th>
<th>Children under 2 years (including neonates)</th>
<th>Children and young people 2 years or older</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Early</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold hands and feet</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irritability</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg pain</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lethargy</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory symptoms</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulging fontanelle</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>Not relevant at this age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical shock</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confusion</td>
<td>Not relevant at this age</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convulsions/seizures</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal neurological signs</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impaired consciousness</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neck stiffness</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petechial rash</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
<td>++ (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpuric rash</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photophobia</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid deterioration in condition</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Table 3.3 Symptoms and signs of meningococcal septicaemia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom/sign</th>
<th>Children under 2 years (including neonates)</th>
<th>Children and young people 2 years or older</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Early</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold hands and feet</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irritability</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg pain</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lethargy</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory symptoms</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulging fontanelle</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>Not relevant at this age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical shock</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confusion</td>
<td>Not relevant at this age</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convulsions/seizures</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal neurological signs</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impaired consciousness</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neck stiffness</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petechial rash</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
<td>++ (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpuric rash</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
<td>NK (more common in meningococcal meningitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photophobia</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid deterioration in condition</td>
<td>NK</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*The prevalence figures are derived from studies reviewed for the guideline. See sections 3.1 and 3.2 for details.*

---

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009)  Page 48 of 244
### Symptom/sign

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Children under 2 years (Including neonates)</th>
<th>Children and young people 2 years or older</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cold hands and feet</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irritability</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leg pain</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lethargy</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory symptoms</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulging fontanelle</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical shock</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confusion</td>
<td>Not relevant at this age ++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convulsions/seizures</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal neurological signs</td>
<td>NK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impaired consciousness</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neck stiffness</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petechial rash</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpuric rash</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photophobia</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid deterioration in condition</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ prevalence less than 25%
++ prevalence 25–50%
+++ prevalence more than 50%
NK prevalence not known

Be aware that classical signs of meningitis (neck stiffness, bulging fontanelle, high-pitched cry) are often absent in infants with bacterial meningitis. This recommendation is from ‘Feverish illness in children’ [NICE clinical guideline 47]).

Be aware that children and young people with bacterial meningitis commonly present with non-specific signs including fever, vomiting, respiratory symptoms and irritability. Some children with bacterial meningitis will present with seizures (see table 2 in 'Feverish illness in children' [NICE clinical guideline 47]).

Healthcare professionals should consider other non-specific features of the child’s or young person’s presentation, such as the level of parental concern (particularly compared with previous illness in the child or young person or their family), how quickly the illness is progressing, and clinical judgement of the overall severity of the child’s or young person’s illness.

Remain alert to the possibility of meningococcal disease when assessing children or young people with acute febrile illness.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis undertake and record physiological observations of heart rate, respiratory rate, SpO2, blood pressure, temperature and neurological assessment (for example the Alert, Voice, Pain, Unresponsive [AVPU] scale) at least hourly.
Research recommendations

What are the symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease in children and young people aged under 16 years that differentiate between these conditions and minor self-limiting infections (including those characterised by fever)?

Why this is important

Research is needed from primary and secondary care settings on the diagnostic accuracy of symptoms and signs suggestive of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease in children and young people. The research should focus on identifying individual symptoms and signs, or groups of symptoms and signs, that are effective as predictors of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease and which differentiate effectively between these conditions and minor self-limiting infections. The research should include consideration of the effectiveness of symptoms and signs of acute feverish illness as predictors of meningococcal disease. Consideration should also be given to the age of the child or young person (in terms of the relevance of particular symptoms and signs) and the clinical setting at presentation. Suitable study designs would include diagnostic accuracy studies as well as observational studies (such as case–control studies), and the research could include a systematic review of studies that have already been published.
4 Management in the pre-hospital setting

4.1 Pre-hospital antibiotics for suspected bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease

Introduction

Children and young people in the UK with bacterial meningitis or meningococcal disease will present to one of several first-contact settings: these include general practice, out of hours or walk-in centres, emergency departments, NHS Direct, or to paramedics via 999 emergency calls (for transfer to secondary care). The priorities for healthcare professionals in these settings are to:

- identify any immediately life-threatening features
- assess the likelihood of serious illness or self-limiting illness, without necessarily diagnosing a particular condition
- determine a source of the illness to direct specific treatment
- make appropriate management decisions based on the results of assessment.

Healthcare professionals will occasionally encounter children and young people with signs and symptoms suggestive of bacterial meningitis or meningococcal disease (see Chapter 3). Having identified children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or meningococcal disease in the pre-hospital setting, they should be transferred to secondary care urgently. This will often involve contact with the emergency ambulance (999) services to arrange transport, and communicating essential clinical information (for example, relevant past medical history, medications, and drug allergies) to hospital-based medical teams, usually by telephone.

Guidance on the administration of parenteral antibiotics to people with suspected meningococcal infection in pre-hospital settings (PL/CMO/99/1) was issued by the Chief Medical Officer (CMO) in 1999. The guidance emphasised the need for timely recognition of meningococcal infection and urgent transfer to hospital. The guidance stated that benzylpenicillin should be carried by GPs in emergency bags (and, presumably, stocked by out of hours services), and administered to patients with suspected meningococcal infection. The guidance also stated that GPs should not be concerned that administering penicillin would delay transfer of the patient to hospital or mask diagnosis. The rationale for this advice was that meningococcal disease usually progresses rapidly and that administering an antibiotic that is active against *N. meningitidis* at the earliest possible opportunity should reduce mortality and morbidity. Conversely, it has been suggested that antibiotic-mediated bacteriolysis might worsen disease initially and that antibiotics might be more safely administered in hospital.[REF]

Current guidance from the CMO does not support pre-hospital administration of parenteral penicillin in children with suspected meningitis alone (i.e. suspected bacterial meningitis in the absence of a rash). There are several reasons why it has been customary to administer antibiotics in hospital rather than in the community for suspected bacterial meningitis including:

- the slower rate of progression of disease compared with septicaemia; the usual practice of collecting CSF before administering antibiotics; and the difficulty in distinguishing bacterial meningitis from other illnesses that do not require antibiotics.

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 51 of 244
Clinical question

Does giving antibiotics to children and young people with suspected meningitis pre-hospital improve outcome?

Does giving antibiotics to children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia pre-hospital improve outcome?

Previous UK guidelines

‘Feverish illness in children’, NICE clinical guideline 47 recommends that children with suspected meningococcal disease be given parenteral antibiotics (benzylpenicillin or a third-generation cephalosporin) at the earliest opportunity.

The SIGN guideline on management of invasive meningococcal disease in children and young people recommends that parenteral antibiotics (benzylpenicillin or cefotaxime) should be given as soon as invasive meningococcal disease is suspected, and this action should not be delayed while investigations are being undertaken.

Studies considered in this section

Studies evaluating the effects of pre-hospital antibiotics in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or meningococcal disease were considered for this section. Studies involving adults only were excluded. All study designs were included. Studies were included only if they were conducted in settings where primary care is available for most children.

Overview of available evidence

No high-quality evidence was found on the effects of pre-hospital antibiotics in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis. All the evidence identified related to suspected meningococcal disease and came from six studies, one of which was a systematic review of RCTs [EL=1++], one was a systematic review of observational studies [EL=2+], one was a case–control study [EL=2++], two were retrospective cohort studies [EL=2+ and 2–] and one was a retrospective review of hospital records. [EL=3]

Review findings

A systematic review [EL=1++] (search date 2007) assessed the effectiveness and safety of preadmission antibiotics in people of all ages with suspected meningococcal disease. The search included RCTs and quasi-RCTs, but no RCTs were found that compared preadmission antibiotics with placebo or no treatment.

A systematic review of 14 observational studies [EL=2+] evaluated the effectiveness of preadmission antibiotics in reducing mortality from meningococcal disease in people of all ages. Five of the studies included information on oral antibiotics given before admission. In these studies, oral antibiotics were usually given because of a diagnosis of suspected respiratory tract infection, rather than suspected meningococcal disease. As the population of interest in this guideline is children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or meningococcal disease, data relating to oral antibiotics were not extracted from these studies. Twelve of the studies (involving a total of 3357 people) included information on preadmission parenteral antibiotics; of these eight studies showed a beneficial effect of giving parenteral antibiotics before admission and four reported adverse effects. RRs for mortality in these studies ranged from 0.16 (95% CI 0.01 to 2.63) to 2.36 (95% CI 0.25 to 22.54). Only one study reported a statistically significant effect (RR 0.35, 95% CI 0.16 to 0.80). The proportion of cases who received treatment differed between studies (treatment rates ranged from 15% to 59%, Chi-squared for heterogeneity 11.02, p=0.09, I²=46%), and so studies were considered and reported on an individual basis. The authors of the review could not conclude whether or not antibiotics given before admission had an effect on case fatality rates.

A case–control study conducted in the UK [EL=2++] looked at the use of parenteral penicillin by GPs who had diagnosed meningococcal disease in 26 children who died from the condition.
and 132 survivors. Administration of parenteral penicillin was associated with increased risk of death (OR 7.4, 95% CI 1.5 to 37.7) and pre-admission parenteral penicillin was associated with an increased risk of complications, including renal failure, cardiovascular failure, respiratory failure, neurological complications, tissue necrosis requiring excision or amputation (OR 5.0, 95% CI 1.7 to 15.0). Children who received penicillin had more severe disease on admission (median 6.5 versus 4.0, p=0.002). The association between parenteral penicillin and poor outcome may be explained by children who were more severely ill being given penicillin before admission.

A retrospective cohort study [EL 2+] conducted in Spain (in 2009) examined whether pre-hospital oral antibiotics reduced mortality from invasive meningococcal disease; 848 patients from 31 hospitals were included in the study, of whom 226 received oral antibiotics before admission. The average age was 10.4 years and children under the age of 1 year were excluded. The mortality rate in those who received pre-hospital antibiotics was 2.7%, compared to 6.9% among those who did not receive antibiotics. The OR for pre-hospital antibiotics was 0.37 (95% CI 0.15 to 0.88) after adjusting for propensity score, time from first symptoms to first dose of antibiotic in hospital, and age. After excluding patients whose diagnosis was based solely on clinical suspicions (i.e. those for whom there was neither a microbiological culture of N. meningitidis from a sterile sample nor a Gram stain compatible with N. meningitidis), the OR was 0.4 (95% CI 0.11 to 1.4). The OR for the non-treatment group was 2.7 (95% CI 1.07 to 6.66) after adjusting for propensity score, time from first symptoms to first dose of parenteral antibiotic in hospital and age.

One retrospective cohort study [EL=2–] conducted in the UK (1990–1993) investigated the effects of pre-admission parenteral antibiotics on mortality (data on this outcome were included in the systematic review described above). A further publication from the same study reported long-term sequelae in 46 people with meningococcal disease, of whom 27 had received pre-hospital benzylpenicillin. There was no significant difference in mortality between people given benzylpenicillin before admission to hospital and those who did not receive pre-hospital benzylpenicillin (RR 1.06, 95% CI 0.19 to 5.72). There was no significant difference between the groups in the mean length of hospital stay or in the frequency of sequelae of more than 3 months’ duration (seven children were reported to have long-term sequelae, including partial deafness, oculomotor palsy, seizures, impaired motor skills, arthritis and problems at school; the difference between the groups was reported as non-significant but no p-value was reported).

A retrospective review of hospital records [EL=3] examined risk factors associated with mortality in 293 people of all ages with meningococcal disease admitted to a university hospital in Western Norway (1985–2002). There was no significant difference in mortality between people who received pre-admission antibiotics and those who were not treated with antibiotics before admission (p=0.34). The study did not report whether pre-admission antibiotics were given orally or parenterally, but the setting suggests that antibiotics were given parenterally.

Evidence statement

No high-quality evidence was identified in relation to the use of pre-hospital antibiotics for suspected bacterial meningitis. For children and young people with meningococcal disease the available evidence does not allow any conclusion to be drawn about whether or not pre-hospital parenteral antibiotics affect mortality or morbidity.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

Suspected bacterial meningitis

Pre-hospital antibiotics are not currently recommended for children with suspected bacterial meningitis (those without a non-blanching rash), and the GDG found no evidence to direct a change in practice.

Suspected meningococcal disease (suspected meningitis or septicaemia with a non-blanching rash)

Although the GDG found no evidence to direct a change in practice from the advice of the CMO (PL/CMO/99/1) (i.e. to give parenteral antibiotics to people with suspected bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009))
meningococcal disease), their interpretation of the available evidence was that it did not provide strong support for the recommendation. The GDG considered that a strong recommendation to give antibiotics in the community could result in delayed access to secondary care. The GDG’s view was that administration of antibiotics in combination with fluid resuscitation was the priority to prevent death in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia, and that this was currently undertaken almost exclusively in secondary care. For this reason, the consensus view of the GDG was that parenteral antibiotics should be administered as early as practicable in meningococcal disease, but that the priority in clinical management should be immediate access to hospital care.

Benzylpenicillin is the most frequently used antibiotic in primary care and the GDG found no evidence to recommend an alternative.

Children and young people may be identified in GP records or by parent-reported histories as being allergic to penicillin. Parenteral penicillin should not be given to children in whom there is a history of possible severe reactions to penicillin. Severe reactions would include collapse, loss of consciousness, breathing difficulty or rash. A history of gastrointestinal disturbance following penicillin (such as diarrhoea or vomiting), suggests intolerance and not an allergic reaction.

**Recommendations**

Transfer children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia to secondary care as an emergency by telephoning 999.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia, give parenteral antibiotics at the earliest opportunity, either in primary or secondary care.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia, do not give parenteral antibiotics if this will delay urgent transfer to hospital.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia, if antibiotics are administered before admission to hospital, give intramuscular benzylpenicillin (children under 1 year 300 mg, children 1–9 years 600 mg, children and young people 10 years and over 1.2 g).36

Do not give benzylpenicillin or any other antibiotic before admission to hospital to children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia who have a history of severe allergy to penicillins or cephalosporins (such as collapse, loss of consciousness, difficulty in breathing or rash).

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia who have a history of intolerance to penicillins or cephalosporins (such as diarrhoea or vomiting) give parenteral benzylpenicillin.

**Research recommendations**

Does the administration of pre-hospital antibiotics improve outcomes in children and young people with suspected meningococcal disease?

Why this is important

The GDG has recommended administration of antibiotics (benzylpenicillin) for children and young people with suspected meningitis in the pre-hospital setting, in accordance with advice issued by the Chief Medical Officer (PL/CMO/99/1). However, no evidence was identified to indicate whether such practice improves outcomes. Research is needed to evaluate the effectiveness of administering antibiotics in the pre-hospital setting. Suitable research designs would include observational studies (e.g. cohort studies or case-control studies) to compare...
outcomes in children and young people with suspected meningococcal disease according to whether or not they receive antibiotics before admission to hospital. The studies could evaluate the effect of immediate versus delayed administration of antibiotics and comparison of outcomes in children and young people in whom meningococcal disease is confirmed after hospital admission, and those in whom an alternative diagnosis is made.
5 Diagnosis in secondary care

5.1 Non-specific tests for meningococcal disease

Introduction

Meningococcal disease in childhood classically presents with a non-blanching rash in a feverish, ill child, although the rash may occur late in the illness or not at all in children who have meningococcal meningitis without septicaemia. Increased public awareness of meningococcal disease has meant that children may present earlier in the course of disease with fever and a petechial rash, although others may not yet appear unwell. Besides meningococcal disease, there are many other infective causes of petechial rashes in febrile children. Healthcare professionals assessing febrile children with rashes are, therefore, faced with deciding which children have invasive meningococcal disease and require immediate antibiotics and supportive therapy, and which do not. Non-specific laboratory investigations are part of the diagnostic work up of these children.

Clinical question

In children and young people under 16 years of age, are the results of non-specific laboratory tests predictive of meningococcal septicaemia?

Previous UK guidelines

The Feverish Illness in Children guideline recommends that a full blood count and C-reactive protein should be performed as part of the initial laboratory investigations in:

- infants younger than 3 months with fever
- children older than 3 months with fever without apparent source with:
  - one or more ‘red’ features (features suggestive of a high risk of serious illness) or
  - one or more ‘amber’ features (features suggestive of an intermediate risk of serious illness).

The guideline recommends that the clinician should consider taking a blood gas sample in children with ‘red features’ as guided by the clinical assessment.

Studies considered in this section

All study designs evaluating the usefulness of white blood count, C-reactive protein (CRP) or blood gas for diagnosing meningococcal disease in children and young people with a petechial rash were considered for this section. Studies assessing the predictive ability of laboratory tests to diagnose invasive bacterial illness were included only if most cases of invasive illness were caused by N. meningitidis. Studies that included adults were excluded.

Overview of available evidence

Two prospective cohort studies [EL=2+] were found. One study involved children with petechiae and fever; the other study involved children with a non-blanching rash, 80% of whom had petechiae only. Both studies assessed the diagnostic value of white blood cell count and one study assessed the diagnostic value of CRP. No studies were found evaluating blood gas as an initial investigation for diagnosing meningococcal disease in children with a petechial rash.
Review findings

One prospective cohort study aimed to determine clinical and laboratory predictors of meningococcal disease in children with fever and petechiae admitted to a children’s hospital (USA, 1982–1983) [EL=2+]. Of 190 children aged 3 months to 15 years admitted with fever >38 °C and petechiae, 15 (8%) had invasive bacterial illness, 13 of whom had meningococcal disease. 20.5% (39/190) had non-bacteraemic illness (S. pyogenes pharyngitis, urinary tract infection or viral infection). The remaining 136 children (71.5%) had no cause identified for their illness. Results were analysed for the 54 children with a confirmed microbiological diagnosis. The study found that children with invasive bacterial disease had significantly higher mean peripheral white blood cell counts and absolute immature polymorphonuclear neutrophil counts (band forms) than children with non-bacteraemic illness (mean white blood count: 17,600 cells/µl with invasive bacterial disease versus 11,600 cells/µl with non-bacteraemic illness, p=0.005; peripheral band count: 3,717 with invasive bacterial disease versus 523 with nonbacteraemic illness, p<0.001). The accuracy of initial laboratory tests as indicators of invasive bacterial illness in this subgroup were as follows: peripheral white blood count >15,000 cells/µl: sensitivity: 67%, specificity: 85%, positive likelihood ratio: 4.5; negative likelihood ratio: 0.39; peripheral absolute band form count >500 cells/µl: sensitivity: 80%, specificity: 74%; positive likelihood ratio: 3.0, negative likelihood ratio: 0.27. If the peripheral white blood count, the peripheral absolute band form count and CSF white blood count were all normal, the likelihood of invasive bacterial illness in the analysed subgroup (28%) affects the performance characteristics of the diagnostic tests under evaluation and limits the external validity of the study results to children seen in a secondary care setting.

A prospective cohort study assessed whether clinical features and laboratory investigations could predict meningococcal disease in 233 children admitted to a children’s Accident and Emergency Department with a non blanching rash (UK, 1998–1999) [EL=2+]. Fifteen children with an obvious alternative diagnosis were excluded, and 218 children younger than 15 years were included in the final analysis; 11% (24/218) had laboratory proven meningococcal disease; 80% (175/218) presented with petechiae only (defined as new-onset, non-blanching spots in the skin, less than 2mm in diameter), of whom 4 had meningococcal disease. Forty-three children (20%) presented with both petechiae and purpura (non-blanching spots >2 mm in diameter), of whom 20 had meningococcal disease. Children with meningococcal disease were more likely to have an abnormal neutrophil count than children who did not have meningococcal disease (OR 2.7, 95% CI 1.1 to 6.5). As shown in table 5.1, 38% of children without meningococcal disease also had an abnormal neutrophil count, and the diagnostic accuracy of an abnormal neutrophil count or an abnormal white blood cell count was low. No child with a CRP <6mg/l had meningococcal disease. However, the specificity of a CRP >6mg/l for predicting meningococcal disease was low (see table 5.1). A CRP >99mg/l had a high specificity but a low sensitivity for predicting meningococcal disease, with less than half of children in the study later diagnosed with meningococcal disease having an initial CRP above 99mg/l (see table 5.1).

Table 5.1 Accuracy of white blood cell count, neutrophil count and CRP for diagnosing meningococcal disease.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>Positive likelihood ratio*</th>
<th>Negative likelihood ratio*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abnormal white blood cell count</td>
<td>58% (39 to 78)</td>
<td>56% (48 to 63)</td>
<td>1.32</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abnormal neutrophil count</td>
<td>68% (49 to 88)</td>
<td>62% (55 to 69)</td>
<td>1.79</td>
<td>0.52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP &gt; 6 mg/l</td>
<td>100% (96 to 100)</td>
<td>54% (47 to 62)</td>
<td>2.17</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP 6–99 mg/l*</td>
<td>52%</td>
<td>58%</td>
<td>1.26</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRP &gt; 99 mg/l*</td>
<td>47%</td>
<td>96%</td>
<td>11.75</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 57 of 244
**Evidence statement**

Evidence about the value of initial blood tests for predicting meningococcal disease in children with a petechial rash is limited by the small number of relevant studies.

There is evidence that children with meningococcal disease presenting to secondary care with a petechial rash are more likely to have a higher white blood cell count, a higher band count and an abnormal neutrophil count compared with children who do not have meningococcal disease. None of the above tests had sufficiently high sensitivity or specificity to accurately predict a diagnosis of meningococcal disease. One study found that a combination of normal peripheral white blood count, absolute band form count and CSF white blood count was associated with a low risk of invasive bacterial illness, including meningococcal disease.

There is evidence from one study that children presenting to secondary care with petechiae and fever with an initial CRP <6mg/l are unlikely to have meningococcal disease. A high CRP >99mg/l can be used to identify children at a high risk of meningococcal disease. A high CRP is, however, poorly sensitive for predicting meningococcal disease and the absence of a high CRP cannot be used to rule out meningococcal disease.

No studies were found evaluating the usefulness of blood gas for diagnosing meningococcal disease in children and young people with a petechial rash.

**GDG interpretation of the evidence**

Children with invasive meningococcal disease may have a higher white cell count and CRP than those with viral infections and those with non-invasive bacterial infections. However, these tests alone cannot be relied on to predict which children have meningococcal disease. Children early in their illness or with rapidly advancing meningococcal disease may have a normal or low WBC count and a normal CRP.

The finding of a high CRP >99mg/l is specific but not sensitive for meningococcal disease in children with fever and a rash. A low CRP does not exclude meningococcal disease.

The GDG concludes that a full blood count and CRP should be performed on children with fever (or history of fever) and a petechial rash and the results combined with a thorough clinical assessment for the signs of septicaemia and meningitis.

The GDG noted that in their experience various biochemical and haematological abnormalities were frequently observed in children with suspected meningococcal septicaemia and in particular, hypoglycaemia, acidosis, hypokalaemia, hypomagnesaemia, hypocalcaemia, anaemia, coagulopathy could compromise the child’s condition. The GDG were of the view that blood tests should be undertaken to detect these abnormalities and that correction should be undertaken according to agreed local or national protocols.

**Recommendations**

Perform a very careful examination for signs of underlying meningitis or septicaemia in children and young people presenting with petechial rashes (see tables 3.2 and 3.3).

Give intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily) immediately if any of the following occur at any point during the assessment of a child or young person:

- a rash becomes purpuric
- petechiae start to spread
- the child or young person looks unwell
- signs of meningitis or septicaemia are found (see tables 3.2 and 3.3).

---

37 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.
Do a full blood count, C-reactive protein (CRP), coagulation, blood culture, polymerase chain reaction (PCR), blood gas and glucose for children and young people with an unexplained petechial rash and fever (or history of fever) and any of the following:

- spreading rash
- purpura
- signs of bacterial meningitis (see table 3.2)
- signs of meningococcal septicaemia (see table 3.3)
- looking unwell.

These children and young people should be considered to be at high risk of having meningococcal disease and intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily) should be started immediately (see ‘Empiric antibiotics’ on page 16).

Do a full blood count and CRP (with coagulation, blood culture, PCR, and blood gas if the blood sample is sufficient) on presentation for children and young people with a non-spreading petechial rash and fever (or history of fever) who do not have any purpura, signs of meningitis or septicaemia (see tables 3.2 and 3.3) and who do not look unwell.

- Children and young people with a raised CRP and/or raised white blood cell count (especially if the neutrophil count is raised) should be considered to be at increased risk of having meningococcal disease and treated with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily) immediately (see ‘Empiric antibiotics’ on page 16).

- Children and young people with a normal CRP and normal white blood cell count are less likely to have meningococcal disease.

- Assess clinical progress (vital signs [respiratory rate, heart rate, blood pressure, capillary refill time, conscious level, temperature and saturations]) and carry out observations [at least hourly] over the next 4–6 hours to determine the likelihood of the child or young person having meningococcal disease.

- If doubt remains, treat with antibiotics and admit to hospital.

- If the child or young person is assessed as being at low risk of meningococcal disease and is discharged after initial observation advise parents or carers to return to hospital if the child or young person looks unwell.

Consider full blood count and clotting studies for children and young people presenting with a non-spreading petechial rash, which may be present for more than 24 hours, without a fever (or any history of fever) and who do not look unwell. These children and young people are unlikely to have meningococcal disease and other differential diagnoses should be considered.

In children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia, anticipate, monitor and correct the following metabolic disturbances using local or national protocols:

- hypoglycaemia
- acidosis
- hypokalaemia
- hypocalcaemia

38 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.
5.2 Non-specific tests for bacterial meningitis

Introduction

If meningococcal meningitis presents with features of meningococcal sepsis (a non-blanching rash in a febrile, ill child) then non-specific laboratory blood tests will predominantly reflect inflammation in the bloodstream (see non-specific laboratory tests in children with suspected meningococcal disease). However, if a non-blanching rash does not accompany meningitis, the child will present with symptoms and signs suggesting meningitis. Non-specific laboratory investigations are part of the diagnostic work up. The definitive test for meningitis is a lumbar puncture with laboratory examination of the CSF. In children with contraindications to lumbar puncture, or clinical situations where medical staff are reluctant to undertake the procedure and CSF results are not available, the blood test results may then be consulted for evidence to confirm or refute the diagnosis of meningitis. The extent to which blood test results are informative about the presence or absence of bacterial meningitis will assist these decisions.

Clinical question

In children and young people under 16 years of age, are the results of non-specific laboratory tests predictive of bacterial meningitis?

Previous UK guidelines

No previous guidelines were identified in relation to this question.

Studies considered in this section

All study designs evaluating blood tests for procalcitonin, C-reactive protein or white blood cell count to discern meningitis from other diseases, or to discern bacterial meningitis from viral/aseptic meningitis were considered for inclusion in this section. The majority of studies were retrospective and only those conducted in high income countries were included.

Studies of adults and children were included where data were presented separately for child participants. Findings are presented for 3 age groups: all children, infants and neonates.

Overview of available evidence

Predictive value of individual nonspecific blood tests for the differential diagnosis of bacterial meningitis from other illnesses

Procalcitonin

No studies evaluating procalcitonin were identified.

C-Reactive Protein

Two USA studies were found that investigated the value of blood C-reactive protein (CRP) in aiding differentiation of bacterial meningitis from other illnesses. The first of these was a prospective cohort study\(^{57}\) \([\text{EL}=\text{II}]\) which compared blood CRP of children with bacterial meningitis (BM) \((n=10)\) with a control group which included children with aseptic meningitis (AM) \((n=14)\); extrameningeal bacterial infection (EI) \((n=10)\); other febrile illnesses but presenting with symptoms suggestive of bacterial meningitis (meningeal signs and suggestive history, \(n=33\); suggestive history alone \(n=102\)); or aged under 2 months undergoing a “sepsis workup” \((n=23)\). Significantly more children with bacterial meningitis had a blood CRP level >1.0mg/dl compared with children in the control group \((8/75\) children with CRP > 1.0mg/dl versus \(2/85\) children in
control group; \( p=0.047 \). This cut off of CRP level >1.0 mg/dl gave a sensitivity of 80%, specificity 55%, positive predictive value 0.11 and negative predictive value 0.98.

An earlier retrospective cohort study\(^{58} \) [EL=III] compared blood CRP of children with BM (\( n=21 \)) with a control group which included children with AM (\( n=8 \)), no meningitis (defined as suspected meningitis but with normal CSF findings) (\( n=50 \)) and leukaemia (\( n=40 \)). A serum CRP >1mg/dl was found for 20/21 (95%) cases of children with BM, 1/8 (13%) cases of children with AM, 24/50 (48%) cases with no meningitis and 5/40 (13%) cases with leukaemia. Removing the cases with leukaemia this gives 20/21 (95%) cases with BM versus 25/58 (43%) for controls; \( p<0.0001 \) (Fisher’s Exact Test). Again removing cases with leukaemia this cut-off of serum CRP >1mg/dL gave an overall sensitivity of 95% and an overall specificity of 57% (GDG analysis).

### White Blood Cell Count

Two USA studies were identified that examined blood WBC counts, as shown in table 5.3.

**Table 5.3. Blood white blood cell count – descriptive statistics (infants and children of all ages)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of H. influenzae type B (Hib) and age range</th>
<th>Blood WBC count measure and units</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>( p ) value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bonsu 2003(^ {59} ) [EL=III]</td>
<td>1992-1999 Hib not reported but organisms isolated included Escherichia coli (( n=11/22 )) and Group B streptococcus (( n=9/22 )) Age range: 3 to 89 days</td>
<td>Median (interquartile range) Cells/( \mu )l</td>
<td>BM=10,200 (4000 to 15,200) Control=11,200 (8500 to 14,600) Blood WBC count &lt;5000cells/( \mu )l: BM=3.2 (2.3 to 4) Control=4.2 (3.7 to 4.6) Blood WBC count ( \geq ) 5000cells/( \mu )l BM=13.3 (9.9 to17.1) Control=11.4 (8.8 to 14.8)</td>
<td>( p=0.26 ) ( p=0.005 ) ( p=0.13 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lembo 1991(^ {60} ) [EL=III]</td>
<td>1979-1980 and 1984-1985 Hib 29/46 Age range 0 – 18 years</td>
<td>Median (range) Cells/ ( \mu )l</td>
<td>Blood WBC counts: BM=10,650 (1900 to 32,500) AM=10,050 (4000 to 27,700) El=15,300 (1500 to 37,300) Segmented neutrophil counts: BM=4511 (31to 25,570) AM=4242 (340 to16,905) El=6796 (352 to 24,500) Blood total</td>
<td>BM versus El ( p=0.0013 ) BM versus El ( p=0.023 )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A retrospective study involved 5375 infants aged 3 to 89 days with fever evaluated in the emergency department for serious bacterial infection. Twenty-two children had confirmed bacterial meningitis, the remainder made up a control group (n=5353). No details are given to describe the control group other than that they had a CSF and blood sample sent as part of their clinical evaluation for suspected serious bacterial infection whilst in the emergency department. Blood WBC count was found to be a poor discriminator of bacterial meningitis from other bacterial illnesses. Results from the study are presented in table 5.3.

In terms of differential diagnostic accuracy blood WBC count was not found to be useful (area under the curve for ROC=0.43). For the 3 cut-off values tested whilst specificity reached 96% for a threshold of <5000 cells/μl the sensitivity achieved was only 32%, thus making this cut-off useful for ruling out BM but not ruling it in. At higher thresholds the specificity remained high but sensitivity was not significantly improved (see table 5.4 for details).

Table 5.4. Blood white blood cell count – diagnostic statistics (infants and children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of H. influenzae type B (Hib) and age range</th>
<th>Blood WBC count threshold value</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>PPV</th>
<th>NPV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bonsu 2003 [59] [EL=II]</td>
<td>1992-1999 Hib not reported but organisms isolated included Escherichia coli (n=11/22) and Group B streptococcus (n=9/22) Age range: 3 to 89 days</td>
<td>&lt;5000 cells/μl</td>
<td>32%</td>
<td>96%</td>
<td>1.0%</td>
<td>99.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;=10,000 cells/μl</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>38%</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>99.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;=15,000 cells/μl</td>
<td>27%</td>
<td>77%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>99.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;=20,000 cells/μl</td>
<td>4.5%</td>
<td>93%</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>99.6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lembo 1991 [60] [EL=III]</td>
<td>1979-1980 and 1984-1985 Hib 29/46 Age range 0 – 18.2 years</td>
<td>&gt;15,000 cells/μl</td>
<td>22%</td>
<td>73%</td>
<td>Not calculable</td>
<td>Not calculable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An earlier retrospective study described the white blood cell count of children undergoing lumbar puncture for suspected meningitis (n=232) [EL=III]. The study sample comprised 46 children with bacterial meningitis (BM) (median age 11 months, range 0-157 months); 132 children with aseptic meningitis (AM) (median age 2 months, range 0-219 months); and 56 children with extrameningeal infection (EI) (median age 6.5 months, range 0-79 months). Extrameningeal infections included UTI (n=22), occult bacteraemia (n=13), cellulitis/abscess (n=7), enteritis (n=7) and otitis media (n=4), pneumonia (n=2) and septic arthritis (n=1). The bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009])
values found for WBC counts and neutrophil counts for each study group are detailed in table
5.3. In children without bacteremia the WBC count was similar between children with BM and
those with EI (WBC/μl median BM=14,500, EI=13,800; p=0.57). A WBC count threshold of 1500/μl
to differentiate between BM versus AM/EI gave a sensitivity of 22% and a specificity of 73%.

Predictive value of individual nonspecific blood tests for differentiating bacterial versus aseptic
meningitis

Procalcitonin

Three relevant studies were identified that examined the usefulness of blood procalcitonin assay
in differentiating bacterial from aseptic meningitis.

A recent European multicentre study undertook a secondary analysis of retrospective cohort
studies from 6 paediatric emergency or intensive care centres across five European countries[61]
[EL=III]. A total of 198 children were included in the analysis (BM=96, AM=102) aged 29 days to
15.9 years (mean 4.8 years). The median level of blood procalcitonin (ng/ml) was significantly
higher in cases of BM compared with AM (See table 5.5). Meta-analysis using a pooled
diagnostic odds ratio (DOR) showed a significant association between high procalcitonin levels
and risk of bacterial meningitis (pooled DOR 139 [95% CI 39-498; \( \chi^2 =0\% \)).

Table 5.5. Procalcitonin level – descriptive statistics (children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of H. influenzae type B (Hib) and age range</th>
<th>Procalcitonin measure and units</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>p value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2008 61</td>
<td>1996 - 2005 Hib n=7/96 Age range: 29 days to 15.9 years</td>
<td>Median (range) ng/ml</td>
<td>BM = 21.5 (0.1 to 156.4) AM = 0.3 (0.1 to 22.4)</td>
<td>p&lt;10^-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2006 62</td>
<td>2000 - 2004 Hib 1/21 Age range 28 days – 16 years</td>
<td>Mean/Median (range) ng/ml</td>
<td>BM = 20.5/9.1 (0.2 to 107) AM = 0.3/0.2 (0.1 to 4.4)</td>
<td>p&lt;10^-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gendrel, 2000 63</td>
<td>1994 - 1996 Hib 6/23 Age range 3 months – 13 years</td>
<td>Mean (range) ng/ml</td>
<td>BM = 60.9 (4.8 to 335) VM = 0.32 (0 to 1.7)</td>
<td>P&lt;10^-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The area under the curve (AUC) for the ROC curve for procalcitonin was a very high 0.98
(compared with 0.89 for C-reactive protein, 0.88 for CSF protein and 0.87 for CSF neutrophil
count; p=0.001) (see table 5.6 for summary details). Blood procalcitonin was found to be more
accurate than C-reactive protein, CSF protein level and CSF neutrophil count in differentiating
bacterial from aseptic meningitis.

An earlier retrospective cohort study by the same author62 reported similar findings [EL=III]. The
study included blood samples from 167 children aged 28 days to 16 years (BM=21, AM=146).
Blood procalcitonin was again much higher in BM than in AM. Procalcitonin was found to be the
most accurate test in differentiating bacterial from aseptic meningitis with an ROC AUC of 0.95
(0.95 for C-reactive protein, 0.93 for CSF protein, 0.87 for CSF neutrophil count, 0.81 for CSF WBC
count). (See tables 5.5 and 5.6)

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 63 of 244
A third European study\textsuperscript{63} compared blood parameters for differentiating between BM and viral meningitis (VM) [EL=III]. Seventy-four children aged 3 months to 13 years were included in the study (BM=23 (mean age 3.2 years) VM=51 (mean age 2.1 years). The study only reports descriptive statistics for procalcitonin levels, again these are much higher in cases of BM compared with confirmed VM (mean (range) μg/l: BM=60.9 (4.8 to 335), VM=0.32 (0 to 1.7); p<0.0001).

Table 5.6. Procalcitonin level – diagnostic statistics (children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) and age range</th>
<th>Procalcitonin threshold value</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>OR (95% CI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2008 \textsuperscript{61} [EL=III]</td>
<td>1996 - 2005 Hib n=7/96 Age range: 1 month to 15.9 years</td>
<td>&gt;=0.5ng/ml</td>
<td>99%</td>
<td>83%</td>
<td>434 (95% CI 57 to &gt;1000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2006 \textsuperscript{62} [EL=III]</td>
<td>1995 - 2004 Hib 1/21 Age range 28 days – 16 years</td>
<td>&gt;=0.5ng/ml</td>
<td>89%</td>
<td>89%</td>
<td>64 (95% CI 12 to 452)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gendrel, 2000 \textsuperscript{63} [EL=III]</td>
<td>1994 – 1996 Hib 6/23 Age range 3 months – 13 years</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C-reactive protein

A systematic review with meta-analysis was identified for consideration\textsuperscript{64} [EL=III]. The aim of this work was to review published articles on the diagnostic accuracy of CSF and serum C-reactive protein (CRP) tests in the diagnosis of bacterial meningitis. Fourteen of the 35 studies were identified in which serum CRP had been measured (see table 5.7). Many of the 35 included studies had fairly small sample sizes, 66% included less than 100 children and 29% included less than 50 children. The studies included in the systematic review had been conducted in different populations (ten in the western world and one each in South Africa, Thailand, Indonesia and Chile) and had used different study designs. The two main methods were to recruit “patients suspected of having bacterial meningitis, irrespective of final diagnosis” or “patients with confirmed meningitis”. On the basis of this and whether recruitment was prospective, consecutive or selective, the authors further characterised each study as estimating the “clinical performance” of a CRP test or not (“Clin” column on table 5.7). The included studies were also heterogeneous with respect to the cut off values used and participants’ ages. Seven studies (n=552 participants) included children under 18 years, three included adults and children reported separately (age range 16 to 83 years, n=144 participants), three included a mix of adults and children (age range 1 week to 60 years, n=265) and one study did not provide participants’ age details.

Whilst the review goes on to perform a meta-analysis, caution must be exercised in interpreting its findings due to the heterogeneity of the included studies (cf. inclusion of low income countries and dates of data collection). However, in conducting the meta-analysis, no statistically
significant inter-study variance was noted therefore the findings from the review are reported here.

Of the 14 studies looking at serum CRP one was excluded from the analyses because it included only 3 patients with bacterial meningitis. The total number of patients included in the 13 remaining studies comparing bacterial with aseptic meningitis was 749 (BM=338; AM=411). When the serum CRP log true positive fractions versus the log false positive fractions for patients with bacterial and aseptic meningitis were plotted, regression estimates were intercept 5 [95% CI 3.8 to 6.2] with corresponding OR=150 [95% CI 44 to 509], slope -0.17 (p=0.6). The sensitivity for CRP measurement was 92.4% and the specificity was also 92.4% (SE 0.068). When the analysis was restricted to only the six studies which were characterised as estimating “clinical performance”, the regression estimates were intercept 5.0 with corresponding OR=143. The predictive values of serum CRP are reported as being “almost identical” to those of CSF CRP. The post-test probability of BM given a positive CRP test depends upon the pre-test probability in an assumed clinically relevant range of 0.05 to 0.30. The post-test probability of not BM given a negative test is high and declines only slightly in that range. At 5% prevalence the PPV=44.8% and the NPV=99.7%. At 30% prevalence the PPV=86.3% and the NPV=97.3%.

Table 5.7 Studies of serum CRP (abstracted from Gerdes 1998) (bacterial versus viral/aseptic)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Study sample</th>
<th>Age (days/months/years)</th>
<th>Cut off (mg/L)</th>
<th>Bact Men</th>
<th>Aseptic Men</th>
<th>TB Men</th>
<th>Other disease</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>Specificity for other disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peltola 1984 Finland Meningitis NR 1d - 9y 20 10 12</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clark 1983 USA Meningitis Yes 8d - 12y 70 17 18</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benjamin 1984 USA All No 1w - 18y 10 21 8</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vaidyanath 1983 Thailand Meningitis NA 1m - 14y</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roine 1991 Chile Meningitis NR 1m - 12y 19 60 15</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de Beer 1984 S. Africa Meningitis NR 3m - 15y 100 31 28 15</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lembo 1991 USA All Yes median 6m 10</td>
<td>10 (n=5 Hib) 14</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lizana 1996 Spain Meningitis Yes 1y - 14y 40 20 60</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lucht 1986 France Meningitis Yes 16y - 72y 100 24 31</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rizzo 1987 Italy Meningitis NR 17y - 74y 8 19 10</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Padowski 1995 Poland Meningitis NR 19y - 82y 40 30 30</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haasson 1993 Sweden All Yes 1w - 60y 50 60 146</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peltola 1982 Finland Meningitis Yes 2w - 49y 19 16 15</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soeti 1989 Indonesia Meningitis NR NR 20 24</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
False positive fraction = 1 - specificity. Vaidia excluded from analysis as only 3 participants had bacterial meningitis.

Clin = clinical performance of the CRP test i.e. prospective studies with patients recruited in clinical setting. NR=Not reported.

A further 4 studies were identified for inclusion that were published after the Gerdes systematic review. Two of these studies have already been detailed above (Dubos, 2008 \textsuperscript{61} and Dubos, 2006 \textsuperscript{62}). Findings for serum CRP from these studies are presented in table 5.8.

A third recent retrospective study\textsuperscript{31} involved 92 children aged between 0 and 15 years (mean 5.6 years, median 5.0 years) admitted to a Belgian regional hospital in 1997 to 2005 for observation and with subsequent confirmed diagnosis of viral (n=71) or bacterial (n=21) meningitis [EL=III]. Children with BM were found to have significantly higher level of serum CRP than children with VM (see table 5.8). A threshold of 2.0 mg was found to have a high sensitivity and a high NPV but a low PPV (see table 5.9).

An earlier retrospective study\textsuperscript{65} included 237 children aged 3 months to 15 years, 55 with BM (recruited 1984 to 1991 into 2 large Finnish studies) and 182 children with confirmed or presumed viral meningitis (recruited from one of three Finnish hospitals 1977 to 1992). [EL= III] As in other reported studies children with BM were found to have significantly higher serum CRP levels than those with VM (see table 5.8). A CRP threshold >20.0mg/l gave high sensitivity and specificity with a NPV of 99%. At a threshold of >40.0mg/l the specificity and PPV rose to 100% but this was at the expense of the sensitivity and NPV (see table 5.8).

**Table 5.8. CRP level – descriptive statistics (children of all ages)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) and age range</th>
<th>C-reactive protein measure and units</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>p value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2008 \textsuperscript{61} [EL=III]</td>
<td>1996 – 2005 Hib n=7/96 Age range: 1 month to 15.9 years</td>
<td>median (range) mg/l</td>
<td>BM=136 (4.9 - 350) AM=14 (0.5 - 330)</td>
<td>p&lt;10\textsuperscript{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2006 \textsuperscript{62} [EL=III]</td>
<td>1995 – 2004 Hib 1/21 Age range 28 days to 16 years</td>
<td>mean/median (range) mg/l</td>
<td>BM=190/178 (8.5-426) AM=18.6/8 (3-213)</td>
<td>p&lt;10\textsuperscript{-6}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Cauwer, 2007 \textsuperscript{31} [EL=III]</td>
<td>1997 – 2005 Hib 1/21 Age range 0 to 15 years</td>
<td>mean (SD) mg/l</td>
<td>BM=13.6 (7.5) VM=1.17 (1.6)</td>
<td>p&lt;10\textsuperscript{-4}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sormunen, 1999 \textsuperscript{65} [EL=III]</td>
<td>1977 – 1992 Hib 23/55* Age range 3 months to 15 years</td>
<td>Mean/median (SD/range) mg/l</td>
<td>BM =16.3/11.1 (21.8/1.4-85.3) VM = 3.8/3.3 (1.8/1.3-9.4)</td>
<td>p&lt;10\textsuperscript{-4}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 66 of 244
Table 5.9. Blood C-reactive protein – diagnostic statistics (children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) and age range</th>
<th>C-reactive protein threshold value</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>OR (95% CI)</th>
<th>Or PPV and NPV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gerdes, 1998 [64]</td>
<td>1982 – 1996 (year of publication) Hib not reported Age range: 1 day to 82 years</td>
<td>Findings from meta-analysis</td>
<td>92%</td>
<td>92%</td>
<td>OR=150</td>
<td>(95% CI 44 to 509)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2008 [61]</td>
<td>1996 - 2005 Hib n=7/96 Age range: 1 month to 15.9 years</td>
<td>&gt;= 20 mg/l</td>
<td>83%</td>
<td>67%</td>
<td>OR=9.9</td>
<td>(95% CI 4.8 to 20.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2006 [62]</td>
<td>1995 -2004 Hib 1/21 Age range 28 days to 16 years</td>
<td>&gt;= 20 mg/l</td>
<td>91%</td>
<td>71%</td>
<td>OR=24</td>
<td>(95% CI 5 to 155)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Cauwer, 2007 [31]</td>
<td>1997 – 2005 Hib 1/21 Age range 0 to 15 years</td>
<td>&gt;= 20 mg/l</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>83%</td>
<td>PPV=63%</td>
<td>NPV= 98%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sormunen, 1999 [65]</td>
<td>1977 – 1992 Hib 23/55* Age range 3 months to 15 years</td>
<td>&gt;=20 mg/l</td>
<td>96%</td>
<td>93%</td>
<td>PPV=83%</td>
<td>NPV=99%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;40 mg/l</td>
<td>86%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>PPV=100%</td>
<td>NPV=95%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* All Gram-negative

White Blood Cell Count

Six studies were identified that reported accuracy of blood WBC count for differentiating between BM and AM or VM. Five of these included studies have already been described in preceding sections. Findings from these studies in relation to blood WBC count are presented in table 5.10. The sixth study investigated blood WBC counts in neonates and is detailed below.

Table 5.10. Blood white cell count – descriptive statistics (children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and Blood WBC count measure and</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>p value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 67 of 244</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5.11. Blood white blood cell count – diagnostic statistics (children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) and age range</th>
<th>Blood WBC count threshold</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>OR (95% CI)</th>
<th>PPV and NPV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2008 61 [EL=III]</td>
<td>1996 - 2005 Hib n=7/96 Age range: 1 month to 15.9 years</td>
<td>&gt;=15000/μl</td>
<td>48%</td>
<td>78%</td>
<td>OR=3.4 (95% CI 1.7 to 6.6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2006 62 [EL=III]</td>
<td>1995 - 2004</td>
<td>&gt;=15000/μl</td>
<td>62%</td>
<td>81%</td>
<td>OR=7  (95% CI 3 to 22)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* All Gram-negative
### Table 5.12. Blood neutrophil count – descriptive statistics (children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib) and age range</th>
<th>Blood neutrophil count measure and units</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>p value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2008</td>
<td>1996 – 2005 (Hib n=7/96, Age range: 1 month to 15.9 years)</td>
<td>median (range) cells/μl</td>
<td>BM=11,472 (1176-37,800)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AM=6417 (1316-23,000)</td>
<td>p&lt;10^-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2006</td>
<td>1995 – 2004 (Hib 1/21, Age range 28)</td>
<td>mean/median (range) cells/μl</td>
<td>BM=13,748/14,245 (740-36,290)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AM=8403/7300 (1180-51,740)</td>
<td>p=0.06</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Blood White Blood Cell Count – neonates

One study was identified that looked at blood WBC count in neonates [EL=III]. The study included 34 neonates (aged 28 days or younger) who underwent a complete sepsis evaluation (including lumbar puncture) in a USA emergency department from 1982 to 1989, and who had a discharge diagnosis of meningitis (BM=10, AM=24). The total WBC count range was 2600 to 28000 cells/μl. No statistically significant differences were found between neonates with BM and AM.

Blood neutrophil count
### Table 5.13. Blood neutrophil counts – diagnostic statistics (children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of <em>Haemophilus influenzae</em> type B (Hib) and age range</th>
<th>Blood neutrophil count threshold</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>OR [95% CI]</th>
<th>Or PPV and NPV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2008 [61]</td>
<td>1996 – 2005 Hib n=7/96 Age range: 1 month to 15.9 years</td>
<td>10,000 cells/μl</td>
<td>57%</td>
<td>75%</td>
<td>OR=4.1 (95% CI 2.1 to 8.0)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubos, 2006 [62]</td>
<td>1995 – 2004 Hib 1/21 Age range 28 days to 16 years</td>
<td>10,000 cells/μl</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>71%</td>
<td>OR=4 (95% CI 1 to 11)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Cauwer, 2007 [31]</td>
<td>1997 – 2005 Hib 1/21</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Four of the previously described studies also included data for the diagnostic accuracy of blood neutrophil count in differentiating bacterial from aseptic or viral meningitis. [31;60-62] Summary statistics for findings from these four studies, all of which were retrospective in design [EL=III] are given in tables 5.11, 5.12 and 5.13.
Evidence summary

Bacterial meningitis versus other infections

No evidence was identified that examined the diagnostic accuracy of procalcitonin for differentiating bacterial meningitis from other infections.

Findings from 2 small studies showed that at a cut off of >1.0mg/dl, blood CRP levels have moderate to good sensitivity for differentiating bacterial meningitis from other infections but poor specificity.

Findings from 2 retrospective studies show that blood white blood cell counts have poor sensitivity in differentiating bacterial meningitis from other infections. Findings for specificity varied widely.

Bacterial meningitis versus aseptic or viral meningitis

Findings from 3 retrospective studies showed that blood procalcitonin levels are significantly higher in children with bacterial meningitis compared with those with aseptic (2 studies) or viral (1 study) meningitis. Findings from 2 of these studies also report good sensitivity and specificity for the diagnostic accuracy of procalcitonin in differentiating bacterial meningitis from aseptic meningitis.

Findings from 4 retrospective studies show that blood CRP levels are significantly higher in children with bacterial meningitis compared with aseptic (2 studies) or viral (2 studies) meningitis. Findings from a meta-analysis involving 13 studies plus 4 more recent studies show that blood CRP has good sensitivity and moderate to very good specificity at differentiating bacterial meningitis from aseptic (meta-analysis and 2 studies) or viral (2 studies) meningitis. Four of 5 retrospective studies that investigated the diagnostic accuracy of blood white blood cell count reported a significantly higher level in children with bacterial meningitis compared with aseptic meningitis (2 studies) or viral meningitis (2 studies). All five studies reported poor sensitivity for differentiating bacterial from aseptic or viral meningitis at a threshold of >=15000 cells/μl and moderate to good specificities. At a cut off of >25000cells/μl one study reported a specificity of 100% but a very low sensitivity of 20%.

One small retrospective study found no significant difference in the blood white blood cell count of neonates with bacterial meningitis compared with those with aseptic meningitis. Findings from 4 retrospective studies reported conflicting findings regarding differences between blood neutrophil counts for children with bacterial meningitis compared with aseptic (3 studies) or viral (1 study) meningitis. Findings from 2 of these studies show neutrophil count has moderate sensitivity and specificity for differentiating between bacterial and aseptic meningitis.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

CRP, WBC, procalcitonin levels in the bloodstream reflect inflammation in the bloodstream and are not directly informative about inflammation in the CSF. Because bacterial infection in the bloodstream often precedes bacterial meningitis CRP, WBC procalcitonin levels may be elevated when bacterial meningitis is present.
CRP/procalcitonin/WBC count have insufficient sensitivity and specificity to differentiate bacterial meningitis from other illnesses.

Raised procalcitonin, CRP, WBC count and neutrophil count have reasonable specificity (67-93%) for bacterial meningitis in comparison to aseptic meningitis at commonly used cut-offs. Higher thresholds yield higher specificity (up to 100%) at the expense of lowering the sensitivity. CRP >20mg/l and procalcitonin >0.5ng/ml have greater than 83% sensitivity differentiating bacterial meningitis from aseptic meningitis.

Total WBC count and neutrophil count have low sensitivity for differentiating bacterial meningitis from aseptic meningitis.

The evidence review indicates that non-specific laboratory blood tests cannot be used to distinguish bacterial meningitis from other illnesses (other illnesses are defined variously in the reviewed papers and include febrile illnesses presenting with symptoms suggestive of bacterial meningitis; suspected meningitis but with normal CSF findings; suspected serious bacterial infection; and extrameningeal infections including UTI, occult bacteraemia, cellulitis/abscess and enteritis).

Where available, high procalcitonin (>0.5nanograms/ml) may be useful to rule in bacterial meningitis (high sensitivity and specificity) but a low procalcitonin is insufficient to rule out the diagnosis. Up to 11% of children will have a low procalcitonin despite having bacterial meningitis.

High CRP (>20mg/l) may be useful to rule in bacterial meningitis (moderate sensitivity and moderate specificity) but a low CRP is insufficient to rule out the diagnosis. Up to 17% of children will have a CRP <20mg/l despite bacterial meningitis.

Although total white cell count and neutrophil count have low specificity and sensitivity for bacterial meningitis in comparison with aseptic meningitis, children with a high WBC count (>15) or neutrophil count (>10) are 3 to 7 times more likely to have bacterial meningitis.

Although none of the tests allow bacterial meningitis to be ruled out, the GDG felt that they are useful in adding to other variables in making the decision about the management of suspected bacterial meningitis.

**Recommendations**

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis do a CRP and white blood cell count.

Do not use a normal CRP and white blood cell count to rule out bacterial meningitis.

If there is a raised CRP or white blood cell count in the presence of a non-specifically abnormal (that is, possibly viral) cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) treat as suspected bacterial meningitis.

If no CSF is available or if CSF findings are uninterpretable, manage suspected bacterial meningitis in children and young people as if the diagnosis is confirmed, regardless of the CRP and white blood cell count.

### 5.3 Polymerase chain reaction

**Introduction**

Confirming the diagnosis of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease is essential to ensure that the correct antibiotic therapy is used for the correct duration of time and to support decisions about the long-term follow up of the child. Traditionally the confirmation of the diagnosis of these diseases has relied on microscopy and culture of blood and CSF. With the advent of DNA based diagnostic tests, such as PCR, it is important to decide which are the most effective and cost effective diagnostic tests to support management of the child.
Clinical questions
What is the diagnostic value of blood and CSF PCR in children and young people with suspected meningococcal meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia?

Previous UK guidelines
The SIGN guideline on Management of Invasive Meningococcal Disease in Children and Young People recommends that all children with suspected invasive meningococcal disease should have blood taken for meningococcal PCR to confirm the diagnosis. The guideline recommends that, if lumbar puncture is performed, CSF should be sent for PCR analysis.

Studies considered in this section
The review included studies of any design assessing the diagnostic value or accuracy of real-time PCR assays that target meningococcal or pneumococcal-specific genes as these types of assay are most widely used in the UK. Laboratory studies that primarily assessed the accuracy of PCR using bacterial isolates and that included only small numbers of clinical samples were excluded from the review. Studies without a well-defined reference standard were excluded.

Overview of available evidence
Three clinical diagnostic studies (one EL=Ib and two EL=II), one retrospective review [EL=III] and one laboratory diagnostic study [EL=III] were found.

Review findings
Blood PCR for suspected meningococcal disease
One prospective study compared the diagnostic accuracy of Taqman real-time PCR targeting the \textit{N. meningitidis} capsular transfer gene (ctrA) with culture of blood or CSF in 118 children with possible meningococcal septicaemia or meningitis admitted to a tertiary care paediatric hospital [Australia, 2000–2001] [EL=Ib]. The reference standard for diagnosis of meningococcal disease was a clinical diagnosis reached by consensus of the attending clinician and an infectious diseases physician plus a confirmatory laboratory test in the case of suspected meningococcal meningitis (positive CSF Gram stain, CSF culture or PCR). In total, 24 children were diagnosed with meningococcal disease using the reference standard. The study found that blood PCR was more sensitive than blood culture for diagnosing meningococcal disease. Blood PCR was positive for 21/24 cases (sensitivity: 88%, 95% CI 68 to 97) and blood culture was positive for 14/24 cases (sensitivity: 58%, 95% CI 37 to 78). Both PCR and culture were 100% specific (95% CI 96 to 100) (see table 5.14).

Of the 24 children with gold standard confirmed meningococcal disease, blood PCR was positive for 8/8 with clinical signs of septicaemia alone, 9/11 with clinical signs of septicaemia and meningitis, and 4/5 children with clinical signs of meningitis alone.

All children with a positive blood culture had positive PCR results. Blood PCR was positive, but blood culture negative, in 7/24 (29%) of cases. Blood PCR remained positive for longer than blood cultures after parenteral antibiotics: for a third of patients tested, PCR remained positive up to 72 hours after parenteral antibiotic administration.

One prospective study evaluated the diagnostic accuracy of ctrA whole-blood Taqman PCR (WB-Taqman) in 196 children with suspected meningococcal disease admitted to a children’s hospital [UK, 2000–2001] [EL=II]. The reference standard was a clinical diagnosis of meningococcal disease made by the attending physician in the absence of alternative positive microbiological investigations. In total, 98 children were diagnosed with meningococcal disease using the gold standard. The study found that whole-blood PCR performed better than blood culture for confirming clinically diagnosed meningococcal disease. Whole-blood PCR was positive for 84/95 clinical cases (sensitivity: 88%, 95% CI 81 to 95) and blood culture was positive for 32/98 children (sensitivity: 33%, 95% CI 24 to 42). Both techniques were 100% specific (see table 5.14). All children with a positive blood culture had positive PCR results. PCR was positive, but blood culture negative in 52/95 (55%) of children with clinically diagnosed meningococcal disease. Of 22 children with clinical signs of meningitis, blood PCR was positive in 16 (sensitivity: 73% [95% CI 55 to 86]) and blood culture was positive in 15 (sensitivity: 68% [95% CI 50 to 82]).
78%). The positivity of whole blood PCR in children with clinical signs of meningitis but not septicaemia was not reported. The sensitivity of PCR was not decreased by preadmission antibiotics (PCR sensitivity: 93% for 14 children given preadmission antibiotics). The sensitivity of blood culture in children given preadmission antibiotics decreased to 21%.

The study\textsuperscript{68} compared the performance of WB-Taqman PCR with that of serum Taqman PCR (S-Taqman) assessed in an earlier cohort study conducted at the same hospital involving 319 children with suspected meningococcal disease (1997–1999) [EL=II].\textsuperscript{69} The earlier study used the same clinical gold standard described above to define meningococcal disease: 166 children were diagnosed with meningococcal disease using the gold standard. Comparative analysis found that case confirmation increased from 47% with S-Taqman\textsuperscript{69} to 88% with WB-Taqman, \(p<0.001.\textsuperscript{68}\) Rates of blood culture positivity were similar for the two studies, \(p=0.8\) (see table 5.14).

Both PCR–ELISA and real-time PCR were used in the earlier study, which also used two screening assays - one targeting IS\textsuperscript{1106} and one targeting ctrA. When all laboratory tests (including blood and CSF culture, PCR and rapid antigen testing) were used for diagnosis, case confirmation increased from 72% (with S-Taqman PCR) in the earlier study to 94% (with WB-Taqman PCR).

CSF PCR for suspected bacterial meningitis (including meningococcal meningitis)

One retrospective review of case notes compared the performance of duplex CSF real-time PCR with CSF Gram stain and culture in 70 patients admitted to a tertiary care hospital with suspected bacterial meningitis (Belgium, 2002–2006) [EL=III].\textsuperscript{70} The PCR assay targeted ctrA for \textit{N. meningitidis} and the pneumolysin gene (\textit{ply}) for \textit{S. pneumoniae}. The age of the patients was not recorded. The gold standard for diagnosis of bacterial meningitis was a composite of clinical features of meningitis plus a confirmatory laboratory test (positive CSF Gram stain, positive CSF or blood culture, or positive blood or CSF PCR). Twenty-three patients were diagnosed with meningococcal meningitis and 14 patients were diagnosed with pneumococcal meningitis using the gold standard. The study found that CSF PCR was more sensitive than Gram stain or CSF culture for diagnosing meningococcal meningitis and pneumococcal meningitis. For meningococcal meningitis: CSF PCR was positive in 20/23 cases (sensitivity: 87%) compared with 6/22 (sensitivity: 27%) for CSF Gram stain and 4/23 (sensitivity: 17%) for CSF culture (see table 5.14). CSF culture was 100% specific, whereas CSF PCR was 96% specific - the two patients with false positive CSF PCR results had meningococcal septicaemia with probable contamination of CSF by blood. For pneumococcal meningitis, the sensitivity of CSF PCR for detecting \textit{S. pneumoniae} was 100% (14/14) compared with 62% (8/13) for CSF Gram stain and 36% (5/14) for CSF culture. All techniques were 100% specific. CSF PCR was the only positive confirmatory laboratory test in 11/23 patients with meningococcal meningitis and in 5/14 patients with pneumococcal meningitis. Information about prior antibiotic use was not available from the medical notes.

The multiplex real-time Taqman PCR simultaneously targeting \textit{N. meningitidis} (ctrA), \textit{Haemophilus influenzae} (\textit{bexA}) and \textit{S. pneumoniae} (\textit{ply})\textsuperscript{71} detected \textit{N. meningitidis} in 89% of the 36 CSF samples from culture-confirmed cases of meningococcal meningitis. [EL= III] It detected \textit{S. pneumoniae} in 91% of 23 CSF samples from culture-confirmed cases of pneumococcal meningitis. Specificity was not assessed using clinical samples.

### Table 5.14 Diagnostic accuracy of real-time PCR versus culture in studies with a clinical gold standard

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Test details</th>
<th>Samples</th>
<th>Reference standard</th>
<th>PCR sensitivity</th>
<th>PCR specificity</th>
<th>Blood /CSF culture sensitivity</th>
<th>Blood culture specificity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bryant 2004</td>
<td>ctrA Taqman PCR</td>
<td>Blood</td>
<td>Consensus clinical diagnosis</td>
<td>88% n=24 cases</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>58%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hackett 2002</td>
<td>ctrA WB- Taqman PCR</td>
<td>Whole blood</td>
<td>Clinical diagnosis in the absence of other +ve microbiology</td>
<td>88% n=98 cases</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>33%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 74 of 244
### Evidence statement

#### Blood PCR for suspected meningococcal disease

There is evidence from well conducted clinical studies that real-time PCR of blood samples is more sensitive than blood culture for confirming a clinical diagnosis of meningococcal disease and is highly specific. Whole blood PCR performs significantly better than serum or plasma PCR. In two clinical studies 29–55% of children with meningococcal disease had a negative blood culture and a positive blood PCR. The sensitivity of PCR was less affected by antibiotic administration than the sensitivity of blood culture. There is insufficient evidence from these studies to determine the diagnostic accuracy of whole-blood PCR in children with meningococcal meningitis without septicaemia.

#### CSF PCR for suspected bacterial meningitis (including meningococcal meningitis)

There is limited evidence about the diagnostic accuracy of CSF real-time PCR.

One small retrospective study found that duplex CSF real-time PCR was more sensitive than Gram stain or CSF culture for diagnosing meningococcal or pneumococcal meningitis in a clinical setting. CSF PCR was highly specific (96–100%). One small laboratory study found that CSF multiplex real-time PCR detected *N. meningitidis* in 89% and *S. pneumoniae* in 91% of culture-positive CSF samples.

### Cost effectiveness

There is variation in the use of PCR for the diagnosis of meningococcal disease and bacterial meningitis in England and Wales. Therefore, the GDG identified this as an important priority for economic analysis in order to inform guideline recommendations. A summary of this analysis is presented here, with full details given in Appendix I.

A model was developed for a population of children presenting to secondary care with a suspicion of meningococcal disease. In this population the following three diagnostic strategies were compared:

1. Routine PCR and blood culture to all
2. Blood culture to all followed by PCR only if the blood culture is negative
3. Routine 'rapid' PCR and blood culture to all

The first two strategies were thought by the GDG to represent current practice. At present, the GDG do not consider that the NHS has the necessary infrastructure to offer a rapid PCR strategy and in that sense it can be considered only as a hypothetical option at this moment in time. Nevertheless, it was considered useful to include it in the model as it is a strategy for which the technology currently exists and could quite plausibly be available in the future.
Antibiotic treatment is generally initiated on admission in those with suspected meningococcal disease or bacterial meningitis. This is a conservative approach to minimise adverse outcomes in actual cases. Therefore, confirmation of the diagnosis may sometimes be used as a basis for discontinuation of treatment and hospital discharge but not to initiate treatment. Therefore, it was not thought that the different diagnostic strategies would lead to differences in outcomes, and consequently the model took the form of a cost minimisation analysis.

The results for the base-case analysis are shown in table 5.15.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategy</th>
<th>Cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Routine PCR and blood culture to all</td>
<td>£1,412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Blood culture to all followed by PCR if blood culture negative</td>
<td>£1,853</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Routine rapid PCR and blood culture to all</td>
<td>£895</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whilst strategy 2 produces some savings in terms of a reduction in PCR tests ordered this saving is of a relatively small magnitude because most blood culture results are negative which means that a PCR is then needed to confirm the diagnosis. The model assumes that PCR results would be available three days after admission in strategy 1 compared to five days in cases where PCR was ordered in strategy 2. In strategy 3 the PCR result is available 24 hours after admission. Therefore, the strategies with routine PCR are cheaper overall because the earlier availability of the PCR result facilitates earlier hospital discharge and discontinuation of treatment in some cases which generates a saving which more than offsets the additional PCR costs.

However, there was considerable uncertainty around some of the model parameters particularly with respect to the proportion of patients where an earlier negative PCR result would result in earlier discharge. Therefore, sensitivity analysis was undertaken to explore scenarios in which strategy 2 might be considered cost-effective. So, for example, increasing the proportion of patients who were relatively well and would no longer be suspected of meningococcal disease following a negative blood culture. This subset of patients in the model are discharged after the negative blood culture, obviating the need to order a PCR in strategy 2. Whilst the sensitivity analysis showed that there were scenarios in which strategy 2 was cheaper, the GDG considered the parameter values to make this happen were outside their plausible ranges.

**GDG interpretation of the evidence**

**Blood PCR for suspected meningococcal disease**

There is high level evidence to support the use of real-time whole blood PCR for the diagnosis of meningococcal septicaemia in children and young people. There is evidence that PCR remains positive even if taken after antibiotics have been given, when blood culture is likely to be negative. An economic analysis suggested that routine PCR was cheaper than a strategy in which ordering a PCR was conditional on a negative blood culture. As noted above, the GDG felt that a strategy of rapid PCR and blood culture to all was only a hypothetical option as the NHS currently lacks the necessary infrastructure to provide it.

**CSF PCR for suspected bacterial meningitis (including meningococcal meningitis)**

Although there is no high level evidence to support the use of CSF real-time PCR for the diagnosis of meningococcal or pneumococcal meningitis in children and young people, most of the evidence was gathered in an era before the routine use of such tests. Emerging low level evidence supports the utility of these tests in establishing a diagnosis of bacterial meningitis and identifying the causative organism.

Further evaluation of this test in supporting a diagnosis of meningitis will be necessary. The use of real time PCR may help confirm the diagnosis in those children in whom microscopy and culture of CSF has not shown an organism. Limited evidence suggests that PCR may remain positive for up to 72 hours after antibiotics have been administered.
Confirmation of the diagnosis helps to determine the appropriate antimicrobial chemotherapy and its duration. Confirmation of the diagnosis of meningococcal disease and bacterial meningitis is also important in assessing the effectiveness of current vaccine policy and will assist the assessment of the need for future vaccines.

**Recommendations**

In children and young people with suspected meningococcal disease, submit EDTA (ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid) whole blood routinely for real-time PCR testing to confirm the diagnosis. If lumbar puncture is performed, submit CSF for PCR analysis. The blood sample should be taken as soon as possible after admission (up to 72 hours).

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis (including meningococcal meningitis) submit blood and CSF samples for PCR testing to confirm the diagnosis.

5.4 Examination of skin lesions and throat swabs for meningococcal disease

**Introduction**

Diagnostic tools that have been used historically in children and young people with suspected meningococcal disease are microscopy and culture of skin scrapings and nasopharyngeal (throat) swabs. With the advent of real-time PCR testing for *N. meningitidis* it is important to decide whether examination of skin lesions or throat swabs remains useful for confirming the diagnosis of meningococcal disease.

**Clinical question**

What is the diagnostic value of microscopy and culture of skin aspirates in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia?

In children and young people with suspected meningococcal disease what is the diagnostic value of throat swabs?

**Previous UK guidelines**

The SIGN guideline on Management of Invasive Meningococcal Disease in Children and Young People states that in three studies examination of aspirates or scrapings from skin lesions was useful in providing rapid diagnosis of invasive meningococcal disease. The guideline states that, because of the lack of a consistent gold standard and differences in the nature of lesions and techniques, it was not possible to show if examination of skin lesions is more effective in diagnosing invasive meningococcal disease than other tests.26

The SIGN guideline found insufficient evidence to form recommendations on the use of throat swabs.

**Studies considered in this section**

All study designs evaluating the role of laboratory examination of skin lesions and throat swabs in the diagnosis of meningococcal disease were considered for this section. Diagnostic accuracy studies without a defined gold standard were excluded.

**Overview of available evidence**

Two retrospective studies [EL=III] and one prospective cohort study [EL=III] evaluating the role of laboratory examination of skin lesions were included in the review.

No studies were found evaluating the role of laboratory examination of throat swabs.
Review findings

One retrospective study evaluated the diagnostic usefulness of Gram stain of films made from petechial scrapings by reviewing data from 52 children admitted to a children’s hospital in Ireland with laboratory confirmed meningococcal disease (1988–1994) [EL=III].72 Meningococcal disease was defined using the following laboratory criteria: positive blood culture, positive CSF Gram stain and culture, or positive microscopy of skin scrapings. Petechiae were found in 35 of 52 children, of whom 30 had scrapings taken by the attending clinician. Of these children, 11 had received preadmission antibiotics. Gram-negative diplococci were detected in petechial scrapings from 24/30 children (80%); blood culture was positive in 11 of these 30 children (37%); and CSF microscopy and culture were positive in 6/26 children (23%). Seventeen children had a negative blood culture but positive petechial scraping microscopy (57%). Of the 26 children who had a lumbar puncture and petechial scrapings, 17 had a negative CSF examination and positive petechial scraping microscopy (65%). In 14 cases, diagnosis of meningococcal disease was based on positive petechial scraping results alone. Previous antibiotic treatment did not seem to affect petechial scraping microscopy results (p=0.372) but was associated with significantly fewer positive blood cultures (p=0.04) and significantly fewer positive CSF Gram stain and cultures (p<0.05). When all 52 cases of confirmed meningococcal disease were taken into account Gram stain of petechial scrapings was not significantly more effective than blood culture or CSF examination in detecting meningococcal infection. Blood culture was positive in 19/52 children (37%), CSF Gram stain was positive in 23/48 (48%), and CSF culture was positive in 22/48 (46%). Positive skin film microscopy was included in the reference standard, which may lead to an overestimation of the diagnostic accuracy of this technique. The specificity of petechial scraping microscopy was not assessed.

A prospective cohort study conducted at a University hospital in the Netherlands assessed the diagnostic value of skin biopsy of petechiae or purpura in 31 patients with suspected meningococcal disease and skin lesions (2001–2003) [EL=III].73 Skin biopsy was performed by a dermatologist. Seventy-two percent of cases were 16 years or younger. Meningococcal infection was defined as: positive blood culture, CSF or skin biopsy, positive CSF Gram stain, or identification of Gram-negative diplococci in a skin biopsy plus no alternative microbiological diagnosis and response to antibiotics. Of the 31 patients, 25 had confirmed meningococcal infection according to these criteria. An additional 12 skin biopsy specimens from the dermatology department (taken from adult patients with suspected nevus nevocellularis or skin malignancy) were included as negative controls. Ninety-two percent of children had received antibiotics before skin biopsy. Blood culture was performed before starting intravenous antibiotics. Gram stain of skin biopsy was positive in 10/25 cases (40%). Gram stain of CSF was positive in 8/14 cases (57%). Comparison of culture results found that a greater proportion of blood or CSF specimens were positive compared with skin biopsy specimens; blood culture was positive in 14/25 cases (56%); CSF culture was positive in 7/14 cases (50%); and skin biopsy culture was positive in 9/25 cases (36%). When results of culture and Gram stain were combined, the proportion of positive results among the different types of specimen was similar: CSF examination was positive in 9/14 cases (64%) and skin biopsy examination was positive in 14/25 cases (56%). In 14 patients the diagnosis was based on positive microbiology from one type of sample: CSF in 7 patients, blood in 4 patients and skin biopsy in 3 patients. There were no false positive results for the 6 clinical controls and the 12 dermatology specimens.

A retrospective study aimed to determine the diagnostic usefulness of meningococcal real-time PCR performed on biopsy of skin lesions in patients with clinical purpura fulminans (defined as septic shock, extensive purpura and disseminated intravascular coagulation) [EL=III].74 In total, 34 patients (27 children aged 5 months to 15 years) were admitted with purpura fulminans to the intensive care units of a University hospital in France (2000–2006). Real-time ctrA Taqman PCR and culture was performed on biopsy specimens taken from ‘necrotic or ecchymotic lesions’ or from ‘petechial purpura’ after cleaning with local antiseptic. Results of skin biopsies from nine patients with purpuric lesions who did not fulfil all the criteria for purpura fulminans were used as negative controls. Blood culture was performed on all 34 patients; 17 patients had serum PCR. Most patients had been given pre-hospital antibiotics. Skin biopsy was carried out within 24h of antibiotic administration. The study found that PCR of skin biopsy was significantly more sensitive than culture of skin biopsy or blood culture for detecting N. meningitidis (p<0.0001). Skin biopsy...
PCR was positive in 34/34 cases (100%) whereas culture of skin biopsy was positive in 5/34 cases (15%). Blood culture was positive in 4/34 cases (12%) Skin biopsy PCR was significantly more sensitive than serum PCR in detecting N. meningitidis (p=0.023): skin biopsy PCR was positive in 17/17 cases (100%); serum PCR was positive in 10/17 cases (59%). There were no false positive PCR results for the negative controls.

Evidence statement

One retrospective study found that, in children with suspected meningococcal disease and petechiae, Gram stain of petechial scrapings was positive more frequently than blood culture or CSF Gram stain or culture and was the only positive microbiological result in ~50% of cases. Prior antibiotic treatment was associated with fewer positive blood and CSF cultures but did not affect the positivity of petechial scraping microscopy.

One prospective study found that microscopy and culture of biopsy specimens taken from petechiae and purpura was as effective as blood culture in detecting meningococcal infection.

One retrospective study found that, in patients with purpura fulminans who had received antibiotics, real-time PCR of biopsy specimens taken from ecchymoses or petechiae detected N. meningitidis more frequently than culture of skin biopsy or blood culture. Skin biopsy PCR was more sensitive than serum PCR.

Each of these small studies assessed different techniques used on different types of skin lesion. Two studies reported no clinical gold standard with inclusion of the index test in the reference standard. Specificity of skin lesion examination was not adequately addressed. Because of these limitations, the value of skin lesion examination for diagnosing meningococcal disease can not be reliably assessed from these studies.

No evidence was identified in relation to the effectiveness of throat swabs.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

The laboratory examination of skin scrapings is not widely used in England and Wales as a diagnostic tool in children and young people with suspected meningococcal disease and in the modern NHS it is unlikely to be undertaken in settings other than an ITU. Practice is unlikely to change in the foreseeable future making it unlikely that skin scrapings will be undertaken to support the diagnosis of meningococcal disease in children.

There is no high-level evidence to support the use of microscopy and culture of skin lesions for the diagnosis of meningococcal disease. Limited evidence (mostly prior to the routine availability of whole-blood real-time PCR) indicates that in children with petechiae in whom meningococcal disease is suspected, particularly those given prior antibiotic treatment, Gram stain of petechial scrapings may help to confirm the diagnosis.

One small study suggests that PCR of skin biopsy specimens in purpura fulminans is more sensitive than PCR of serum. However, the available evidence is not sufficient to recommend routine use of microscopy and culture or PCR of skin scrapings for the diagnosis of meningococcal disease, particularly in the absence of data comparing the usefulness of skin scraping examination with whole-blood PCR.

The whole blood PCR test in clinical practice has replaced skin scraping examination and the evidence does not support a return to the use of skin scraping for the diagnosis of meningococcal disease.

The GDG is aware that the SIGN Guideline on Management of Invasive Meningococcal Disease in Children and Young People found insufficient evidence on which to base a recommendation about the usefulness of throat swabs for the diagnosis of meningococcal disease. Meningococci are organisms that colonise the human nasopharynx asymptomatically in up to 10% of the population, with higher rates among adolescents and much lower rates in younger children. For this reason it follows that isolation of the organism from a throat swab cannot indicate invasive disease. In view of these observations and the lack of evidence on which to base a recommendation the GDG came to a consensus that there could be no
justification in undertaking throat swabs as a diagnostic test. Diagnosis should be made by isolation/detection of the organism in a normally sterile site (e.g., blood or CSF).

A review of patients on the Public Health Laboratory Service Meningococcus Reference Unit (MRU) database between 1994 and 1997, where both nasopharyngeal and systemic isolates were submitted, showed the organisms from both sites were identical in 97% (134/138) of cases. However, in 3% of cases they were different, and a nasopharyngeal isolate in the absence of a systemic isolate does not confirm invasive disease. [REF] This suggests that if the diagnosis of meningococcal disease is confirmed by blood PCR, then a meningococcal isolate obtained from the throat is likely to be the cause of the systemic infection (at least in 97% of cases). However the clinical application of this is limited, and the GDG consensus remained that throat swabs should not be used for diagnosis of meningococcal disease.

**Recommendations**

Do not use skin biopsies, aspirates (samples aspirated with a needle and syringe from a petechial/purpuric skin lesion), scrapings or throat swabs for the diagnosis of meningococcal disease in children and young people.

### 5.5 Cerebrospinal fluid parameters

**Introduction**

In cases of suspected meningitis, CSF is routinely examined for the presence of white blood cells (WBCs), red blood cells (RBCs), and protein and glucose concentrations (the latter interpreted as a ratio using a laboratory-determined blood glucose taken at the same time as the CSF). Taken together, these CSF variables can provide a rapid early guide to the probability of the patient having bacterial meningitis, even when bacteria are not detected on CSF Gram staining. Normal ranges for CSF variables vary slightly between laboratories, but approximate values are shown below.

- Opening pressure: 10-100 mm H$_2$O (<8 years of age); 60-200 mm H$_2$O (>8 years of age)
- Appearance to the naked eye: clear and colourless
- Total protein concentration: 0.15-0.45 g/l
- Glucose concentration: 2.78-4.44 mmol/l (approximately 60% of the plasma value)
- Cell count (per µl): 0-5 WBCs (0-20 in neonates), no RBCs (if RBCs are present, and the blood WBC count is within normal range, one WBC per 500-1000 CSF RBCs can be expected).

An increased CSF opening pressure is common, but not invariable, in bacterial meningitis. A CSF opening pressure greater than 250 mm H$_2$O indicates raised intracranial pressure. CSF containing a high number of WBCs or RBCs (>200 WBCs or >400 RBCs per µl) may appear turbid to the naked eye. Overt turbidity due to the presence of WBCs is usually an indication of bacterial meningitis.

An increased CSF protein concentration may be due to the presence of blood in the CSF, polyneuritis, tumour, injury, or any inflammatory or infectious condition of the CNS, including bacterial meningitis. Higher protein concentrations are usually seen in bacterial than viral meningitis, and CSF protein levels may be particularly high in TB meningitis. A decreased CSF glucose concentration (CSF plasma:glucose ratio <0.6) may be due to bacterial meningitis, including TB.

An increased WBC count in the CSF is usually an indication of bacterial or viral meningitis, but may also be found in cerebral or spinal abscesses, following seizures, and in some non-infectious disorders (such as acute leukaemia). RBCs in the CSF sample are commonly the result of a traumatic lumbar puncture, but may also indicate bleeding in the CNS.
Differentiation of the CSF WBCs can also be useful. A raised CSF polymorphonuclear (PMN) cell count is usually indicative of bacterial meningitis, whereas a lymphocytic CSF is more often associated with viral meningitis. However, it is important to note that a raised CSF PMN cell count can also occur with viral aetiologies (e.g. Herpes Simplex Virus or Enterovirus meningitis). In addition, lymphocytic CSFs (or a mixture of PMN cells and lymphocytes) are not uncommon in the early stages of bacterial meningitis, especially in cases where oral antibiotics have been given prior to lumbar puncture. Lymphocytes may also be the predominant cell type in TB meningitis.

CSF bacterial culture is routinely performed. However, it should be noted that staining and culture for Mycobacterium tuberculosis is only normally performed when specifically requested by the clinician and/or clinical details, including risk factors for TB, are provided. If TB meningitis is suspected on clinical grounds, approximately 5ml of CSF should be sent for examination to enhance the sensitivity of staining for acid-fast bacilli (which is only rarely positive) and culture. TB PCR should also be considered, and the case should be discussed with a Clinical Microbiologist and an Infectious Disease Specialist.

Meningococcal PCR testing of CSF (in addition to whole-blood PCR) should also be performed in cases of suspected meningococcal meningitis.

Clinical question
In children and young people with suspected meningitis, can CSF variables (white blood cell count, glucose, protein) distinguish between bacterial and viral meningitis?

Previous UK guidelines
No previous guidelines were identified in relation to this question.

Studies considered in this section
All study designs evaluating the diagnostic accuracy of tests for CSF white blood cell count, CSF protein or CSF glucose to discern bacterial meningitis (BM) from viral/aseptic meningitis (VM & AM) were considered for inclusion in this section. The majority of studies were retrospective and only those conducted in high income countries were included. Studies of adults and children were included where data were presented separately for child participants. Findings were presented in 3 age groups: all children, pre-school children and neonates.

Predictive value of individual CSF tests for diagnosis of bacterial versus aseptic meningitis

Overview of available evidence
CSF White blood cell count
Eleven studies examined the value of CSF WBC count to differentiate between bacterial and aseptic/viral meningitis. Nine were retrospective studies [EL=III] that generally extracted relevant demographic, clinical and laboratory test data from emergency department admission notes and compared these for children who were subsequently given a confirmed diagnosis of bacterial, viral or aseptic meningitis. Two studies recruited participants and collected data prospectively. Seven studies detailed exclusion criteria. Nine included children of broad age groups, one study included younger children only (1 month - 3.5 years) and one included neonates.

Bacterial meningitis was compared to viral meningitis in six studies, to aseptic meningitis in two studies and to more than one non-bacterial type in three others.

CSF protein

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 81 of 244
Ten studies examined CSF protein concentration to differentiate between bacterial and aseptic/viral meningitis \cite{31,61,65,76-78,80,81}. Eight collected data retrospectively from case notes \cite{EL=III} whilst two recruited participants and recorded data prospectively \cite{77,78} \cite{EL=II}. Eight included children of broad age groups, one study \cite{80} included infants only (1 month - 3.5 years) and one \cite{81} included neonates.

Bacterial meningitis was compared to viral meningitis in six studies \cite{31,63,65,78,80}, to aseptic meningitis in two studies \cite{61,62} and to more than one non-bacterial type in three others \cite{76,77,81}. Three of the studies described confirmation of the diagnosis of a viral causative agent \cite{63,78,80}.

**CSF glucose**

Eight studies \cite{31,61,62,65,77,78,80,81} were identified that assessed the diagnostic value of CSF glucose tests to discriminate between bacterial versus viral/aseptic/nonbacterial meningitis. Five studies included children of all ages, one study included infants \cite{80} and one included neonates \cite{81}. Two of these studies were prospective \cite{77,78} \cite{EL=2+} and the remainder retrospective.

Bacterial meningitis was compared to viral meningitis in four studies \cite{31,65,78,80}, to aseptic meningitis in two studies \cite{61,62} and to more than one non-bacterial type in two others \cite{77,81}.

### Review Findings

#### CSF White Blood Cell Count

**Children of all ages**

Four studies \cite{31,63,65,79} \cite{EL=II to III} reported that the mean or median \cite{79} CSF while blood cell (WBC) count was significantly higher in bacterial meningitis compared to viral meningitis (see table 5.16). Only 2 of these 4 studies \cite{63,79} reported that all samples were systematically tested for viral agents, in the other 2 studies \cite{65} diagnosis was based on a combination of chart review (e.g., no report of antibiotic therapy; recorded diagnosis of viral meningitis) and a proportion of samples having been tested for viral infection. Two studies \cite{76,77} \cite{EL=III and EL=II respectively} reported CSF WBC counts for children with bacterial, viral and undetermined meningitis. Although a p value was not given in either study, the findings for undetermined meningitis (UM) were of a similar magnitude across the two studies (mean (SD) WBCs/ml UM=431 (772) and UM=264 (204) respectively) and results for the bacterial and viral groups were consistent across the two studies and with the previously mentioned studies (see table 5.16). Three older studies included children with meningitis where *H. influenzae* was the causative agent in at least 50% of cases (see table 5.16).

Two retrospective studies sought to discriminate between bacterial meningitis and aseptic meningitis \cite{61,62}. The first study, which was a secondary analysis of multicentre data, included 96 cases of bacterial meningitis (from a total n=198). The second study (n=167) included 21 children with bacterial meningitis. Both studies reported that the median CSF WBC count was significantly higher in bacterial meningitis compared to aseptic meningitis (both \(p<10^{-6}\)). However, neither demonstrated that CSF WBC was a strong predictor for distinguishing bacterial from aseptic meningitis. The first study estimated Area Under Curve (AUC) =0.81 and that a CSF WBC count above the threshold of 200 cells/\(\mu\)l was significantly associated with bacterial meningitis (sensitivity 76%, specificity 75%, OR=9 (95% CI 3 to 32), \(p<10^{-5}\)). The second study reported similar findings for the same threshold (sensitivity 79%, specificity 69%, OR=8.3 (95% CI 4.1 to 16.9)).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of <em>Haemophilus influenzae</em> type B (Hib)</th>
<th>CSF WBC count outcome and unit of measurement</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>De Cauwer 2007 \cite{31} [EL=III]</td>
<td>1997 – 2005 1/22 Hib</td>
<td>mean (SD) no unit given</td>
<td>BM=5467 (6937), VM=320 (718)</td>
<td>(p=0.01)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ((October 2009)) Page 82 of 244
Three studies gave estimates of sensitivity, specificity, PPV and NPV for different thresholds of CSF WBC counts to discriminate between bacterial and viral meningitis. One study combined viral and undetermined meningitis groups to compare the bacterial to a non-bacterial meningitis group (see table 5.17 below). The four studies that presented findings for a threshold of 500 cells/µl ranged in size (n=45 to 237), included locally available populations, variously included Gram-negative or both Gram-negative and Gram-positive bacteria, and used different data collection methods. No consistent findings for sensitivity, specificity, PPV and NPV were reported. One study compared three different thresholds but did not find any threshold value of CSF WBC count conferring high sensitivity, specificity and NPV to the test.

### Table 5.17. Cerebrospinal fluid white blood cell count – diagnostic statistics (children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of <em>Haemophilus influenzae</em> type B (Hib)</th>
<th>Threshold value</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>PPV</th>
<th>NPV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corrall 1981 [EL=II]</td>
<td>1978 – 1980, 12/24 Hib</td>
<td>CSF WBC count threshold &gt;500 cells/µL</td>
<td>74%</td>
<td>94%</td>
<td>89%</td>
<td>83%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baker 1989 [EL=II]</td>
<td>1985 – 1986, 36/54 Hib</td>
<td>CSF WBC count threshold &gt;500 cells/µL</td>
<td>83%</td>
<td>78%</td>
<td>83%</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BenGershom 1986 [EL=II]</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>CSF WBC count threshold &gt;500 cells/µL</td>
<td>88%</td>
<td>72%</td>
<td>68%</td>
<td>90%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 83 of 244
1 Pre-school children

One retrospective study \(^8^0\) [EL=III] of children aged 1 to 42 months found that the mean CSF WBC count was also significantly higher in bacterial meningitis compared to viral meningitis in this younger age group \((p<0.0001)\).

2 Neonates

Lastly, a retrospective study of neonates (defined as under 4 weeks of age) \(^8^1\) \((n=72; \text{BM}=18)\) found that all viral and aseptic meningitis cases had a CSF WBC above a threshold of 22 cells/μL, compared to 83% of bacterial meningitis cases. [EL=III] However, this was a small study \((\text{bacterial meningitis }n=18, \text{ viral meningitis }n=13 \text{ and aseptic meningitis }n=41)\), and neonate who had received antibiotic treatment of assessment were excluded, as were those whose lumbar puncture was ‘traumatic’ (>1000 RBC/mm\(^3\)) unless the CSF culture tested positive for bacteria. This could explain why fewer neonates with bacterial meningitis had a CSF WBC > 22 cells/μL.

3 CSF Protein

Children of all ages

Three studies\(^3^1;^6^3;^6^5\) [EL=III] reported that the mean CSF protein concentration was significantly higher in bacterial meningitis compared to viral meningitis. Two studies \(^7^6;^7^7\) [EL=III and EL=II, respectively] reported CSF protein concentration for children with bacterial, viral and undetermined meningitis. Although no p-value was reported, the findings for undetermined meningitis were similar across both studies and results for the bacterial and viral groups were of similar magnitude to those studies where p-values were reported (see table 5.18).

4 Table 5.18 Cerebrospinal fluid protein concentration - descriptive statistics (children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib)</th>
<th>CSF protein concentration and unit of measurement</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grendel 2000 [EL=III]</td>
<td>1994-1996 6/23 Hib</td>
<td>mean (range) g/l</td>
<td>BM=2.2 (0.4 - 4.7) VM=0.57 (0.1 - 2.7)</td>
<td>p&lt;0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sormunen 1999 [EL=III]</td>
<td>1984 – 1991 213/325 Hib</td>
<td>mean (SD) g/l</td>
<td>BM=1.88 (1.5) VM=0.52 (0.24)</td>
<td>p&lt;0.0001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Cauwer 2007 [EL=III]</td>
<td>1997-2005 1/22 Hib</td>
<td>mean (SD) g/l</td>
<td>BM=1.633 (2.180) VM=0.378 (.182)</td>
<td>p=0.0003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chavanet 2007 [EL=III]</td>
<td>1995-2002 Hib not reported but main causes noted as being S. pneumoniae (20/36) and N. meningitidis (9/36).</td>
<td>mean (SD) g/l</td>
<td>BM=2.3 (1.5) VM=0.38 (0.18) UM=0.47 (0.24)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Three studies\(^3\):\(^6\):\(^7\) estimated diagnostic accuracy of CSF protein concentration to discriminate between bacterial and viral meningitis providing estimates of sensitivity, specificity, PPV and NPV at different thresholds. As before, one study\(^7\) compared bacterial to “non-bacterial” meningitis (see table 5.19). The four studies that presented findings for a CSF protein concentration threshold of 100mg/dl ranged in size (n=45 to 237), variously included bacteria which were Gram-positive or Gram-negative or both, and used different data collection methods. The best results for accuracy were reported in a small prospective study\(^6\) (n=45), but were not replicated elsewhere. No consistent findings for sensitivity, specificity, PPV and NPV were reported. One study\(^6\) presented findings for two different thresholds (1.0 g/l and 1.5 g/l) but did not find a threshold value of CSF protein concentration conferring high sensitivity and NPV to the test.

### Table 5.19 Cerebrospinal fluid protein concentration – diagnostic statistics (children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of <em>Haemophilus influenzae</em> type B (Hib)</th>
<th>Threshold value</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>PPV</th>
<th>NPV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corrall 1981(^7) [EL=II]\</td>
<td>1978 – 1980 12/24 Hib</td>
<td>CSF [protein] &gt;1.0 g/l</td>
<td>74%</td>
<td>94%</td>
<td>89%</td>
<td>83%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Cauwer 2007 (^3) [EL=III]\</td>
<td>1997 – 2005 1/22 Hib</td>
<td>CSF [protein] &gt;1.0 g/l</td>
<td>57%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>89%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BenGershom 1986 (^7) [EL=II]\</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>CSF [protein] &gt;1.0 g/l</td>
<td>94%</td>
<td>92%</td>
<td>89%</td>
<td>96%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sormunen 1999 (^6) [EL=III]\</td>
<td>1977-1992 213/325 Hib</td>
<td>CSF [protein] &gt;1.0 g/l</td>
<td>64%</td>
<td>96%</td>
<td>84%</td>
<td>88%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sormunen 1999 (^6) [EL=III]\</td>
<td>1977-1992 213/325 Hib</td>
<td>CSF [protein] &gt;1.5 g/l</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>99%</td>
<td>96%</td>
<td>85%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two retrospective studies evaluated the predictive value of CSF protein concentration to discriminate between bacterial meningitis and aseptic meningitis\(^6\):\(^2\) [EL=III]. The first study, which was a secondary analysis of multicentre data, recruited 96 cases of bacterial meningitis (n=198). The second study (n=167) included 21 children with bacterial meningitis. Both studies reported that the median CSF protein concentration was significantly higher in bacterial meningitis compared to aseptic meningitis (both p<10\(^{-4}\)). However, neither demonstrated that CSF protein concentration was a strong predictor for distinguishing bacterial from aseptic meningitis. The first analysis reported a lower AUC estimate of 0.88, lower specificity and a lower OR for the same threshold (sensitivity 88%, specificity 65%, OR=14.2, 95% CI 6.3 to 32.7). The second study estimated AUC=0.93 and that a CSF protein concentration above the threshold of 0.5 g/L was significantly associated with bacterial meningitis (sensitivity 86%, specificity 78%, OR=22, 95% CI 6 to 101, p<10\(^{-4}\)), adjusted OR=34, 95% CI 5 to 217, p<10\(^{-3}\); adjustment for blood CRP, CSF WBC and neutrophil count).
One retrospective study\textsuperscript{80} [EL=III] of children aged 1-40 months found that the mean CSF protein concentration was significantly higher in bacterial meningitis compared to viral meningitis in this younger age group (mean (SD) g/L BM versus VM = 1.5 (1.0) versus 0.4 (0.2), \( p < 0.0001 \)).

Neonates

A retrospective study of neonates\textsuperscript{81} [EL=III] (\( N=72 \)) found that all viral and aseptic meningitis cases had a CSF protein concentration below a threshold of 1.70 g/l, but only 56\% of bacterial meningitis cases had a CSF protein concentration above this level. This threshold conferred high specificity and PPV, but a low sensitivity for identification of bacterial from non-bacterial meningitis (sensitivity 55.6\%, specificity 100\%, PPV 100\%, NPV 87.1\%).

**CSF Glucose**

**Children of all ages**

Two studies compared the mean CSF glucose in children with bacterial meningitis to those with viral meningitis. Although the results showed that the mean CSF glucose was higher in viral than in bacterial meningitis in both studies, only one found that this was statistically significant\textsuperscript{31} [EL=III]. A third study\textsuperscript{77} that included children with viral and aseptic meningitis also reported that those with viral meningitis had a higher mean CSF glucose than those with bacterial meningitis although no \( p \)-value was given (see table 5.20).

Two retrospective studies compared the mean CSF glucose concentrations found in bacterial meningitis and aseptic meningitis\textsuperscript{61;62} [EL=III]. Both studies reported that the median CSF glucose concentration was significantly higher in aseptic compared to bacterial meningitis (both \( p = 0.01 \) and \( p < 10^{-6} \), respectively). A third, small (\( n=56 \)) prospective study\textsuperscript{77} [EL=III] including children with viral and aseptic meningitis also reported that those with aseptic meningitis had a higher mean CSF glucose than those with bacterial meningitis, although no \( p \)-value was reported.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib)</th>
<th>CSF glucose concentration and unit of measurement</th>
<th>Result</th>
<th>( p )-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>De Cauwer 2007\textsuperscript{31} [EL=III]</td>
<td>1997-2005 1/22 Hib</td>
<td>mean (SD) mmol/l</td>
<td>BM=2.46 (1.48) VM=3.37 (0.56)</td>
<td>&lt;0.012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sormunen 1999\textsuperscript{65} [EL=III]</td>
<td>1977-1992 213/325 Hib</td>
<td>mean (SD) mmol/l</td>
<td>BM=2.9 (1.6) VM=3.3 (0.6)</td>
<td>&lt;0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corrall 1981\textsuperscript{77} [EL=II]</td>
<td>1978-1980 12/24 Hib</td>
<td>mean (SD) mmol/l</td>
<td>BM=1.54 (0.44) VM=3.08 (0.44) UM=3.47 (0.33)</td>
<td>not recorded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubos 2006\textsuperscript{62} [EL=III]</td>
<td>2000-2004 1/21 Hib</td>
<td>mean/median/[range] mmol/l</td>
<td>BM=1.8/1.4/[0.0-4.4] AM=3.0/3.0/[1.3-4.6]</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dubos 2008\textsuperscript{61} [EL=III]</td>
<td>1998-2005 7/96 Hib</td>
<td>median [range] mmol/l</td>
<td>BM=1.09 (0.0-6.04) AM=3.17 (0.1-5.65)</td>
<td>&lt;10^{-6}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Three studies\textsuperscript{31;65;78} gave details of the diagnostic accuracy of CSF glucose concentration to discriminate between bacterial and viral meningitis providing estimates of sensitivity, specificity, PPV and NPV at different thresholds (2.0 mmol/l, 2.2 mmol/l and 2.5 mmol/l). Although optimal specificity was reached in one study at a cut-off value of 2.0 mmol/l\textsuperscript{65}, sensitivity was consistently low for this threshold and all others investigated. The best results were found in the study comparing bacterial to “non-bacterial” meningitis\textsuperscript{77} (sensitivity=78\%; see table 5.21).

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 86 of 244
Table 5.21. Cerebrospinal fluid glucose concentration - diagnostic statistics (children of all ages)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study and evidence level</th>
<th>Years of data collection and proportion of Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib)</th>
<th>Threshold value</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>PPV</th>
<th>NPV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>De Cauwer 2007 [3]</td>
<td>1997-2005 1/22 Hib</td>
<td>CSF [glucose] 2.92 mmol/l BM versus VM</td>
<td>57%</td>
<td>87%</td>
<td>57%</td>
<td>87%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BenGershom 1986 [3]</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>CSF [glucose] &lt;2.2 mmol/l BM versus VM</td>
<td>47%</td>
<td>96%</td>
<td>89%</td>
<td>71%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sormunen 1999 [3]</td>
<td>1977-1992 213/325 Hib</td>
<td>CSF [glucose] &lt;2.0 mmol/l BM versus VM</td>
<td>31%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>79%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corrall 1981 [3]</td>
<td>1978 – 1980 12/24 Hib</td>
<td>CSF [glucose] &lt;2.2 mmol/l BM versus VM/UM</td>
<td>78%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>86%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Two retrospective studies estimated diagnostic accuracy of CSF glucose concentration to discriminate between bacterial and aseptic meningitis at a 2.5 mmol/L threshold [3,4] [EL=III]. The first analysis which included a larger proportion of bacterial meningitis cases, reported a slightly better results at the same threshold (sensitivity 67%, specificity 82%, OR=9.3, 95% CI 4.5 to 19.3). The second study estimated that a CSF glucose concentration above the threshold was significantly associated with aseptic meningitis (sensitivity 62%, specificity 78%, OR=6, 95% CI 2 to 17, p<0.0001). However, neither demonstrated that CSF protein concentration was a strong predictor for distinguishing bacterial from aseptic meningitis.

Pre-school children

One retrospective study [3] [EL=II] reported that the mean CSF glucose concentration was significantly higher in viral meningitis compared to bacterial meningitis in a younger age group (1 month - 3.5 years) (mean (SD) mmol/L bacterial meningitis versus viral meningitis 1.6 (1.3) versus 3.2 (0.7), p<0.0001).

Neonates

One study of neonates reported estimates of diagnostic accuracy at a CSF glucose threshold of 1.87 mmol/L [3] [EL=II]. In this study, 11/18 (61%) bacterial meningitis, 7/13 (54%) viral meningitis and 7/41 (17%) aseptic meningitis cases had results below this level. Comparing the results for bacterial meningitis to the combined results for non-bacterial meningitis did not result in clinically meaningful diagnostic accuracy estimates (sensitivity 61%, specificity 74%, PPV 44%, NPV 85%).

Evidence Statement

CSF White Blood Cell Count

There is consistent evidence from eight studies of children of all ages and evidence from one study in pre-school children that CSF WBC count was significantly higher in bacterial meningitis compared to viral, aseptic and non-bacterial meningitis. Because of the clinical need to reliably discriminate between children with bacterial meningitis and viral meningitis, the diagnostic accuracy of a test should include a high sensitivity. High sensitivity was not found in any study of children at a threshold of 500 cells/μL.
Results from a study in neonates suggested that a threshold of 22 cells/µl would not have sufficient diagnostic accuracy to discriminate nonbacterial from bacterial meningitis.

**CSF Protein**

CSF protein concentration was consistently reported to be significantly higher in bacterial meningitis compared to viral, aseptic or non-bacterial meningitis in children. No clinically reliable threshold to discriminate between bacterial and viral/aseptic meningitis was determined for CSF protein concentration in children. In neonates, although a threshold was identified under which the CSF protein concentration for all non-bacterial meningitis cases occurred, 44% of bacterial meningitis cases also had these lower results.

**CSF Glucose**

Evidence from two studies of children demonstrated that the mean CSF glucose concentration was significantly higher in aseptic meningitis compared to bacterial meningitis. There were inconsistent findings for the comparison between viral and bacterial meningitis for this age group, although in a study of infants, the mean CSF glucose concentration was significantly higher in viral than bacterial meningitis. No clinically reliable threshold to discriminate between bacterial and viral/aseptic/nonbacterial meningitis was determined for CSF glucose concentration in children or in neonates.

**GDG interpretation of the evidence**

Although evidence has been found that there are significant differences in CSF WBC count and protein and glucose concentrations between bacterial and other forms of meningitis, no single variable has been shown to have sufficient diagnostic accuracy to confirm or exclude bacterial meningitis. The GDG is aware of some limited evidence that the presence of polymorphonuclear cells in CSF and the CSF plasma:glucose ratio are independent predictors of bacterial meningitis. In some of the included studies the absence of a positive CSF bacterial culture was used to indicate the absence of bacterial meningitis (‘aseptic meningitis’). In these studies, true cases of bacterial meningitis will be defined as ‘aseptic meningitis’ due to the low sensitivity of CSF bacterial culture.

Given that CSF variables cannot reliably exclude bacterial meningitis, the GDG was of the opinion that CSF WBC counts outside the accepted normal ranges should prompt the initiation of appropriate antibiotic therapy in cases of suspected bacterial meningitis (if antibiotics have not been started prior to the lumbar puncture). Whilst a low CSF-plasma glucose ratio is also an indicator of bacterial meningitis in children aged over 28 days, no evidence was identified to indicate that this variable is commonly abnormal in the presence of a normal CSF WBC count. Recognising the lower sensitivity of the CSF WBC count for bacterial meningitis in neonates, the GDG was also of the opinion that bacterial meningitis should still be considered in neonates in whom the CSF WBC count is within the currently accepted normal range (<20 cells/µl). Furthermore, the GDG is aware of recent evidence that suggests that the CSF WBC count range in normal neonates is the same as that in older children and adults (<5 cells/µl), and that mild CSF pleocytosis (which may occur in symptomatic neonates without CNS infection) cannot be regarded as a normal finding.

A particular problem is the interpretation of CSF findings in neonates: there is insufficient evidence to guide recommendations for defining the likelihood of bacterial meningitis in this age group. Performance characteristics of meningitis scoring systems based on blood test results and CSF findings have been studied in some populations and similar studies in the UK could improve the diagnosis or exclusion of bacterial meningitis. Studies are, therefore, needed to determine the ‘normal’ ranges of blood and CSF parameters in children and young people. The studies should include previously healthy children found to have aseptic meningitis as well as those in whom bacterial meningitis is confirmed.

**Recommendations**

Perform a lumbar puncture as a primary investigation in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis unless this is contraindicated (see Section 5.6).
Do not allow lumbar puncture to delay the administration of parenteral antibiotics.

Lumbar puncture results (white blood cell count, protein and glucose) should be made available within 4 hours to support clinical decision making with regard to adjunctive steroid therapy (see section 6.7).

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis, send a CSF sample for examination for white blood cells, total protein and glucose concentrations, and a Gram stain, and a corresponding blood sample for a laboratory-determined glucose concentration.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis, the results of CSF microscopy and biochemical analyses should be made available within 4 hours of the CSF sample being taken to support clinical decision making with regard to adjunctive steroid therapy (see section 6.7).

In children and young people aged 28 days or older, start antibiotic treatment for bacterial meningitis if the CSF white blood cell count is abnormal (more than 5 cells/microlitre or more than one neutrophil is present), regardless of other CSF variables.

In neonates, start antibiotic treatment for bacterial meningitis if the CSF white blood cell count is abnormal (20 cells/microlitre or more). If the CSF white blood cell count is less than 20 cells/microlitre, bacterial meningitis should still be considered if other symptoms and signs are present (see table 3.2).

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis, consider alternative diagnoses if the child or young person is significantly unwell and has CSF variables within the accepted normal ranges.

If pleocytosis is present and there is a history suggesting a risk of tuberculosis, evaluate for the diagnosis of tuberculosis in line with ‘Tuberculosis’ (NICE clinical guideline 33).

Research recommendations

What are the normal ranges for blood and CSF parameters in children and young people in the UK?

Why this is important

Bacterial meningitis is a rare disease that is not easily distinguishable clinically from aseptic meningitis. It is, however, important to recognise those children who are most likely to have bacterial meningitis to direct appropriate management of the condition and to avoid inappropriate treatment of aseptic meningitis. Since the introduction of vaccines to protect against Hib, meningococcus serogroup C and pneumococcus, no high-quality studies involving previously healthy children and young people have been conducted in the UK to determine normal ranges for blood test results or CSF findings in bacterial and aseptic meningitis. Such studies are needed to provide reference values to help interpret blood test results and CSF findings in children (especially neonates) and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis.

5.6 Contraindications to lumbar puncture

Introduction

Definitive diagnosis of meningitis requires microscopy, biochemical analysis, culture and PCR analysis of a sample of CSF. Without a CSF sample, the resultant incomplete diagnosis detracts from clinical management. Bacterial meningitis may be clinically suspected but not confirmed, antibiotic use and selection may be inadequate, duration of antibiotic treatment cannot be optimised, development of complications cannot be anticipated and information to parents, prognostication and follow-up may be less well informed. Nevertheless there are circumstances
when a lumbar puncture is contraindicated, because of a risk of complications. Usually such risk is temporary and lumbar puncture can be deferred rather than abandoned completely.

Clinical question

When is lumbar puncture contraindicated in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis?

When is lumbar puncture contraindicated in children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia?

Previous UK guidelines

The ‘Feverish Illness in Children’ guideline recommends the following:

“Red” group

Children with fever without apparent source presenting to paediatric specialists with one or more “red” features should have the following investigations performed:

- Full blood count
- Blood culture
- C-reactive protein
- Urine testing for urinary tract infection

The following investigations should also be considered in children with “red” features, as guided by the clinical assessment:

- Lumbar puncture in children of all ages (if not contraindicated)
- Chest X-ray irrespective of body temperature and white blood cell count
- Serum electrolytes and blood gas

“Amber” group

Children with fever without apparent source presenting to paediatric specialists who have one or more “amber” features should have the following investigations performed unless deemed unnecessary by an experienced paediatrician:

- Urine should be collected and tested for urinary tract infection
- Blood tests: full blood count, C-reactive protein and blood cultures
- Lumbar puncture should be considered for children younger than one year
- Chest X-ray in a child with fever greater than 39°C and white blood cell count greater than 20x10⁵/litre.”

The SIGN guideline on Management of Invasive Meningococcal disease in Children and Young People recommends:

“Lumbar puncture is not recommended in the initial assessment of suspected IMD with features of septicaemia. Lumbar puncture may be considered later if there is a diagnostic uncertainty or unsatisfactory clinical progress and there are no contraindications.”

“Lumbar puncture should be performed in patients with clinical meningitis without features of septicaemia (purpura) where there are no contraindications.”

The SIGN guideline notes the following contraindications to lumbar puncture:

- Cardiorespiratory decompensation
- Raised intracranial pressure (signs include: fluctuating or impaired levels of consciousness, focal neurological signs or abnormal posturing, dilated or poorly reactive pupils, relative bradycardia and/or hypertension, papilloedema (although this may not be present initially despite significantly raised ICP)).

Studies considered in this section

This systematic review looking at contraindications to lumbar puncture in children with suspected bacterial meningitis and children with suspected meningococcal disease includes five studies, four of which were surveys based on reviews of medical records [EL=3] and one of which was a case-control study of poor quality, [EL=2–]

Review findings

A prospective survey conducted in Australia (1991–1992) aimed to identify the risks of performing lumbar puncture and poor outcomes associated with not performing lumbar puncture [EL=3]. Of the 218 children admitted to hospital with suspected meningitis, 195 (89.4%) had a lumbar puncture performed immediately. Bacterial meningitis was diagnosed in 18 of these children (n=31 viral meningitis). No child developed cerebral herniation following an immediate lumbar puncture. Eleven of the lumbar punctures were defined as traumatic and two children required repeated attempts. In nine of the 18 children with bacterial meningitis the lumbar puncture provided information that was defined by the authors as useful in deciding the appropriate management of the children. Twenty-three children did not have an immediate lumbar puncture. The main reason for delaying lumbar puncture was severe obtundation, usually with a Glasgow Coma Scale score of 7 or less. Seventeen children had a lumbar puncture later. In seven children the lumbar puncture was delayed due to suspected raised intracranial pressure. A lumbar puncture was performed after a cranial computed tomography (CT) scan showed no abnormalities. Three children in the delayed lumbar puncture group had bacterial meningitis. Six children never had a lumbar puncture performed. Five of this group had bacterial meningitis diagnosed clinically and from blood cultures or urine antigen testing. No adverse outcomes were noted in relation to not having a lumbar puncture performed.

A UK retrospective survey was undertaken in the year 2000 to describe usual practice at the study hospital and identify the contribution of lumbar puncture to diagnosis and management of care [EL=3]. Medical records were examined of 415 children to identify those with suspected CNS infections (n=52) or suspected meningococcal septicaemia (n=43). No lumbar puncture was performed in children with contraindications (as defined by the authors). Of the 47 children with suspected CNS infection and no contraindications, 25 (53%) received a lumbar puncture. Contraindications were defined as follows:

- Shock present (tachycardia and poor peripheral perfusion and/or hypotension)
- Reduced level of consciousness (Glasgow Coma Score <13)
- Focal neurological signs present:
  - Unequal, dilated or poorly responsive pupils
  - Absent ‘doll’s eye’ movements
  - Papilloedema
- Hypertension and relative bradycardia
- Within 30 minutes of a short convulsive seizure
- Following a prolonged convulsive seizure (lasting >30 min) or tonic seizure
- Local superficial infection
- Coagulation disorder.

Forty-three children had suspected meningococcal septicaemia without CNS involvement. None of these children had a lumbar puncture performed. No patient in any group died or had sequelae. Sterile CSF cultures allowed 15 of the 25 children who had a lumbar puncture to have antibiotics discontinued compared with three of the 22 children who had no contraindications but did not have a lumbar puncture (p<0.001).

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009])
A retrospective survey conducted in Australia (1984–1989) was undertaken to see whether the incidence of cerebral herniation was increased immediately following a lumbar puncture for children with bacterial meningitis [EL=3]. From 445 medical records reviewed, 19 children were identified as having cerebral herniation (a total of 21 episodes; two children had two episodes of herniation). The timing of herniation compared with lumbar puncture was as follows:

- eight episodes of herniation occurred within 3 hours of lumbar puncture being performed.
- four episodes occurred between 3 and 12 hours after lumbar puncture.
- three episodes of herniation occurred between 18.5 and 40.5 hours after lumbar puncture.
- six episodes of herniation occurred before lumbar puncture or in a child who did not undergo lumbar puncture.

At the time of lumbar puncture three children were unresponsive to pain, three were drowsy but rousable, one had a purpuric rash and clonus of the right ankle, another had neck stiffness, and one had decerebrate posturing and a rash. Outcomes for children who had cerebral herniation were very poor. Fourteen of the children died; two had no long-term sequelae reported, one had hearing loss and behavioural problems noted on follow-up (timing not noted) and two were discharged with serious neurological impairment.

A UK retrospective case control study (1974–1985) [EL=2–] aimed to identify features of meningitis associated with cerebral herniation and death [EL=2–]. The study included 19 children who had been diagnosed with meningitis, who had had a lumbar puncture and who had subsequently died. This group was compared with a matched control group (n=19) of children who had also been diagnosed with meningitis, had had a lumbar puncture and subsequently recovered. The children were matched for: year of admission, gender, age and infecting micro-organism, however the degree of matching achieved was quite poor with only one child being matched on all four factors and another seven matched on three factors. Two features of raised intracranial pressure were found to be associated with a significantly increased risk of cerebral herniation: fits on admission (5/17 versus 0/17; RR 7.08, 95% CI 2.2 to 22.1, p=0.02) and Glasgow coma scale score <8 (10/17 versus 4/17; RR 4.6, 95% CI 1.06 to 35.8, p=0.03), although due to the small numbers of children involved these findings should be interpreted with caution.

A survey conducted in part prospectively (n=71 children) and in part retrospectively (n=52 children) in Nigeria sought to determine the frequency and outcomes of possible cerebral herniation in relation to lumbar puncture [EL=3]. The study compared incidence and timing of cerebral herniation in high- and low-risk patients as defined by a weighted scoring system based predominantly on clinical features associated with severe or mild to moderate illness (including factors: unrousable coma (3 points), hypothermia (2 points), convulsions (2 points), shock (1 point), age <12 months (1 point) and symptoms persisting >3 days (0.5 point). An lumbar puncture was performed on presentation in 112 children (91%) and deferred in 11. The former group contained 18 children (16%) who were defined as being at high risk compared with seven (64%) of the latter group. Four groups of children were described: those with no cerebral herniation; those with cerebral herniation both pre and post lumbar puncture; those with pre lumbar puncture herniation only and those with post lumbar puncture herniation only. Findings for each of these groups were as follows: no herniation pre or post lumbar puncture: 6/18 high risk versus 86/94 low risk (RR 0.4, 95% CI 0.2 to 0.7, p<0.0001); pre plus post lumbar puncture: 4/18 versus 0/94 (p=0.0004); pre lumbar puncture only: 7/18 versus 0/94 (p<0.0001); post lumbar puncture only: 1/18 versus 8/94 (RR 0.6, 95% CI 0.1 to 4.9, p=1.0). Seventeen children who had a lumbar puncture on presentation died, including seven within 24 hours. Eight children who had deferred lumbar puncture died, seven within 24 hours of the procedure.

Evidence statement

There is evidence that cerebral herniation occurs in bacterial meningitis.

There is evidence from two surveys that lumbar puncture is associated with a very low risk of cerebral herniation where it is undertaken on children without impaired level of consciousness or...
other signs of raised intracranial pressure. Evidence from another two surveys shows that where there are signs of loss of consciousness or other signs of raised intracranial pressure there is an increased risk of cerebral herniation, although there is evidence to suggest that the cerebral herniation noted after lumbar puncture may, in a number of cases, have been developing before the lumbar puncture was performed.

There is no evidence on which to conclude whether or not lumbar puncture causes cerebral herniation in bacterial meningitis.

**GDG interpretation of the evidence**

Lumbar puncture, when used appropriately, can provide important clinical information in suspected bacterial meningitis. Results can help to establish the diagnosis and effective management (choice of antibiotics, length of course of antibiotics, follow up arrangements, etc). Its proper use should not be neglected on the basis of over-interpretation of perceived risk.

There was no specific evidence found about the level of platelet count which would contraindicate a lumbar puncture. However, the group agreed by consensus that a platelet count below 100 x 10^9/l was an appropriate cut-off for both neonates and children.

If a lumbar puncture is contraindicated, then data from delayed lumbar puncture may still help to establish a diagnosis or influence management.

The GDG noted that seizures were a serious complication in cases of meningitis and could be particularly difficult to manage in some patients including those with raised intracranial pressure. Nevertheless, confirmation of diagnosis by lumbar puncture is also important. Seizures are therefore a relative contraindication to lumbar puncture and appropriate management may neutralise that contraindication. The GDG were of the opinion that local or national protocols should be available for the management of seizures associated with bacterial meningitis.

---

**Recommendations**

In children and young people aged 28 days or older with suspected bacterial meningitis, perform a lumbar puncture unless any of the following contraindications are present:

- signs suggesting raised intracranial pressure
  - reduced level of consciousness (Glasgow Coma Score less than 9)
  - relative bradycardia and hypertension
  - focal neurological signs
  - abnormal posture
  - unequal, dilated or poorly responsive pupils
  - papilloedema
  - abnormal ‘doll’s eye’ movements

- uncorrected shock (tachycardia and poor peripheral perfusion and/or hypotension)

- extensive or extending purpura

- after convulsions
  - within 30 minutes of a convulsive seizure lasting 30 minutes or less
  - following a prolonged convulsive seizure (lasting more than 30 minutes)
  - following a tonic seizure

- coagulation abnormalities
5.7 Repeat lumbar puncture in neonates

Introduction

Neonatal meningitis differs from bacterial meningitis in older children in various ways. The most common bacteria that cause meningitis in neonates (Group B streptococcus, L. Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 94 of 244
monocytogenes and E. coli] differ from those in older children] especially in the first week of life. Later-onset meningitis may also be caused by organisms more commonly acquired in childhood [such as S. pneumoniae]. Intracranial infection of the neonate is often associated with a poor developmental outcome making it crucial to initiate timely and appropriate treatment. Premature babies are at even greater risk of meningitis caused by a large spectrum of antibiotic-resistant pathogens and associated with a worse outcome than term babies; however, the sub-population of premature babies who develop meningitis while still in hospital is outside the scope of the guideline. Historically it is known that despite apparently adequate courses of antibiotics neonatal meningitis can relapse or recrudesce. To document CSF sterilisation and thereby increase the chance of successful treatment many paediatricians have adopted the practice of repeating a lumbar puncture either early on in treatment or at the end of a course of antibiotics. However documentation of CSF sterilisation has not been shown to guarantee that the infection will not relapse. This section considers whether repeat lumbar puncture is a useful practice in ensuring treatment success for neonatal bacterial meningitis.

Clinical question

Should lumbar puncture be performed prior to stopping antibiotic treatment in children less than 3 months of age with bacterial meningitis?

Previous UK guidelines

No previous guideline has considered this clinical question in relation to neonates.

Studies considered in this section

Studies were included for consideration in this review if they included term neonates (i.e. babies born at 37 weeks' gestation or over, aged 28 days or less). Only studies from high-income countries were included. No limits were placed on study design, thus small case series were also included due to the limited number of eligible studies conducted in this area.

Overview of available evidence

No study was identified that directly addressed the clinical question as posed. Two retrospective reviews of medical records were identified that were considered to contribute data to help inform the GDG.

Review findings

A retrospective review of medical records of 128 children with definite or suspected bacterial meningitis between 1992 –1996 (USA) was conducted in order to define the time taken to achieve a sterile CSF after the initiation of antibiotic therapy [EL=3]. Twenty-one infants (median age 21 days, IQR: 9 days, 31 days) had Group B streptococcus meningitis. Following parenteral antibiotic treatment (usually with a third-generation cephalosporin), none of five samples tested within 24 hours was found to be sterile; of four tested between 24 and 72 hours, three were sterile; and all of the six tested at 72+ hours were found to be sterile.

In a retrospective review of medical records [EL=3] clinical and laboratory features of six children with recrudescence and of 21 children with relapse were reviewed; nine of the children were neonates. These complications occurred mainly in infants aged less than 2 years and comprised less than 1% of all cases of bacterial meningitis. Neither the initial nor follow-up CSF findings were predictive of recrudescence or relapse. Prolonged or secondary fever was unrelated to these complications. Recrudescence was usually caused by inappropriate therapy whereas relapse after adequate therapy of bacterial meningitis was usually ascribed to persistence of infection in meningeal or parameningeal foci. Relapse did not become manifest until at least 3 days after discontinuation of therapy.

Evidence statement

No evidence was found relating directly to the clinical question.
GDG interpretation of the evidence

By consensus, the GDG considers that routine repeat lumbar puncture is not justified in neonates who are on the correct type and dose of antibiotics (based on identification of the causative organism) and are otherwise making a good clinical recovery.

Neonates who have persistent or re-emergent fever, deterioration in condition, new clinical findings (especially neurological findings), or persistently abnormal inflammatory markers should have imaging of the CNS and a repeat lumbar puncture as these abnormalities may signify a focus of infection. Positive imaging or a positive lumbar puncture should prompt a discussion with local microbiology specialists about choice of antibiotics and duration of treatment.

The GDG considered repeat lumbar puncture before stopping antibiotic therapy is not routinely necessary, while acknowledging that some authorities suggest this should be considered. The argument for this is that the CSF white cell count, neutrophil count (or %), glucose or protein at the end of therapy may predict those who will relapse or have other complications. However, no published evidence was found to support this.

Recommendations

Do not perform a repeat lumbar puncture in neonates who are receiving the antibiotic treatment appropriate to the causative organism and are making a good clinical recovery.

Do not perform a repeat lumbar puncture before stopping antibiotic therapy in neonates who are clinically well.

Perform a repeat lumbar puncture in neonates who have persistent or re-emergent fever, deterioration in clinical condition, new clinical findings (especially neurological findings), or persistently abnormal inflammatory markers.

Research recommendations

Does repeat lumbar puncture in neonates with bacterial meningitis alter the prognosis?

Why this is important

Bacterial meningitis in neonates differs from bacterial meningitis in older children in several ways, including the causative organisms and the risk of relapse even after a long course of antibiotics (with the risk being greater in neonates). This has led some healthcare professionals to repeat lumbar puncture before stopping antibiotic treatment to ensure that the CSF is sterile. The GDG found no evidence from which to evaluate the effectiveness of repeat lumbar puncture for preventing relapse of bacterial meningitis in neonates. A study is required in neonates with documented bacterial meningitis to determine what factors are associated with relapse and whether repeat lumbar puncture alters the prognosis. All neonates included in the study would need to receive a specified antibiotic regimen (tailored to the causative pathogen), involving similar dosages, dosing intervals and duration of treatment. The following data should be collected for each neonate in the study: signs and symptoms, blood test results (inflammatory markers), CSF findings (microbiology and chemistry) and central nervous system imaging. All variables should be measured at the start and end of treatment. Follow up should continue for 1 month after stopping antibiotic treatment, and longer-term follow-up (at 2 years) should also be conducted. Any deterioration in clinical condition should prompt a full clinical assessment, blood analysis, lumbar puncture, and imaging, from which it will be possible to evaluate the risk of relapse according to whether or not repeat lumbar puncture is undertaken.
5.8 Cranial computed tomography for bacterial meningitis

Introduction

Identifying a causative organism in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis by examination of CSF obtained by lumbar puncture is essential to ensure optimal management.

Undertaking a lumbar puncture in children with raised intra-cranial pressure may result in cerebral herniation. CT scanning prior to lumbar puncture has been advocated for children with a depressed conscious level to help determine the presence or extent of raised intracranial pressure to identify those at risk of cerebral herniation. CT scanning is also used to identify other potential causes of depressed conscious level, such as intracranial mass lesions. However, performing a CT scan might delay treatment in children with suspected meningitis and could be dangerous if undertaken in clinically unstable children. Therefore, it is essential to ensure the appropriate use of CT scan, together with the accurate interpretation of scan results.

The ability of a CT scan to reliably detect raised intracranial pressure in children with suspected bacterial meningitis was the subject of this evidence review.

Clinical question

What are the clinical indications for brain imaging in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia?

Previous UK guidelines

No previous UK guideline was identified that addressed this clinical question.

Studies considered in this section

All study designs assessing the role of CT scans in diagnosing raised intracranial pressure in children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningitis were considered for this section. Studies involving adults and children were considered for inclusion if outcomes were reported separately for children. Studies involving adults only were not considered.

Overview of available evidence

Three retrospective studies [EL=3] were found.

Review findings

One retrospective study reported CT scan results of patients admitted to secondary care with bacterial meningitis and raised intracranial pressure (Sweden, 1994–1997) [EL=3]. Of 53 patients with a diagnosis of bacterial meningitis, 12 (seven patients aged 2-16 years) had clinical evidence of increased ICP, confirmed by invasive ICP monitoring (intracranial pressure (ICP) >20 mmHg). A cranial CT scan was performed in 10 patients prior to insertion of the ICP monitoring device. Cranial CT showed radiological signs indicating brain swelling in only 5/10 (50%) patients.

One retrospective review of medical records aimed to determine if the incidence of cerebral herniation increased immediately after lumbar puncture in children with bacterial meningitis admitted to a paediatric referral centre. The study also assessed whether any children with herniation had normal results on CT scan (Australia, 1984–1989) [EL=3]. Herniation was judged to have occurred if clinical or post-mortem findings were compatible with the diagnosis. CT scans of children with herniation and an equal number of scans from children without herniation were reviewed by a paediatric radiologist. From 445 medical records reviewed, 19 children aged 4 months to 15 years were identified as having cerebral herniation, and 14 cranial CT scans were performed. Scans were performed from 1.5 hours before herniation to 18 hours after herniation. Cranial CT scan was normal in 5/14 (36%) episodes of herniation. The five normal scans were from four children (one child had two episodes of herniation). Two of the children with normal CT scans died: herniation was confirmed on necropsy.
One retrospective review of medical records evaluated the role of cranial CT scan in the detection of raised intracranial pressure in 15 children transferred to a tertiary care centre with bacterial meningitis and clinical signs of raised intracranial pressure (UK, 1986–1989) \[EL=3\]. Signs of raised intracranial pressure included: depressed level of consciousness with or without pupillary abnormalities, cranial nerve palsies, hyperventilation, Cheyne Stokes respiration and decorticate and decerebrate posturing. Of the 15 children with suspected raised intracranial pressure, six (40%) had a normal cranial CT scan. Scans of five children (~30%) showed radiological signs of cerebral oedema. ICP measurements and the clinical outcome of children were not reported. The accuracy of CT scan for excluding raised intracranial pressure can therefore not be accurately assessed from these data.

Evidence statement

There is limited evidence from three small retrospective studies that CT scan is an insensitive technique for detection of raised intracranial pressure in children with suspected bacterial meningitis. In two studies, the clinical diagnosis of raised intracranial pressure was mostly presumptive. Studies were conducted in the 1980s and 1990s; no studies using recent CT scanning technology were found.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

Three retrospective studies were found addressing the use of CT scanning in the detection of raised intracranial pressure in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis.

Although the available evidence was limited and not recent, it indicated that some children with raised intracranial pressure may have a normal CT scan. Due to the reported unreliability of CT scan for detecting raised intracranial pressure in children with suspected bacterial meningitis, the GDG saw no advantage in using CT scanning to aid in the decision regarding the safety of lumbar puncture. The decision to perform a lumbar puncture should be made on clinical grounds (see Sections 5.6 and 5.7).

The GDG recognised that children with suspected bacterial meningitis who have a reduced conscious level or focal neurological signs may have alternative diagnoses, for which CT scan detection may be useful.

The GDG stressed that undertaking a CT scan should not delay appropriate treatment, and that children should be stabilised clinically prior to transfer for scan.

The GDG note that Advanced Paediatric Life Support (APLS) guidance identifies that in a previously well, unconscious child (Glasgow Coma Scale <9), who is not postictal, clinical signs of raised intracranial pressure may be evident.[REF]

The GDG were of the opinion that local or national protocols should be available for the treatment of raised intracranial pressure in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis (see Section 5.7).

Recommendations

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis use clinical assessment (including clinical evaluation for signs of raised intracranial pressure), not a cranial computed tomography (CT) scan, to decide whether it is safe to perform a lumbar puncture.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis who have a reduced level of consciousness (Glasgow Coma Score less than 9) or focal neurological signs, perform a CT scan to detect other possible intracranial pathologies.

Clinically stabilise children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis before CT scanning (see Section 6.7).
Do not delay treatment to undertake a CT scan in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis.

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis, if a decision is made to perform a CT scan, ensure it is undertaken in consultation with the anaesthetist, paediatrician or intensivist.

Do not perform a lumbar puncture in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis if a CT scan shows radiological evidence of raised intracranial pressure.

Use local or national protocols to treat raised intracranial pressure in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis.
6 Management in secondary care

6.1 Empiric antibiotics

Introduction

The incidence, causative pathogens, clinical presentation, and outcome of bacterial meningitis in children and young people vary with age (see Section 2.1 and Chapter 3), and these differences will dictate recommendations for empiric and specific antibiotics. As noted in Section 2.1, in older children the most frequent bacteria causing meningitis include N. meningitidis, S. pneumoniae and Hib, whereas in neonates the most common causative organisms are Group B streptococcus, E. coli and L. monocytogenes. The age at which the transition in pathogens occurs is mainly relevant for considerations around empiric antibiotic choice and is, therefore, conservatively regarded to be 3 months.

The choice of empiric antibiotics for bacterial meningitis is influenced by the resistance of H. influenzae (and to a lesser extent S. pneumoniae) to beta-lactam antibiotics. N. meningitidis remains sensitive to the penicillins and cephalosporins. In 2004, 11.6% of invasive H. influenzae isolates in England and Wales were resistant to ampicillin, 0.6% were resistant to chloramphenicol; and 0% were resistant to cefotaxime and rifampicin. In 2007, 3.8% of invasive pneumococci were non-susceptible to penicillin. There is currently a low incidence of pneumococcal cefotaxime/ceftriaxone resistance in the UK, with only 1.7% of strains reported to have intermediate or high resistance to cefotaxime between 2004 and 2007 (source: Health Protection Agency, London).

Babies who are inpatients at the time of diagnosis of meningitis are specifically excluded from this guideline. These babies are more likely to have been born prematurely and/or to have other underlying problems, and this makes them more susceptible to unusual or antibiotic-resistant pathogens. However, as standard clinical care moves towards earlier discharge from neonatal units, and as persistent colonisation with resistant bacteria is well documented, it is conceivable that premature babies and those with underlying health problems may develop symptoms and signs of meningitis at home rather than on the neonatal unit. The epidemiology of neonatal meningitis therefore requires ongoing surveillance as such changes may have implications for empiric antibiotic therapy. Another consideration when prescribing empiric antibiotics for infants less than 3 months old is the prevalence of meningitis caused by L. monocytogenes, as optimal antibiotic treatment for this pathogen requires a penicillin. Although infection with L. monocytogenes is rare (see Section 2.1), a strategy of including a penicillin in empiric therapy up to age 8 weeks is, therefore, likely to miss very few cases of L. monocytogenes meningitis. If future data are consistent with reports of most cases of L. monocytogenes presenting within the first month of life (see Section 2.1), the upper age limit for penicillin-based combination therapy may need to be reconsidered. Although ampicillin/amoxicillin is traditionally preferred over penicillin for the treatment of L. monocytogenes infection, the minimum inhibitory concentrations are similar for both antibiotics, and either would be effective for empiric treatment. Group B streptococcus is uniformly sensitive to penicillins and cephalosporins. However, ampicillin, gentamicin and cefotaxime resistance among E. coli isolates are increasing in England and Wales (61%, 8.5% and 12%, respectively in 2007).
N. meningitidis remains sensitive to the penicillins and cephalosporins. The clinical presentation of meningococcal septicaemia is often sufficiently distinctive to support a differential diagnosis, but other bacterial pathogens may (rarely) present with a similar rash. The choice of empiric antibiotic needs, therefore, to encompass possible infection with S. pneumoniae and Hib.

Clinical question

What antibiotic regimen (type) should be used to treat children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia in the secondary care setting?

What antibiotic regimen (type) should be used to treat children and young people with suspected meningitis in the secondary care setting?

Previous UK guidelines

‘Feverish illness in children’, NICE clinical guideline 47 recommends the administration of a third-generation cephalosporin for children with suspected meningitis or suspected meningococcal septicaemia. It also recommends giving an additional antibiotic active against L. monocytogenes (such as ampicillin or amoxicillin) to infants younger than 3 months.

The SIGN guideline on management of invasive meningococcal disease in children and young people recommends parenteral cefotaxime for the initial treatment of previously well children older than 3 months with a diagnosis of invasive meningococcal disease. It also recommends parenteral cefotaxime plus an antibiotic active against L. monocytogenes for infants younger than 3 months.

Studies considered in this section

A search was conducted for RCTs and systematic reviews of RCTs evaluating antibiotics used for empiric treatment of suspected bacterial meningitis or meningococcal disease in children and young people. Studies involving adults only were excluded. In line with current prescribing practice and antibiotic-resistance patterns of causative organisms in England and Wales, the search focused on the following antibiotics (or members of similar antibiotic classes).

For suspected bacterial meningitis in children older than 3 months:

- Third-generation cephalosporins versus ‘conventional antibiotics’ (penicillin alone, ampicillin alone, penicillin plus chloramphenicol, ampicillin plus chloramphenicol (with or without gentamicin), and chloramphenicol alone)
- Cefotaxime versus ceftiraxone.

For suspected bacterial meningitis in infants younger than 3 months:

- Amoxicillin or ampicillin plus cefotaxime or ceftiraxone versus amoxicillin or ampicillin plus gentamicin
- Amoxicillin or ampicillin plus cefotaxime or ceftiraxone versus benzylpenicillin plus gentamicin
- Amoxicillin or ampicillin plus gentamicin versus benzylpenicillin plus gentamicin
- Amoxicillin or ampicillin plus gentamicin versus cefotaxime or ceftiraxone alone.

Because meningitis is often clinically indistinguishable from septicaemia in neonates, empiric treatment for suspected septicaemia in this age group should also cover suspected meningitis. Therefore a search was conducted for RCTs investigating empiric antibiotics for neonatal septicaemia.

For suspected meningococcal disease in children and young people:

- Third-generation cephalosporins (including ceftriaxone and cefotaxime) versus benzylpenicillin alone.
Overview of available evidence

Empiric antibiotics for suspected bacterial meningitis

Children older than 3 months

One systematic review and meta-analysis\textsuperscript{94} [EL=1+] was found involving children, young people and adults (including some studies in adults only). The GDG conducted a meta-analysis based on a subgroup of studies (excluding studies involving adults only) using data from the systematic review (see Appendix H). One open-label RCT\textsuperscript{95} [EL=1+] was also identified.

Infants younger than 3 months

For suspected bacterial meningitis, no high-quality studies were identified in relation to the empiric antibiotics listed above. Two systematic reviews were identified that evaluated empiric antibiotic treatment of neonatal sepsis: one assessed empiric antibiotics for early-onset neonatal sepsis;\textsuperscript{96} [EL=1+] the assessed other empiric antibiotics for late-onset neonatal sepsis.\textsuperscript{97} [EL=1+]

Empiric antibiotics for suspected meningococcal disease

No RCTs were identified in relation to any of the antibiotics listed above.

Review findings

Empiric antibiotics for suspected bacterial meningitis

Children older than 3 months

- Third-generation cephalosporins versus ‘conventional antibiotics’ (penicillin alone, ampicillin alone, penicillin plus chloramphenicol, ampicillin plus chloramphenicol plus/minus gentamicin, chloramphenicol alone)

One systematic review and meta-analysis (search date 2007),\textsuperscript{94} [EL=1+] comprising 19 RCTs, compared the effects of third-generation cephalosporins versus ‘conventional’ antibiotics for empiric treatment of community acquired bacterial meningitis in 1,496 people of all ages. Of the 19 RCTs identified by the review, 12 studies involved 703 participants younger than 16 years, and four studies included adults as well as children. Three RCTs involving adults only and one RCT that evaluated treatment of confirmed meningococcal disease\textsuperscript{98} were excluded from the GDG’s meta-analysis. Third generation cephalosporins included ceftriaxone, ceftazidime and ceftazidime. ‘Conventional’ antibiotics included regimens with penicillin or ampicillin plus chloramphenicol, ampicillin alone, penicillin alone, chloramphenicol alone, or ampicillin plus chloramphenicol or gentamicin.

The review found no significant difference in mortality between empiric treatment with third generation cephalosporins and conventional antibiotics (15 RCTs of 1378 people −90% children, risk difference (RD) 0%, 95% CI −3% to 3%, p=0.94). A subgroup analysis of specific causative organisms found no significant difference in mortality between the intervention groups. Wide CIs for RDs indicated that these subgroup analyses were underpowered to detect clinically important differences (Hib: 9 RCTs, 301 people: RD for mortality: 1%, 95% CI −5% to 6%, p=0.82; S. pneumoniae: 9 RCTs, 92 people, RD for mortality −2%, 95% CI −21% to 18%, p=0.87; N. meningitidis: 10 RCTs, 390 people, RD for mortality 0%, 95% CI −5% to 5%, p=0.99) (see Appendix H for Forest plots).

Nine studies involving 467 people (both adults and children) included information about severe deafness, which was defined as deafness likely to interfere with usual activity. A meta-analysis of these studies found no significant difference between third-generation cephalosporins and conventional antibiotics in the proportion of people with deafness (assessed at discharge to ∼27 months) [RD −4%, 95% CI −9% to 1%, p=0.16]. A meta-analysis of 11 RCTs of 406 people found that CSF culture positivity was significantly decreased at 10-48 hours after starting treatment with third-generation cephalosporins compared with conventional antibiotics (RD −6%, 95% CI −12 to −1%, p=0.03).

Most of the studies were conducted in the 1980s and the review authors noted that methodological quality and/or reporting was uncertain. They also noted that the documented Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 102 of 244
mortality in studies included in the review was low compared with reported mortality in some
case series. This raises questions about possible over-representation of less severely ill patients in
identified studies, and the generalisability of these results.

- Cefotaxime versus ceftriaxone

One four-armed open-label RCT\textsuperscript{95} [EL=1–] compared the effects of ceftriaxone (n=50) versus
cefotaxime (n=51), ampicillin (n=46) and chloramphenicol (n=53) for the treatment of bacterial
meningitis in 200 children aged 3 months to 15 years. The study found no significant difference in
mortality between ceftriaxone and cefotaxime (2% with ceftriaxone versus 8% with cefotaxime,
no p-value reported). It found that ceftriaxone sterilised the CSF more rapidly than cefotaxime,
ampicillin and chloramphenicol (p<0.01; results for direct comparison of ceftriaxone and
cefotaxime were not reported). Diarrhoea was significantly more common with ceftriaxone than
with cefotaxime (p<0.01).

Infants younger than 3 months

No high-quality studies were found evaluating empiric antibiotics for the treatment of suspected
cystic meningitis in infants younger than 3 months.

Three of the RCTs identified by the 2007 systematic review\textsuperscript{94} compared ceftriaxone or
cefotaxime versus ampicillin plus gentamicin for empiric treatment of bacterial meningitis. These
RCTs included a small number of neonates, but did not report a subgroup analysis of the
neonatal population.

Two systematic reviews were found evaluating empiric antibiotics to treat neonatal sepsis: one
assessed empiric antibiotics for early-onset neonatal sepsis,\textsuperscript{96} [EL=1+] and the other empiric
antibiotics for late-onset neonatal sepsis.\textsuperscript{97} [EL=1+] Between them, the reviews identified two
RCTs, both of which included neonates already in neonatal units for morbidities other than
suspected sepsis. Neither RCT reported separate data for neonates admitted specifically for
suspected bacterial meningitis or septicemia/meningitis. The review authors concluded that
there was inadequate evidence from RCTs in favour of any particular antibiotic regimen to treat
early- or late-onset neonatal sepsis.

**Empiric antibiotics for suspected meningococcal disease in children and young people**

- Third-generation cephalosporins (including ceftriaxone and cefotaxime) versus
  benzylpenicillin alone.

No high-quality studies were found comparing third-generation cephalosporins versus
benzylpenicillin for empiric treatment of suspected meningococcal disease.

**Evidence Statement**

**Secondary care empiric antibiotics for suspected bacterial meningitis**

Children older than 3 months

One systematic review found no significant difference in clinical outcomes between third-
generation cephalosporins and penicillin/chloramphenicol-based antibiotics in children with
suspected bacterial meningitis, including those with suspected meningococcal meningitis. The
review found that third-generation cephalosporins sterilised the CSF more quickly than other
antibiotics.

There is insufficient evidence to reach a conclusion about whether cefotaxime or ceftriaxone is
more effective for empiric treatment of bacterial meningitis in children older than 3 months.

Infants younger than 3 months

No high-quality studies were found comparing antibiotics for the empiric treatment of suspected
bacterial meningitis in infants younger than 3 months.

**Secondary care empiric antibiotics for suspected meningococcal disease**

No high-quality studies were found comparing antibiotics for the empiric treatment of suspected
meningococcal disease in children and young people.
**Cost effectiveness**

The GDG identified the choice of empiric antibiotics as a priority for economic analysis within the guideline. The results of the analysis are summarised here (further details are provided in Appendix J).

Where treatment alternatives are equally effective the most cost effective option is the cheapest. Therefore, in the absence of any high-level evidence of differences in effectiveness, a cost model was developed to compare benzylpenicillin, cefotaxime and ceftriaxone as antibiotic treatment for children and young people with suspected meningococcal disease or suspected bacterial meningitis in the secondary care setting.

The model results showed that for children weighing up to 37kg, ceftriaxone was the cheapest option, with the higher drug cost being more than offset by the lower staff costs associated with once-daily dosing. Benzylpenicillin is the most expensive treatment for children weighing 30kg or less. However, benzylpenicillin becomes relatively more cost-effective as children get heavier, because of its lower drug cost, which unlike staffing is a function of weight. For children weighing 37-51kg the costs of benzylpenicillin and ceftriaxone are very similar. Above 51kg benzylpenicillin becomes the cheapest antibiotic.

**GDG interpretation of the evidence**

**Secondary care empiric antibiotics for suspected bacterial meningitis**

**Children older than 3 months**

In children older than 3 months with suspected bacterial meningitis, there is no evidence of a difference in clinical outcomes between third-generation cephalosporins and penicillin- and chloramphenicol-based regimens. Therefore, the choice of empiric therapy should be based on the current antibiotic resistance patterns of the most common organisms causing bacterial meningitis in this age group in England and Wales, and on cost effectiveness.

In view of the possibility of penicillin resistance among pneumococcus and Hib the GDG considered that a third-generation cephalosporin should be used as empiric therapy in all cases of suspected bacterial meningitis. It was also noted that the third-generation cephalosporins sterilised the CSF more quickly than other antibiotics.

On the basis of the cost effectiveness data, ceftriaxone is recommended as the first-line agent, chiefly driven by the reduction in staff costs associated with a once-daily dose. There is also the possibility of early discharge from hospital while the child is receiving once daily dosing. Ceftriaxone must not be mixed with calcium-containing solutions and must not be given to any patient simultaneously with calcium-containing solutions, even through different infusion lines. Cefotaxime is preferred in this situation.

The possibility of a cephalosporin-resistant pneumococcus causing bacterial meningitis in this age group should also be considered. This would necessitate the empiric use of vancomycin (with or without another agent, e.g. rifampicin) in addition to a third-generation cephalosporin. Currently, there is a low incidence of cefotaxime/ceftriaxone resistance in the UK (see Section 6.1) and the number of cephalosporin-resistant pneumococcal strains is likely to decline further as a result of the impact of the pneumococcal conjugate vaccine.

Resistance of pneumococcus to penicillin is generally higher in countries other than the UK (see http://www.rivm.nl/earss/database/), and also in children with recent, prolonged or multiple exposure to oral or parenteral antibiotics (within the past 3 months). As a significant proportion of pneumococci with reduced penicillin susceptibility will also be resistant to other antibiotics, the possibility of cephalosporin resistance should be considered in children and young people with a history of recent travel outside the UK or of recent antibiotic exposure.

**Infants younger than 3 months**

There is no high-quality evidence to support a choice of antibiotics for the empiric treatment of suspected bacterial meningitis in infants younger than 3 months. Therefore, empiric treatment should be based on the antibiotic resistance patterns of the most common organisms causing bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 104 of 244
meningitis in this age group ([Group B streptococcus, Gram-negative bacteria, L. monocytogenes], the organisms causing meningitis in other age groups in England and Wales, and on cost effectiveness.

The GDG considered that the combination of a third-generation cephalosporin and ampicillin/amoxicillin provided adequate cover for the usual organisms causing bacterial meningitis in infants younger than 3 months. However, in some settings known to have high rates of community-acquired extended-spectrum beta lactamase-producing Gram-negative organisms (ESBLs), replacement of the cephalosporin with a carbapenem (meropenem) might be considered. The amoxicillin is included to cover L. monocytogenes meningitis, which although rare is associated with high mortality and morbidity. Current epidemiological data indicate that cover for L. monocytogenes should be considered up to the age of 2–3 months, although nearly all pregnancy-associated cases present in the first month of life (see Section 2.1).

The GDG suggested the initial empiric use of cefotaxime in this age group, rather than ceftriaxone. There are two, largely theoretical, concerns with the use of ceftriaxone. First, in vivo and in vitro studies have shown that ceftriaxone can displace bilirubin from serum albumin, which may exacerbate hyperbilirubinaemia in infants who are jaundiced, hypoalbuminaemic, acidicotic or born prematurely (see the summary of product characteristics). Second, several neonatal deaths have been associated with calcium–ceftriaxone precipitates; in some cases calcium and ceftriaxone were administered at different times.99 As infants with meningitis or septicaemia may receive calcium as part of their supportive care, it is prudent to avoid the empiric use of ceftriaxone. Both of these concerns are most relevant to the youngest and sickest infants with suspected bacterial meningitis. If the healthcare professional is confident that these contraindications do not apply, then empiric use of ceftriaxone rather than cefotaxime may be appropriate for selected infants in this age group. Similarly, as soon as clinical recovery is evident, a switch from empiric cefotaxime to empiric ceftriaxone may be appropriate on the basis of convenience and cost.

The possibility of a cephalosporin-resistant pneumococcus causing bacterial meningitis in this age group should also be considered. This would necessitate the empiric use of vancomycin (with or without another agent, e.g. rifampicin) in addition to a third-generation cephalosporin. As discussed above, cephalosporin resistance should be considered in children with a history of recent travel outside the UK, or recent, prolonged or multiple exposure to antibiotics (e.g. within the past 3 months).

A note of caution should be added. In addition to bacterial causes of meningitis, herpes simplex virus is a rare but important cause of meningoencephalitis, and acyclovir therapy must be started promptly for a favourable outcome. This pathogen should be considered in all cases of meningitis where the initial Gram stain is negative for bacteria.

Secondary care empiric antibiotics for suspected meningococcal disease

There was no high-level evidence to support a choice of antibiotics for the treatment of suspected meningococcal disease in children and young people. Therefore, empiric treatment should be based on the current antibiotic resistance patterns of N. meningitidis in England and Wales, the possibility of an alternative aetiological agent (with different antibiotic resistance patterns) and on cost.

Although, in the UK, N. meningitidis is usually sensitive to a range of antibiotics, in view of the possibility of an alternative more resistant pathogen, the GDG considered that a third generation cephalosporin should be used as empiric therapy in suspected cases. On the basis of the cost effectiveness data, ceftriaxone is recommended as the first line agent chiefly driven by the reduction in staff costs associated with a once daily dose. There is also the possibility of early discharge from hospital with once daily dosing.

It is noted, however, that ceftriaxone should not be mixed with calcium-containing solutions and must not be given to any patient simultaneously with calcium-containing solutions, even through different infusion lines.99 Cefotaxime is preferred in this situation.
Recommendations

Where ceftriaxone is the recommended treatment, do not use it at the same time as administering calcium-containing infusions. Instead, use cefotaxime (50 mg/kg three times daily).\(^\text{39}\)

In children younger than 3 months where cefotaxime (with or without ampicillin or amoxicillin) is the recommended treatment, use ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\(^\text{40}\) as an alternative but avoid using it in children who are jaundiced, hypoalbuminaemic, acidic or born prematurely as it may exacerbate hyperbilirubinaemia. Do not use ceftriaxone at the same time as administering calcium-containing infusions.

Treat suspected bacterial meningitis in children and young people aged 3 months or older with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\(^\text{41}\) without delay.

Treat suspected bacterial meningitis in children younger than 3 months with intravenous cefotaxime (50 mg/kg three times daily)\(^\text{42}\) plus amoxicillin (50–100 mg/kg daily)\(^\text{43}\) or ampicillin (125 mg four times daily)\(^\text{44}\) without delay.

Treat suspected bacterial meningitis in children and young people who have recently travelled outside the UK or have had prolonged or multiple exposure to antibiotics (within the past 3 months) with vancomycin in addition to cefotaxime (50mg/kg three times daily)\(^\text{45}\) or ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\(^\text{46}\) (plus amoxicillin [50–100 mg/kg daily]\(^\text{47}\) or ampicillin [125 mg four times daily] in children younger than 3 months).

Treat suspected meningococcal disease in children and young people with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\(^\text{48}\) without delay.

If tubercular meningitis is part of the differential diagnosis use antibiotic treatment appropriate for tuberculosis in line with ‘Tuberculosis’ (NICE clinical guideline 33).

Research recommendations

In children and young people what are the risk factors for meningitis and septicaemia caused by cephalosporin-resistant strains of pneumococcus?\(^\text{9}\)

Why this is important

Although serious invasive disease due to cephalosporin-resistant pneumococci is rare in the UK, the recommended regimen for empiric antibiotic treatment of suspected meningitis and septicaemia in children and young people will not treat cephalosporin-resistant pneumococci adequately. A delay in starting suitable alternative treatment (vancomycin with or without rifampicin) may result in worse outcomes. The ability to identify at presentation those children and young people who are likely to be infected with cephalosporin-resistant strains of pneumococcus.

---

\(^{39}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for cefotaxime. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{40}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{41}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{42}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for cefotaxime. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{43}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for amoxicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{44}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ampicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{45}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for cefotaxime. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{46}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{47}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for amoxicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{48}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.
would ensure that optimal antibiotic treatment could be started as soon as possible. Additionally, the ability to confidently exclude the possibility of cephalosporin-resistant pneumococci would mean that potentially toxic empiric antibiotic treatment could be avoided. Resistance of pneumococcus to penicillin is generally higher in: countries other than the UK; children who have been exposed to oral or parenteral antibiotics recently (e.g. in the previous 3 months), over a prolonged period of time, or on multiple occasions; and children with underlying health problems. The current evidence base is insufficient to determine accurately the risks of cephalosporin-resistant pneumococcal infection according to the duration, number, or type of antibiotic treatment, or the time period over which previous antibiotic exposure or foreign travel is relevant. Large-scale epidemiological studies (e.g. cohort studies or case-control studies) are needed to evaluate these risks.

6.2 Antibiotics for confirmed disease

Introduction

In children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia, empiric antibiotic treatment in needed initially (see Section 6.1). Once blood culture or CSF samples have been taken, it is usually possible to review the choice of antibiotics after about 48 hours as the results of microbiological culture and sensitivities become available. At this time antibiotics may be changed to those that are most effective against the particular organism identified as causing the illness. It may also be necessary to change to an alternative antibiotic or add in another antibiotic if the antimicrobial sensitivities suggest that the causative organism is fully or partially resistant to the initial antibiotic. The identification of a causative organism may also allow the healthcare professional to decide on the duration of antibiotic treatment (some organisms require longer durations of treatment than others).

For this section, the GDG examined the evidence for deciding which antibiotics are most effective against the meningococcus and the other main causative organisms of bacterial meningitis in children and young people. For each organism, the GDG also attempted to determine the most appropriate duration of treatment to ensure that children and young people received adequate treatment. For pragmatic reasons, the GDG also attempted to make recommendations on the duration of treatment in children and young people with suspected but unconfirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal disease.

Clinical questions

What antibiotic regimen should be used to treat confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia?

Type of antibiotic

Studies considered for this section

A search was conducted for RCTs and systematic reviews of RCTs evaluating currently used antibiotics for meningococcal disease and meningitis caused by S. pneumoniae or Hib in children and young people. For infants younger than 3 months, a search was conducted for RCTs evaluating antibiotics for meningitis caused by Group B streptococcus or L monocytogenes. RCTs involving adults only were excluded from the review. Because of current prescribing practices and antibiotic resistance patterns of causative organisms in England and Wales, the search focused on the following antibiotics.

For meningococcal disease:
- ceftriaxone or cefotaxime
- benzylpenicillin.

For meningitis caused by S. pneumoniae:
- ceftriaxone or cefotaxime

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 107 of 244
DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION

- ceftriaxone plus rifampicin
- ceftriaxone plus vancomycin
- chloramphenicol
- fluoroquinolones
- benzylpenicillin
- meropenem.

For meningitis caused by Hib:
- ceftriaxone or cefotaxime

For meningitis caused by Group B streptococcus in infants younger than 3 months:
- ampicillin or amoxicillin with or without an aminoglycoside
- cefotaxime or ceftriaxone
- benzylpenicillin with or without an aminoglycoside.

For meningitis caused by L. monocytogenes in infants younger than 3 months:
- ampicillin or amoxicillin with or without an aminoglycoside
- benzylpenicillin with or without an aminoglycoside.

Overview of available evidence
One RCT98 [EL=1–] was found comparing ceftriaxone and penicillin G for treatment of meningococcal disease. No RCTs were found evaluating antibiotics for treatment of bacterial meningitis caused by organisms other than the meningococcus.

Review findings
Antibiotics for meningococcal disease
No high-quality studies were found that evaluated the antibiotics listed above for the specific treatment of meningococcal disease in children and young people. Only one open-label RCT was identified.98 [EL=1–] The RCT was conducted in secondary care in Turkey, and involved 42 children aged 1 month to 12 years with meningitis or meningococcaemia. Children were randomised to receive either intravenous ceftriaxone (once daily for 4 days) or intravenous penicillin G (six times daily for 5 days). The RCT found no significant difference in mortality between the groups (difference noted as non-significant, no p value reported). Necrotic skin lesions were significantly more frequent with penicillin G than with ceftriaxone (p<0.05). Of the 20 children given ceftriaxone, 19 had a positive blood culture for N. meningitidis, compared with 13 of 22 given penicillin G, which indicates possible bias in favour of penicillin G.

Antibiotics for meningitis caused by Streptococcus pneumoniae and meningitis caused by Haemophilus influenzae type b
No RCTs were found that evaluated the above antibiotics for the specific treatment of meningitis caused by S. pneumoniae or Hib in children and young people. All identified studies either investigated empiric treatment of bacterial meningitis or compared antibiotics for confirmed bacterial meningitis without performing a pre-specified organism-specific subgroup analysis.

Antibiotics for meningitis caused by Group B streptococcus or Listeria monocytogenes in infants younger than 3 months
No RCTs were found that evaluated the antibiotics listed above for the specific treatment of meningitis caused by Group B streptococcus or L. monocytogenes in infants younger than 3 months. All identified studies investigated empiric treatment of bacterial meningitis or compared antibiotics for confirmed bacterial meningitis without performing a pre-specified organism-specific subgroup analysis.

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 108 of 244
Duration of antibiotic therapy

Previous UK guidelines

The SIGN guideline on management of invasive meningococcal disease in children and young people\textsuperscript{26} recommends that the duration of antibiotic therapy for children with invasive meningococcal disease should be 7 days.

Studies considered in this section

A search was conducted for RCTs evaluating the optimal duration of antibiotic therapy for meningococcal disease, and meningitis caused by Hib or \textit{S. pneumoniae} in children and young people. For infants younger than 3 months, a search was conducted for RCTs evaluating the optimal duration of antibiotic therapy for meningitis caused by Group B streptococcus, \textit{L. monocytogenes}, and Gram-negative bacilli. RCTs involving adults only were excluded from the review. Antibiotics considered for review were as follows.

For meningococcal disease:
- ceftriaxone or cefotaxime
- benzylpenicillin.

For meningitis caused by \textit{S. pneumoniae}:
- ceftriaxone or cefotaxime
- ceftriaxone plus rifampicin
- ceftriaxone plus vancomycin
- chloramphenicol
- fluoroquinolones
- benzylpenicillin
- meropenem.

For meningitis caused by Hib:
- ceftriaxone or cefotaxime.

For meningitis caused by Group B streptococcus in infants younger than 3 months:
- ampicillin or amoxicillin with or without an aminoglycoside
- cefotaxime or ceftriaxone
- benzylpenicillin with or without an aminoglycoside.

For meningitis caused by \textit{L. monocytogenes} in infants younger than 3 months:
- ampicillin or amoxicillin with or without an aminoglycoside
- benzylpenicillin with or without an aminoglycoside.

For meningitis caused by Gram-negative bacilli in infants younger than 3 months:
- cefotaxime or ceftriaxone with or without an aminoglycoside
- meropenem.

Because of a lack of evidence on the duration of treatment with organism-specific antibiotics, RCTs comparing different durations of antibiotic regimens for treatment of bacterial meningitis without organism-specific analysis were included in the review.

Overview of available evidence

No RCTs were found evaluating the optimal duration of currently used antibiotics for meningococcal disease or bacterial meningitis caused by specific organisms. Two studies were
included comparing different durations of ceftriaxone treatment for bacterial meningitis without organism-specific analysis.

**Review findings**

**Duration of antibiotic treatment for meningococcal disease**

No RCTs were found evaluating the optimal duration of currently used antibiotics for meningococcal disease in children and young people.

**Duration of antibiotic treatment for bacterial meningitis**

No RCTs were found evaluating the optimal duration of currently used antibiotics for children and young people with meningitis caused by specific organisms. Two studies, one RCT\textsuperscript{101} [EL=1+] and one quasi-randomised RCT\textsuperscript{102} [EL=1–] compared different durations of ceftriaxone therapy for the treatment of bacterial meningitis caused by various organisms. These studies did not perform an organism-specific analysis for any outcome.

One small unblinded RCT conducted in India\textsuperscript{101} [EL=1+] compared a 7-day course of twice-daily ceftriaxone versus a 10-day course of ceftriaxone. The RCT involved 73 children aged 3 months to 12 years with bacterial meningitis, of whom 38% had a confirmed causative organism, either *H. influenzae*, *S. pneumoniae* or *N. meningitidis*. It found no significant difference between a 7-day course and a 10-day course of ceftriaxone in the clinical response to therapy, or in the risk of neurological sequelae at 1 month (p values reported as not significant). The RCT found that children given 7-days' ceftriaxone had a shorter hospital stay compared with those given 10-days' ceftriaxone (p<0.05).

One quasi-randomised RCT\textsuperscript{102} [EL=1–] compared a 4-day course of ceftriaxone with a 7-day course of ceftriaxone in 102 children aged 3 months or older with bacterial meningitis. All children included in the trial had made a rapid initial recovery, characterised by clinical improvement during the first 4 days of treatment and a negative CSF culture 24-36 hours after initiation of treatment. In total, 26 children had *H. influenzae* meningitis, 34 children had meningococcal meningitis, and 13 children had pneumococcal meningitis. The RCT found no significant difference between the groups in the proportion of children with fever 5-7 days after beginning antibiotics (p>0.05), or in the rate of neurological sequelae (p=0.39) or hearing loss at 1-3 months (p=0.49).

**Evidence statement**

**Type of antibiotic**

**Antibiotics for meningococcal disease**

No high-quality studies were found comparing antibiotics currently used to treat meningococcal disease in children and young people.

**Antibiotics for Streptococcus pneumoniae meningitis and Haemophilus influenzae type b meningitis**

No RCTs were found comparing antibiotics currently used to treat meningitis caused by *S. pneumoniae* or Hib meningitis in children and young people.

**Antibiotics for meningitis caused by Group B streptococcus or Listeria monocytogenes in infants younger than 3 months**

No RCTs were found comparing antibiotics currently used to treat meningitis caused by Group B streptococcus or *L. monocytogenes* in infants younger than 3 months.

**Duration of antibiotic therapy**

**Duration of antibiotic treatment for meningococcal disease**

No RCTs were found evaluating the optimal duration of antibiotic regimens currently used to treat children and young people with meningococcal disease.

**Duration of antibiotic treatment for bacterial meningitis**

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 110 of 244
No RCTs were found evaluating the optimal duration of antibiotics to treat children and young people with meningitis caused by specific organisms.

Two small studies found no significant difference in outcomes when children with bacterial meningitis were given a shorter course of ceftriaxone compared with a longer course of ceftriaxone. One RCT found that children given a 7-day course of ceftriaxone had a shorter hospital stay than those given a 10-day course of ceftriaxone. The studies were probably underpowered to detect clinically important differences between the groups.

No RCTs were found that evaluated the optimal duration of antibiotic treatment for bacterial meningitis in infants younger than 3 months.

Cost effectiveness

The GDG identified the choice of antibiotics for confirmed meningococcal disease or confirmed bacterial meningitis as a priority for economic analysis.

In the absence of any high-level evidence of differences in effectiveness, a cost model was used to compare the costs of benzylpenicillin, cefotaxime and ceftriaxone (see Appendix J). This suggested that ceftriaxone is the cheapest option for children weighing 37kg or less. Benzylpenicillin is the most expensive antibiotic for children weighing 30kg or less. For children weighing 37-51kg the costs of benzylpenicillin and ceftriaxone are similar. Above 51kg benzylpenicillin becomes the cheapest antibiotic.

If ceftriaxone facilitates early hospital discharge, as a result of once-daily dosing, then the relative cost effectiveness of ceftriaxone is further enhanced as a result of savings associated with the costs of shortening inpatient care.

While there is no good quality evidence to support different antibiotics for confirmed meningococcal disease or confirmed bacterial meningitis on clinical grounds, ceftriaxone is to be preferred on cost grounds. Its requirement for only a single dose means that for a majority of children and young people covered in this guideline the higher costs of the drug are more than offset by reduced staffing costs. If ceftriaxone facilitates early hospital discharge its cost effectiveness relative to alternatives is further enhanced.

GDG interpretation

Choice of antibiotics in confirmed meningococcal disease or bacterial meningitis caused by a specific organism

No high-quality studies were found comparing antibiotics currently used to treat meningococcal disease or bacterial meningitis in children and young people. From the reviews of empiric treatment of meningococcal disease and bacterial meningitis it is evident that ceftriaxone provides the most cost effective treatment for most children and young people. The GDG therefore considered it appropriate to continue (or switch to) ceftriaxone in confirmed disease. This decision should be made after reviewing the results of antibiotic sensitivities and, if the organism is resistant to third-generation cephalosporins, treatment should be changed to an antibiotic to which the organism is sensitive. In children with confirmed L. monocytogenes meningitis, ampicillin or amoxicillin should be continued and cefotaxime/ceftriaxone should be replaced with gentamicin.

As noted above, penicillin may become the cheapest antibiotic if the child’s weight is above 51kg. However, the GDG decided not to recommend its use in this situation on the grounds that the use of once-daily ceftriaxone is convenient for nursing staff and allows the completion of courses of antibiotics as an outpatient (which would produce further cost savings). The GDG also noted that weights above 51kg are uncommon in paediatric practice and the guideline would be unnecessarily complicated if penicillin was recommended for this small group of children and young people.

Duration of antibiotic treatment for meningococcal disease

No high-quality studies were found evaluating the optimal duration of antibiotic regimens currently used to treat children and young people with meningococcal disease. The GDG is
aware that 7 days is the usual duration of treatment for meningococcal disease in the UK and that 7 days’ antibiotics is also recommended for meningococcal disease in standard UK and US texts. [REFS: RCPCH manual of childhood infections; Long] The GDG could see no reason to change present treatment regimens and recommended that meningococcal disease should be treated with antibiotics for 7 days.

**Duration of antibiotic treatment for bacterial meningitis**

The GDG is aware that, in the UK, meningococcal meningitis is usually treated for 7 days; Hib meningitis is usually treated for 10 days; and pneumococcal meningitis is usually treated for 10-14 days. In infants under the age of 3 months, Group B streptococcal meningitis is usually treated for 14–21 days and Gram-negative and *L. monocytogenes* meningitis are usually treated for 21 days. These durations of treatment are also recommended in standard UK and US texts. [REFS: RCPCH manual of childhood infections; Long] The GDG noted that two studies have suggested that shorter than standard durations of treatment may result in adequate outcome (the studies were in children older than 3 months). However, there have been no large RCTs of shorter treatment and the GDG considered that the existing studies were underpowered to detect differences in mortality, morbidity or the risk of relapse. The clinical experience of the GDG is that standard durations of treatment are effective with little risk of relapse. The GDG therefore agreed that the duration of treatment for bacterial meningitis should be the same as that most commonly used in the UK at present.

**Choice and duration of antibiotics for unconfirmed meningococcal disease and unconfirmed bacterial meningitis**

The GDG is aware that many cases of meningococcal disease and bacterial meningitis are not confirmed by microbiological culture. In these cases the decision to continue treatment for suspected disease will be made on clinical grounds and, in the case of meningitis, on the results of CSF microscopy and chemistry (if a lumbar puncture was performed). The GDG considered that the choice and duration of antibiotics for unconfirmed, but clinically suspected, meningococcal disease should be the same as for confirmed disease. For unconfirmed, but clinically suspected, bacterial meningitis empiric treatment should be continued as appropriate given the age of the child. The duration of treatment should therefore be at least 10 days for children older than 3 months and 14 days for infants younger than 3 months. These minimum periods reflect the recommended treatment durations for the most likely pathogens in these respective age groups. In children older than 3 months the leading pathogens are *S. pneumoniae* and *N. meningitidis* for which 10-14 days and 7 days respectively, are considered appropriate; a course of 10 days is therefore a reasonable course of therapy to ensure adequate treatment. For infants younger than 3 months Group B streptococcus is the leading pathogen and the recommended course for unconfirmed meningitis is therefore consistent with the minimum course for confirmed Group B streptococcus meningitis.

---

**Recommendations**

**Antibiotics for confirmed bacterial meningitis**

**Children and young people aged 3 months or older**

In children and young people aged 3 months or older with confirmed bacterial meningitis caused by *H influenzae* type b treat with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\(^{47}\) for 10 days in total unless directed otherwise by the results of antibiotic sensitivities.

In children and young people aged 3 months or older with confirmed bacterial meningitis caused by *S pneumoniae* treat with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily)\(^{47}\) for 10 days in total unless directed otherwise by the results of antibiotic sensitivities.

\(^{47}\)The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.
once daily\(^{50}\) for 14 days in total unless directed otherwise by the results of antibiotic sensitivities.

**Children younger than 3 months**

In children younger than 3 months with confirmed bacterial meningitis caused by Group B streptococcus treat with intravenous cefotaxime (50 mg/kg three times daily\(^{51}\)) for at least 14 days. If the clinical course is complicated\(^{52}\) consider extending the duration of treatment and consulting an expert in paediatric infectious diseases.

In children younger than 3 months with confirmed bacterial meningitis caused by *L. monocytogenes* treat with intravenous amoxicillin (50–100 mg/kg daily\(^{53}\)) or ampicillin (125 mg four times daily\(^{54}\) for 21 days plus gentamicin for at least the first 7 days.

In children younger than 3 months with confirmed bacterial meningitis caused by Gram-negative bacilli treat with intravenous cefotaxime (50 mg/kg three times daily\(^{55}\)) for at least 21 days unless directed otherwise by the results of antibiotic sensitivities. If the course is complicated\(^{56}\) consider extending the duration of treatment and consulting an expert in paediatric infectious diseases.

**Antibiotics for unconfirmed bacterial meningitis**

**Children and young people aged 3 months or older**

In children and young people aged 3 months or older with unconfirmed, uncomplicated but clinically suspected bacterial meningitis treat with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily\(^{57}\)) for at least 10 days depending on symptoms and signs and course of the illness.

**Children younger than 3 months**

In children younger than 3 months with unconfirmed but clinically suspected bacterial meningitis treat with cefotaxime (50 mg/kg three times daily)\(^{58}\) plus ampicillin (125 mg four times daily\(^{59}\)) or amoxicillin (50–100 mg/kg daily\(^{60}\)) for at least 14 days. If the clinical course is complicated\(^{61}\) consider extending the duration of treatment and consulting an expert in paediatric infectious diseases.

**Antibiotics for confirmed meningococcal disease**

In children and young people with confirmed meningococcal disease, treat with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily\(^{62}\)) for 7 days in total unless directed otherwise by the results of antibiotic sensitivities.

---

\(^{50}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{51}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for cefotaxime. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{52}\) For example, if there is poor response to antibiotic therapy, effusion or abscess, or concomitant intraventricular haemorrhage in a premature baby.

\(^{53}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for amoxicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{54}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ampicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{55}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for cefotaxime. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{56}\) For example, if there is poor response to antibiotic therapy, effusion or abscess, or concomitant intraventricular haemorrhage in a premature baby.

\(^{57}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{58}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for cefotaxime. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{59}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ampicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{60}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for amoxicillin. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.

\(^{61}\) For example, if there is poor response to antibiotic therapy, effusion or abscess, or concomitant intraventricular haemorrhage in a premature baby.

\(^{62}\) The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.
Antibiotics for unconfirmed meningococcal disease

In children and young people with unconfirmed but clinically suspected meningococcal disease treat with intravenous ceftriaxone (80 mg/kg once daily) for 7 days in total.

6.3 Fluids for bacterial meningitis

Introduction

Maintaining optimal fluid and electrolyte balance is an essential part of managing bacterial meningitis in children and young people. Raised intracranial pressure is a well recognised and life-threatening disorder associated with bacterial meningitis because the normal homeostatic responses to fluid balance status are disrupted. Fluid management in children with meningitis should therefore be based on the need for the brain to be adequately perfused while monitoring for possible development of raised intracranial pressure.

Fluid restriction has traditionally been advocated for children with bacterial meningitis. This practice is based on the rationale that intracranial infection is accompanied by the syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (ADH) secretion (SIADH), in which large amounts of circulating ADH lead to increased water retention by the kidney, decreased plasma osmolality and hyponatraemia. In bacterial meningitis, these fluid and electrolyte disturbances have been linked to cerebral oedema, an increased risk of seizures and adverse neurodevelopmental outcomes. The National Patient Safety Agency (NPSA) has highlighted that some acutely ill children with increased ADH secretion may benefit from maintenance fluid being restricted (NPSA/2007/22; available at http://www.npsa.nhs.uk/nrls/alerts-and-directives/alerts/intravenous-infusions/).

It is now increasingly recognised that children with bacterial meningitis may be underhydrated. In such children, increased ADH secretion may be an appropriate, compensatory response to hypovolaemia, and hyponatraemia and low plasma osmolality may resolve only when sufficient sodium and fluid are given. It is therefore not clear if fluid restriction is the optimal choice for children with meningitis, and the issue is addressed in this section.

Clinical question

Should fluid volume be restricted in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis?

Studies considered in this section

RCTs and systematic reviews of RCTs evaluating different fluid volumes used to treat children and young people with bacterial meningitis were considered for this section. Studies involving adults were excluded.

Overview of available evidence

One systematic review [EL=1+] was found, which identified three RCTs. One prospective observational study [EL=2+] was also identified.

Review findings

The systematic review [EL=1+] evaluated different volumes of fluid for the treatment of bacterial meningitis (search date 2007). The review identified three RCTs that compared the effects of giving full-volume maintenance fluids versus restricted fluid volumes for the initial management of children with acute bacterial meningitis. Two of the three RCTs [109;110] reported clinical outcomes and are included here. Maintenance fluid was calculated as 100–110 ml/kg per day for the first 10 kg body weight of the child, 50 ml/kg for the second 10 kg, and 20–25 ml/kg for weight over 20 kg. Initial maintenance fluid was given intravenously as crystalloid.

63 The dosage given in the recommendation is consistent with the SPCs for ceftriaxone. The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients.
solutions for all studies. Restricted fluid volumes consisted of 60–65% of the initial maintenance fluids and were given as milk feeds in one RCT and intravenously as crystalloid solution in the other RCT. Meta-analysis of two RCTs involving 407 children aged between 1 month and 12 years found no significant difference in mortality between the maintenance and restricted fluid groups (15% with maintenance fluids versus 18% with restricted fluids: RR 0.83, 95% CI 0.54 to 1.30, p=0.4). In one RCT identified by the review, significantly fewer children given maintenance fluids developed spasticity and seizures in the short term compared with children given restricted fluids (spasticity at 14 days, 357 children, RR 0.53, 95% CI 0.29 to 0.98, p=0.04; seizures at 72hrs, 357 children, RR 0.62, 95% CI 0.44 to 0.88, p=0.007). The risk of long-term neurological sequelae assessed at three-months (including hemiparesis or hemiplegia, and visual and hearing impairment) was significantly lower in the maintenance fluid group compared with the restricted fluid group (RR 0.44, 95% CI 0.21 to 0.93, p=0.03). The largest study identified by the review, which contributed most of the data for mortality and morbidity, was conducted in a setting where children were malnourished and presented late for treatment with high mortality rates. The authors of the review noted that inadequate treatment of dehydration could have increased the risk of neurological sequelae in the group of children receiving restricted fluid in this study.

A prospective observational study conducted in the UK in 2009 provided audit data for current practice in the management of severe sepsis in children in the UK against a 2002 guideline. One hundred and thirty-six children with sepsis and an average age of 9.8 to 13.1 months were included in the study. Comparisons were made between children in whom shock reversal occurred and children in whom it did not. Total fluid intake was significantly different between the groups (60 ml/kg versus 80 ml/kg, p=0.004). Children in whom shock was reversed had better outcomes than those in whom shock was not reversed (survival rate 94% versus 75%, p=0.03). Presence of shock after inter-hospital transfer was the only independent predictor of death after admission to the paediatric intensive care unit (PICU; OR for death 3.8, 95% CI 1.4 to 10.2, p=0.008).

No high-quality studies were found assessing initial fluid therapy in neonates with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis.

**Evidence statement**

There is insufficient evidence to determine the optimal volume of fluids for the initial treatment of children with bacterial meningitis in resource-rich settings. Evidence from one RCT indicates that, in settings where children present late and where mortality is high, restricting fluids may increase the risk of neurological sequelae. Evidence from one observational study indicates that lower levels of fluid intake may be associated with a lower mortality rate, but no causal relationship was established. Evidence from a recent audit suggest that total fluid intake was significantly lower in children in whom reversal of shock occurred, but the study did not establish causality.

**GDG interpretation of the evidence**

In view of the lack of evidence for an optimal fluid volume for management of children with bacterial meningitis and indications that restricted fluids may be harmful the GDG considered that maintenance fluids should be given to children and young people with bacterial meningitis to maintain adequate hydration.

The GDG also noted that some children with bacterial meningitis may be dehydrated and may need rehydration in addition to maintenance fluids. Some children with bacterial meningitis may have raised intracranial pressure at presentation and be at risk of cerebral oedema, complicating fluid management, but they should still receive adequate fluid volumes to maintain cerebral perfusion. Children with signs of raised intracranial pressure should preferably be managed in consultation with a paediatric intensivist.

A few children with bacterial meningitis will have accompanying shock and may need fluid resuscitation. The clinician should administer fluids judiciously in these children as the risk of hypovolaemia must be weighed against the possible development of cerebral oedema.
The GDG is aware of the risk of hyponatraemia in CNS infections and its recommendations are consistent with NPSA guidance on this issue (NPSA/2007/22; available at http://www.npsa.nhs.uk/nrls/alerts-and-directives/alerts/intravenous-infusions/) that isotonic fluids (0.9% saline or 0.9% saline with 5% glucose) should be used when intravenous fluid therapy is required. The GDG’s view was that, in children and young people with bacterial meningitis, isotonic fluids (for example, sodium chloride 0.9% with glucose 5% or dextrose 5%) should be used for maintenance, whereas in neonates glucose 5% would increase the risk of hypoglycaemia, and so glucose 10% (with added sodium based on daily requirements according to the child’s weight, as determined by local protocols) would be more appropriate in this age group. The NPSA guidance also emphasises that some acutely ill children with increased ADH secretion may benefit from maintenance fluid being restricted, and this is reflected in the GDG’s recommendations regarding fluid restriction.

Close monitoring of hydration and electrolyte balance is essential.

The GDG’s view was that if there were signs of raised intracranial pressure or evidence of shock emergency management for these conditions should be initiated and ongoing fluid management should be discussed with a paediatric intensivist.

**Recommendations**

Assess children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis for:

- signs of shock
- raised intracranial pressure
- signs of dehydration.

Refer to ‘Diarrhoea and vomiting in children’ (NICE clinical guideline 84) for assessment of shock and dehydration.

Correct any dehydration in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis using enteral fluids or feeds, or intravenously with isotonic fluids (for example, sodium chloride 0.9% or sodium chloride 0.9% with glucose 5% or dextrose 5%).

Do not restrict fluids in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis unless there are signs of raised intracranial pressure or evidence of increased antidiuretic hormone secretion.

Give full-volume maintenance fluids to children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis to avoid hypoglycaemia and maintain electrolyte balance.

Use enteral feeds as maintenance fluid in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis who can tolerate enteral feeds.

If intravenous maintenance fluid is required, use isotonic fluids (for example, sodium chloride 0.9% with glucose 5% or dextrose 5%). In neonates use glucose 10% and added sodium for maintenance.

Monitor fluid administration and urine output in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis to ensure adequate hydration and avoid overhydration.

Monitor electrolytes and blood glucose regularly (at least daily during the acute phase) in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis.

If there are signs of raised intracranial pressure or evidence of shock in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis, initiate emergency management for these conditions and discuss ongoing fluid management with a paediatric intensivist.
6.4 Starting resuscitation fluids and vasoactive agents for meningococcal disease

Introduction

In children with meningococcal disease, early recognition of circulatory failure and aggressive fluid resuscitation to restore intravascular volume is crucial to prevent end-organ damage and death. In addition, inotropic support is frequently necessary to maintain cardiac output and organ perfusion. Studies involving adults[48101] and a recent study involving children[111] have shown that resuscitation in septic shock is most effective when treatments are directed at achieving specific, time-sensitive haemodynamic goals such as optimising heart rate, blood pressure and capillary perfusion within 60 minutes after initiating therapy. Optimising oxygen delivery as part of this care package by maintaining the central venous oxygen saturation at or above 70% has also been associated with improved outcomes in people with septic shock.[111][48101] As the early recognition of shock and the rational use of vasoactive agents to correct cardiac and vascular dysfunction are integral to the success of resuscitation protocols, the GDG reviewed the evidence for indications for commencing intravenous fluid resuscitation and vasoactive agents in children and young people with meningococcal disease.

Clinical questions

What are the indications for administering intravenous fluids to resuscitate children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia?

What are the clinical indications for giving inotropes in children and young people with suspected/confirmed meningococcal septicaemia?

Previous UK guidelines

Fluids: The Feverish Illness in Children guideline recommends that children with fever and shock should be given an immediate intravenous fluid bolus of 20ml/kg, usually 0.9% sodium chloride. Children should be actively monitored and given further fluid boluses as necessary.[23]

The SIGN Guideline on Management of Invasive Meningococcal disease in Children and Young People recommends that a rapid intravenous infusion of isotonic crystalloid or colloid solution should be given to children with meningococcal sepsis with signs of shock. (SIGN Guideline No 102).[26]

Inotropes: The Feverish Illness in Children guideline recommends that children admitted to hospital with meningococcal disease should be under paediatric care, supervised by a consultant and have their need for inotropes assessed.[23]

The SIGN guideline recommends that children with fluid resistant shock should be treated early with inotropes. Intubation and mechanical ventilation should be considered for these children. [SIGN Guideline No 102].[26]

Studies considered for this section

Fluids:

Studies of all designs evaluating intravenous fluid administration in children with suspected or confirmed meningococcal septicaemia were considered for this section. Because of a lack of evidence, studies involving children and young people with sepsis, septic shock or shock associated with infection were reviewed for extrapolation.

Inotropes:

Studies of all designs evaluating administration of the following inotropes in children with suspected or confirmed meningococcal septicaemia were considered for this section: dopamine, dobutamine, adrenaline, noradrenaline and vasopressin. Because of a lack of evidence, studies involving children and young people with sepsis, septic shock or shock associated with infection were reviewed for extrapolation.
Overview of available evidence

No studies were found that directly addressed the clinical indications for fluid resuscitation or for commencing inotropes in children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal septicaemia or in children with sepsis or septic shock.

One case-control study of children with meningococcal disease [EL=2++] and one retrospective study of children with septic shock [EL=2–] were included to provide data for extrapolation to inform the GDG discussion.

Review findings

One case–control study aimed to determine whether suboptimal management in hospital contributed to poor outcome in children admitted with meningococcal disease (England, Wales and Northern Ireland, 1997–1999) [EL=2++]. One hundred and forty-three children under 17 years who died from meningococcal disease (cases) were matched by age with 355 survivors (controls) from the same region of the UK. A panel of paediatricians reviewed hospital records to compare the hospital care received by survivors and non survivors during the first 24 hours of admission. The panel used pre-defined optimal management protocols for meningococcal disease as a standard of care to judge the quality of hospital treatment. Optimal resuscitation for children with meningococcal disease complicated by cardiovascular failure was pre-defined as: 40ml/kg of fluid in the first hour given in aliquots of 20 ml/kg, followed by mechanical ventilation and administration of peripheral inotropes (dopamine or dobutamine) if shock persisted. In the event of a poor response to volume resuscitation and peripheral inotropes the protocol recommended starting an adrenaline infusion. Multivariate analysis found that failure to administer adequate inotropes in the first 24 hours was associated with a 23.7 fold increase in the odds of mortality (OR 23.7, 95% CI 2.6 to 213, p=0.005) in children with meningococcal disease and cardiovascular failure. Not being under the care of a paediatric team was associated with a 66-fold increase in the odds of dying (p=0.005) and failure of supervision by a consultant a 19.5-fold increase (p=0.015). Giving too little fluid in the first 24 hours was significantly associated with death in univariate analysis (OR 2.5, 95% CI 1.4 to 4.7, p=0.004).

A retrospective cohort study reviewed the effects of early shock reversal on the outcome of 91 infants and children with septic shock transferred from local hospitals to a children’s hospital in the US (1993–2001) [EL=2–]. Information about the patient’s care and clinical condition at the local hospital was obtained from a database used by the children’s hospital transport team. Shock reversal (defined by return of normal systolic blood pressure and capillary refill time to <3 seconds) was successfully achieved in 24/91 (26%) children by the time of arrival of the transport team [median time: 75 minutes]. Successful shock reversal in this time period was associated with a ~9-fold increase in the odds of survival compared with children with persistent shock [survival: 96% for early shock reversal versus 63% for persistent shock state: OR 9.49, 95% CI 1.07 to 83.89, p=0.001]. Shock reversal was achieved by compliance with a protocol that included early and aggressive fluid administration, commencing dopamine for fluid-refractory shock, epinephrine for dopamine-resistant cold shock and norepinephrine for warm shock during the first hour of resuscitation.

A prospective observational study [EL=2+] conducted in the UK in 2009 provided audit data for current practice in the management of severe sepsis in children in the UK against a 2002 guideline. One hundred and thirty-six children with sepsis and an average age of 9.8 to 15.1 months were included in the study. Comparisons were made between children in whom shock reversal occurred and children in whom it did not. Total fluid intake was significantly different between the groups (60 ml/kg versus 80 ml/kg, p=0.004). Children in whom shock was reversed had better outcomes than those in whom shock was not reversed (survival rate 94% versus 75%, p=0.03). Presence of shock after inter-hospital transfer was the only independent predictor of death after admission to the PICU (OR for death 3.8, 95% CI 1.4 to 10.2, p=0.008).

Evidence statement

No studies were found that directly addressed the clinical indications for fluid resuscitation or for commencing inotropes in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia.
One study found that insufficient intravenous fluid and inotrope administration in the first 24 hours was associated with a higher risk of mortality in children with meningococcal disease and circulatory failure.

One study with poor methodology found that early reversal of shock using intravenous fluids and inotropes was associated with lower mortality in children with sepsis.

**GDG interpretation of the evidence**

There was no available evidence directly addressing the clinical indications for starting intravenous fluid resuscitation or vasoactive drug therapy in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia.

**Intravenous fluid resuscitation**

Many children with meningococcal septicaemia have circulatory failure with haemodynamic dysfunction. There is however evidence to indicate that children with meningococcal disease or septic shock have worse outcomes if circulatory failure is not adequately treated. The GDG therefore considered that fluid resuscitation should be started immediately in these children.

**Vasoactive drug therapy**

Their view was that if there were signs of raised intracranial pressure or evidence of shock emergency management for these conditions should be initiated and ongoing fluid management should be discussed with a paediatric intensivist.

There is no evidence to support the use of one inotrope over another in children or young people with meningococcal septicaemia. However, evidence from adult studies and one recent study in children support the concept that vasoactive agents, which enhance oxygen delivery, may improve outcome in septic shock.

The GDG’s view was that if shock remains intractable, despite fluid resuscitation (>40ml/kg) and increasing requirements for IV adrenaline and/or IV noradrenaline, potential reasons (such as persistent acidosis, incorrect dilution or extravasation) should be considered and further management options should be discussed with a paediatric intensivist.

The GDG was of the opinion that local or national protocols should be available for the administration of vasoactive agents in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia.

Recommendations relating to starting resuscitation fluids and vasoactive agents for meningococcal disease are presented at the end of Section 6.5.

### 6.5 Type and volume of intravenous fluids for meningococcal septicaemia

**Introduction**

In children with meningococcal septicaemia and signs of shock, early and aggressive intravenous fluid resuscitation is the accepted standard of care. Inadequate fluid resuscitation is associated with early deterioration in organ perfusion and higher morbidity and mortality. The UK Advanced Paediatric Life Support protocol recommends the initial use of 0.9% sodium chloride or 4.5% human albumin followed by boluses of albumin for resuscitating children with septic shock, proposing that crystalloids leak quickly out of the intravascular compartment. However, a systematic review published in 1998 assessing the effects of human albumin administration in critically ill adults suggested that human albumin might increase mortality in this population group compared with crystalloids, raising concerns about the widespread use of colloids for fluid resuscitation. Although the review did not include RCTs of children with sepsis and did not provide information to guide management of meningococcal septicaemia, its publication led to a change from using human albumin to crystalloids for resuscitation in many centres. There is still uncertainty about the optimal type of fluid to resuscitate children with septic
shock. In practice, both isotonic crystalloid solutions (0.9% sodium chloride, lactated Ringer’s solution) and colloid solutions (such as 4.5% human albumin) are used.

Clinical question

What type of intravenous fluid should be used to resuscitate children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia?

Previous UK guidelines

The Feverish Illness in Children guideline recommends that children with fever and shock should be given an immediate intravenous fluid bolus of 20ml/kg, usually 0.9% sodium chloride. Children should be actively monitored and given further fluid boluses as necessary.23

The SIGN Guideline on Management of Invasive Meningococcal disease in Children and Young People recommends that children with meningococcal sepsis with signs of shock should be given a rapid intravenous infusion of isotonic crystalloid or colloid solution. The guideline recommends that a total of 60 ml/kg should be administered as three boluses of 20 ml/kg, with assessment after each bolus.26

Studies considered in this section

RCTs comparing colloid and crystalloid solutions for resuscitation of children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia were considered for this section. Because of a lack of evidence, the search was broadened to include RCTs involving children and young people with sepsis, septic shock, or shock associated with infection. RCTs involving adults with sepsis or septic shock that compared the effects on mortality of resuscitation with colloid and crystalloid solutions were also considered for extrapolation.

Overview of available evidence

No RCTs were found evaluating different types of intravenous fluid for resuscitation of children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia.

Six RCTs were reviewed for extrapolation. Five RCTs compared the use of crystalloid and colloid solutions for resuscitation of children: one RCT involved children with septic shock [EL=1+], one RCT involved children with malaria [EL=1+], and two RCTs involved children with dengue shock syndrome [EL=1+ and EL=1++] and critically ill adults with severe sepsis [EL=1++].

Review findings

One RCT conducted in India evaluated the effectiveness of crystalloid solution (0.9% saline) and colloid solution (polymer from degraded gelatin in saline [Haemaccel™]) in restoring circulating volume in 60 children aged 1 month to 12 years with septic shock [EL=1+].116 Fluid was administered in boluses of 20 ml/kg every 10 to 20 minutes until blood pressure or central venous pressure returned to normal. The RCT found no significant difference in mortality between the groups (29% with crystalloid versus 31% with colloid, p>0.1). The median volume of fluid needed for initial resuscitation was significantly higher in the crystalloid group compared with the colloid group (50 ml/kg [range 20–108 ml/kg] with saline versus 30 ml/kg [range 20–70 ml/kg] with gelatin, p=0.018). There was no significant difference in the time taken for resuscitation between the groups (p=0.41).

One phase II RCT conducted in Kenya compared the safety and efficacy of crystalloid solution (0.9% saline) versus colloid solution (4.5% human albumin) for volume expansion in 150 children with severe malaria and a metabolic acidosis (base deficit >8 mmol/l) [EL=1+].117 Fluid was given as an intravenous bolus of 20 or 40 ml/kg over 1 hour. The RCT found that, in 49 children with severe acidosis (base deficit >15 mmol/l), the secondary outcome of mortality was lower in children given 4.5% human albumin than in children given 0.9% saline (9% with human albumin versus 31% with saline). The difference was not statistically significant (p=0.06). Most deaths occurred in children admitted with coma. Hypotension and other signs of shock were not criteria for entry to the trial.

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 120 of 244
Two RCTs conducted in Vietnam examined the effects of different types of resuscitation fluid in children with dengue shock syndrome. Dengue shock syndrome was defined as dengue haemorrhagic fever plus either low pulse pressure (<20 mmHg) or unrecordable blood pressure, plus clinical signs of circulatory insufficiency such as cold extremities and thready pulse.

The first RCT, involving 50 children aged 5-15 years, compared two crystalloid solutions (0.9% saline and Ringer's lactate) and two colloid solutions (dextran 70 and gelafundin 35000 [3% gelatin]) for initial resuscitation of children with dengue shock syndrome [EL=1+]. Fluids were given intravenously as 20 ml/kg over one hour, followed by 10 ml/kg over the subsequent hour. There were no deaths. The RCT found no significant difference among the fluids in the duration of shock (p=0.36 across 4 groups).

The second RCT compared a crystalloid solution (Ringer's lactate) versus two colloid solutions (6% dextran 70 and 6% hydroxyethyl starch 200/0.5) for the initial resuscitation of 383 children with moderately severe dengue shock syndrome (pulse pressure >10 mmHg and ≤20 mmHg) [EL=1++]. Resuscitation fluid was given as an intravenous bolus of 15 ml/kg over 1 hour followed by 10 ml/kg over the second hour. Further colloid was given if there was no improvement in cardiovascular status after initial fluid resuscitation. The RCT found that, for moderately severe dengue shock, the proportion of children requiring rescue colloid therapy was similar for colloids and crystalloid (comparison of Ringer's lactate versus either colloid solution: RR 1.08, 95% CI 0.78 to 1.47, p=0.65). There was no significant difference among the groups in the risk of adverse effects such as clinical fluid overload or coagulopathy (reported as not significant, p values not reported). Significantly more children given dextran had allergic-type reactions after infusion (transient high fevers and rigors) compared with the other fluids (p<0.001 for three way comparison). One child given hydroxyethyl starch died of profound shock and gastrointestinal bleeding.

One large multicentre RCT compared the effects of colloid solution (4% human albumin) versus crystalloid solution (0.9% saline) on 28 day all-cause mortality in 7000 critically ill adults admitted to ICUs in Australia and New Zealand [EL=1++]. The allocated study intervention was used for all fluid resuscitation in the ICU to maintain or increase intravascular volume. Patients had a range of morbidities requiring medical and surgical treatment. A subgroup analysis of 1218 patients with severe sepsis found no significant difference in mortality between 4% human albumin and 0.9% saline (31% with 4% human albumin versus 35% with 0.9% saline; RR 0.87, 95% CI 0.74 to 1.02, p=0.088). The study was noted to be underpowered to detect small differences in mortality in the pre-defined subgroups. Co-morbidities and causative organisms in the patients with sepsis were not reported.

Evidence statement

No high-quality studies were found evaluating different types of intravenous fluid for resuscitation of children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia.

In children with septic shock, one RCT found that a greater volume of crystalloid solution (0.9% saline) was needed to restore circulating volume compared with colloid solution (Haemaccel™). It found no significant difference in mortality between crystalloid and colloid.

In children with severe malaria plus severe acidosis, one RCT found that fluid resuscitation with colloid solution (4.5% human albumin) was associated with a non-significant reduction in mortality compared with crystalloid solution (0.9% saline).

Evidence from RCTs involving children with dengue shock syndrome found no significant difference in the duration of shock or the need for further fluid boluses between initial resuscitation with different crystalloid and synthetic colloid solutions. One study found that significantly more children given synthetic colloid solutions had allergic-type reactions compared with children given crystalloid solutions.

In critically ill adults, one large RCT found no significant difference in 28-day mortality between fluid resuscitation with colloid solution (4% human albumin) and crystalloid solution (0.9% saline) in a subgroup of patients with severe sepsis.
Cost effectiveness

In the absence of evidence evaluating different types of intravenous fluid for children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia the GDG considered it important to consider the cost effectiveness in framing their recommendation. A ‘what-if’ analysis was undertaken to ascertain the circumstances in which the more expensive, colloid solution would be cost effective (see Appendix K). A cost comparison suggested that colloid solution was markedly more expensive (£34) than crystalloid solution (£0.51). In the absence of evidence of greater effectiveness with colloid solution, crystalloid solution was considered to be cost-effective.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

The GDG concluded that there is insufficient evidence to decide whether crystalloid or colloid solutions have greater effectiveness for volume resuscitation in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia.

Initial Bolus

The Resuscitation Council (UK) 2005 guidelines for Paediatric Advanced Life Support state that there are no clear advantages in using colloid in the initial stages of resuscitation for hypovolaemia post cardiac arrest. The guideline recommends the use of isotonic saline solutions and the avoidance of dextrose based solutions as the latter are redistributed rapidly from the intravascular space and cause hyponatraemia and hyperglycaemia, which may worsen neurological outcome after cardiac arrest.121

The Advanced Paediatric Life Support (APLS) Protocol recommends an initial bolus of crystalloid or colloid followed by further boluses of colloid for resuscitation of children with septic shock.114 There is currently no evidence that colloid is superior to crystalloid for initial resuscitation and the GDG considered other factors to inform their recommendations:

- 4.5% human albumin is the colloid solution that was used most widely for resuscitation of children until concerns were raised about its safety and efficacy.115 Although the evidence is not universally applicable to paediatric sepsis, and a subsequent publication by the same group raised no concerns about the safety of albumin,122 4.5% human albumin is no longer routinely available on resuscitation trolleys or in some Accident and Emergency Departments.

- 4.5% human albumin is a blood product and therefore its use in children may be less acceptable than crystalloid without evidence of superior efficacy.

- 0.9% sodium chloride is the crystalloid solution that is now used most widely for volume resuscitation in children. It is readily available and is considerably cheaper than 4.5% human albumin or other colloid solutions.

- Many children will require only one bolus of fluid and minimising exposure to expensive, blood-derived products by limiting use of 4.5% human albumin to those requiring ongoing resuscitation (see below) was considered good practice.

In view of the lack of evidence for greater effectiveness of human albumin, problems with its availability, and cost, the GDG concluded that 0.9% sodium chloride should be given as an initial bolus for fluid resuscitation in children with meningococcal septicaemia and signs of shock.

Second and subsequent boluses

The GDG noted the lack of evidence to direct the choice of fluid for resuscitation after the initial bolus. Although the GDG recognised that the same issues discussed for the initial bolus also applied to subsequent boluses, it was of the view that for ongoing resuscitation of children there were important additional considerations:

- Expert opinion of those GDG members involved in resuscitation of children, including paediatric intensivists, was strongly in favour of using 4.5% human albumin for subsequent boluses.
There is a greater likelihood that 4.5% human albumin could be made available to the resuscitation setting after the initial fluid bolus.

The preference for using human albumin for ongoing resuscitation is driven by concerns also noted in the APLS guidance that compared with colloids, crystalloid fluids:

- Diffuse more readily into the interstitial space
- May be associated with peripheral oedema
- Where capillary leak exists, allow more water to enter the interstitial space, because of lower osmotic pressure
- Need 2–3 times the volume of colloids to expand the vascular space and
- Have been reported to be associated with lower mortality (however this is unproven for shock in childhood conditions).123

The GDG acknowledged the body of expert opinion and published guidance in support of the use of colloid solutions (considered to mean 4.5% human albumin solutions) for the ongoing management of shock in children after the first bolus, and recognised that there was an absence of evidence to direct a change in current management protocols used by paediatric intensivists. At the same time, the GDG acknowledged that some experts and guidelines considered that 0.9% sodium chloride should be used in this setting.

The GDG therefore agreed that, after the initial bolus, further fluid management should be with either 0.9% sodium chloride or 4.5% human albumin.

The GDG are aware of concerns about interactions between calcium-containing solutions and ceftriaxone, and noted recent MHRA advice that ceftriaxone should not be given to any patient simultaneously with calcium-containing infusions;99 hence the use of calcium-containing resuscitation fluid should be avoided if ceftriaxone is given.

The GDG noted that children with meningococcal septicaemia often require more than 40ml/kg of fluid for initial resuscitation. Such children will probably require mechanical ventilation and inotropic support.

**Recommendations**

In children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia:

- if there are signs of shock give an immediate fluid bolus of 20ml/kg sodium chloride 0.9% over 5–10 minutes. Give the fluid intravenously or via an intraosseous route and reassess the child or young person immediately afterwards
- if despite the initial 20 ml/kg sodium chloride 0.9% bolus the signs of shock persist, immediately give a second bolus of 20 ml/kg of intravenous or intraosseous sodium chloride 0.9% or human albumin 4.5% solution over 5–10 minutes
- if following two bolus infusions (total 40 ml/kg) the signs of shock persist,:
  - immediately give a third bolus 20 ml/kg of intravenous or intraosseous sodium chloride 0.9% or human albumin 4.5% solution over 5–10 minutes
  - call for on-site anaesthetic assistance for urgent tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation
  - start treatment with vasoactive drugs
be aware that some children and young people may require large volumes of fluid over a short period of time to restore their circulating volume and consider giving further fluid boluses at 20 ml/kg of intravenous or intraosseous sodium chloride 0.9% or human albumin 4.5% solution over 5–10 minutes based on clinical signs and appropriate laboratory investigations.

- discuss further management with a paediatric intensivist.

**Vasoactive therapy**

If shock remains intractable despite adequate fluid resuscitation (more than 40 ml/kg) and increasing requirements for either intravenous adrenaline or intravenous noradrenaline, or both, consider potential reasons (such as persistent acidosis, incorrect dilution, extravasation) and discuss further management options with a paediatric intensivist.

Use local or national protocols for administration of vasoactive agents in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia.

**Research recommendations**

How effective is albumin 4.5% solution compared with crystalloid saline 0.9% solution for fluid resuscitation in children and young people with septic shock?

**Why this is important**

There are theoretical reasons why albumin solution may be more effective than crystalloid solution in children and young people with septic shock. However, no clinical studies have evaluated the effectiveness of albumin solution in children and young people with meningococcal disease. Concerns about the safety of colloids such as albumin solution led to a widespread change in clinical practice in the 1990s to using crystalloid solutions, despite a lack of evidence of equivalent effectiveness. Although albumin solution is considerably more expensive than crystalloid solution, a small additional benefit of albumin over crystalloid (one death prevented in more than 14,000 treated cases) would make the use of albumin solution cost effective. Randomised controlled trials are therefore needed to compare the effectiveness of albumin and crystalloid solutions in children and young people with septic shock.

---

### 6.6 Intubation

**Introduction**

A seriously ill infant or child should have a structured and sequential clinical assessment of their airway, breathing and circulation, with appropriate interventional management at each stage.

With the potential for raised intracranial pressure and seizure activity in infants and children with bacterial meningitis, together with the extensive fluid resuscitation often required in those with meningococcal septicaemia (see Section 6.5), the risk of respiratory compromise in these individuals is often increased.

The GDG reviewed the evidence to provide guidance on timely tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation for an optimal outcome in children with bacterial meningitis or meningococcal disease.

**Clinical question**

In children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal septicaemia, what are the clinical indications for intubation and mechanical ventilation?

In children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis, what are the clinical indications for intubation and mechanical ventilation?
Previous UK guidelines

The SIGN guideline on Management of Invasive Meningococcal Disease in Children and Young People recommends that children with progressive meningococcal disease should be intubated and mechanically ventilated if there is increased work of breathing, hypoventilation, low level of consciousness, or if the child is moribund.26

Studies considered in this section

All study designs evaluating the indications for tracheal intubation in children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal septicaemia or meningitis were considered for this section. Owing to a lack of evidence, a search was conducted for all study designs assessing the indications for tracheal intubation in people of all ages with sepsis, septicaemia or septic shock.

Overview of available evidence

No studies were found evaluating the indications for tracheal intubation in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia or bacterial meningitis. No studies were identified in children or adults with sepsis, septicaemia, septic shock or other types of meningitis that could be used for extrapolation.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

No evidence was found addressing the indications for tracheal intubation in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia or bacterial meningitis. Therefore, the expert opinion of the GDG, Paediatric Advanced Life Support guidelines and guidelines on the management of septic shock that have influenced current clinical practice in the UK 124-127 were considered to reach a consensus recommendation.

Reactive tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation is accepted best practice for children:

- with respiratory failure
- with coma
- for those who are moribund and
- for the control of intractable seizures.

Children with meningococcal septicaemia may deteriorate rapidly. The GDG therefore strongly recommends that the clinician should anticipate clinical deterioration in such children and prioritise airway management and pre-emptive tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation before overt signs of respiratory failure have developed.

The GDG supported the clinical practice of a group of paediatric specialists who recommend that, owing to the risk of pulmonary oedema, children who have received 40 ml/kg of resuscitation fluid with continuing signs of shock should be pre-emptively intubated. Tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation in these circumstances protects the airway, reduces the risk of pulmonary oedema, facilitates adequate oxygenation and ventilation, and reduces the work of breathing and oxygen consumption.128

In a child with ongoing shock or raised intracranial pressure, tracheal intubation should also be considered to assist with invasive procedures that facilitate the ongoing management and monitoring of the child, such as central and arterial line insertions.

In view of the potential risk of deterioration en route, the GDG agreed that there should be a low threshold for tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation of infants and children prior to their transfer to another hospital (e.g. for intensive care treatment).

The GDG considered that critically ill children should be intubated only by healthcare professionals with expertise in paediatric airway management. These include experienced anaesthetists, paediatric intensivists or paediatric emergency physicians who have maintained their clinical skills. The GDG stressed the need to seek suitable help immediately when children...
first present to the hospital, so that expertise with paediatric airway management is obtained as soon as possible.

The GDG were of the view that self-ventilating children and young people in the emergency setting should receive oxygen therapy according to standard protocols during initial assessment to counteract the hypoxaemia that is frequently present in septicaemia and to improve cerebral oxygenation in the presence of raised intracranial pressure associated with meningitis.

The GDG were of the opinion that local or national protocols should be available for intubation in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia.

Recommendations

In self-ventilating children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia with signs of increased respiratory distress administer 10-15 litre face mask oxygen via a reservoir rebreathing mask.

In children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia, if there is a threatened loss of airway patency, implement airway-opening manoeuvres, and start bag-valve mask ventilation before tracheal intubation.

In children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia, administer tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation for the following indications:

- threatened, or actual loss of airway patency (for instance loss of gag reflex)
- the need for any form of assisted ventilation, for example bag–mask ventilation
- clinical assessment of increased work of breathing
- apnoea
- hypoventilation
- features of respiratory failure, including:
  - irregular respiration (for instance Cheyne–Stokes breathing)
  - hypoxia (PaO2 less than 13 kPa or 97.5 mmHg) in air
  - hypercapnia (PaCO2 greater than 6 kPa or 45 mmHg)
- continuing shock following infusion of 40ml/kg of resuscitation fluid
- signs of raised intracranial pressure
- impaired mental status
  - a Glasgow Coma Scale drop of 3 or more, or a score of less than 9, or a fluctuation in conscious level
  - moribund state
- control of intractable seizures
- need for stabilisation and management to allow brain imaging or transfer to PICU or another hospital

A healthcare professional with expertise in airway management should undertake tracheal intubation.

Use local or national protocols for intubation in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia.
6.7 Corticosteroids for bacterial meningitis

Introduction

Bacterial meningitis is accompanied by marked inflammation in the subarachnoid space. Corticosteroids given with antibiotics can reduce this inflammation and have been shown in laboratory studies to improve the outcome of infection. In clinical practice, benefit has been reported particularly in children with Hib meningitis but, with changing epidemiology and the decline in particular in Hib cases following routine immunisation, the place of adjunctive corticosteroid therapy for bacterial meningitis is uncertain. The GDG conducted a meta-analysis of RCTs of adjunctive corticosteroid therapy in the treatment of acute bacterial meningitis in children.

Clinical question

Should corticosteroids be used in the treatment of children and young people with suspected/confirmed bacterial meningitis?

Previous UK guidelines

The SIGN Guideline on Management of Invasive Meningococcal disease in Children and Young People recommends that parenteral dexamethasone should be given to children with bacterial meningitis of unknown origin or with meningococcal meningitis for 4 days. The guideline recommends commencing dexamethasone with, or within 24 hours of, the first dose of antibiotic.

Studies considered in this section

RCTs and systematic reviews of RCTs evaluating corticosteroid use in children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis were considered for this section. Studies involving adults were excluded from the review.

Overview of available evidence

Two systematic reviews were found; the first investigated the effects of adjunctive corticosteroids in people of all ages with acute bacterial meningitis [EL=1++] and the second assessed the effects of adjunctive dexamethasone in childhood bacterial meningitis [EL=1+]. The first review reported a separate analysis of children treated in low-income settings and high-income settings for some outcomes. The GDG expanded the meta-analysis of high-income studies using data from the ‘all-income’ analyses in the first review. An analysis of hearing loss in children with pneumococcal meningitis from high-income settings was performed using data extracted from the second review. Data from studies involving children from low-income settings were extracted from the first review and from one subsequent RCT [EL=1+] and one quasi-randomised RCT [EL=1–] was found investigating the effect of dexamethasone in neonates.

Review findings

The first systematic review [EL=1++] comprised 20 RCTs, of which 15 involved 2,074 children younger than 16 years. In 14 of 15 studies involving children, intravenous dexamethasone was given at doses ranging from 0.4 to 1.5 mg/kg/day for 2 to 4 days. In the remaining study, intravenous methylprednisolone was given for 3 days. The control group (controls) in 10 of the 11 RCTs were given placebo; in one study the control group did not receive placebo. The review assessed the effects of corticosteroids on mortality, severe hearing loss and neurological sequelae. Severe hearing loss was defined as bilateral hearing loss greater than 60 dB or requiring bilateral hearing aids. Neurological sequelae included focal neurological deficits, epilepsy (not present before meningitis), severe ataxia and severe memory or concentration disturbance.

Data from studies conducted in high-income settings

Of the 1037 children in the analysis, ~61% had meningitis caused by Hib, ~16.5% had pneumococcal meningitis and ~14% had meningococcal meningitis.

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 127 of 244
Mortality

A meta-analysis of studies involving children with bacterial meningitis from high income settings performed by the first review found that corticosteroids plus antibiotics had no beneficial effect on mortality compared with controls \((p=0.45; \text{see table 6.2})\). Because of low event rates, organism-specific subgroup analyses for mortality were underpowered and are not reported further (see Appendix H).

Severe hearing loss

The first review found that corticosteroids significantly reduced the risk of severe hearing loss compared with controls for meningitis caused by any bacterium \((p<0.0001; \text{see table 6.2})\). This benefit was evident for children with Hib meningitis \((p=0.001; \text{see table 6.2})\). For meningitis caused by bacteria other than Hib, fewer children given corticosteroids developed severe hearing loss compared with controls, but the difference was not statistically significant \((p=0.07; \text{see table 6.2})\). For meningitis caused by \textit{S. pneumoniae}, a small meta-analysis found no significant difference in the risk of severe hearing loss between dexamethasone and controls \((p=0.75; \text{see table 6.2})\).

Neurological sequelae

The first review found no significant difference between corticosteroids and controls in the proportion of children with short-term neurological sequelae \((p=0.29; \text{see table 6.2})\). Further meta-analysis found that corticosteroids were associated with a significant reduction in the proportion of children with long-term neurological sequelae compared with controls \((p=0.04; \text{see table 6.2})\).

Timing of corticosteroids

The GDG review found that when corticosteroids were given before or with the first dose of antibiotic (early administration), the risk of long-term neurological sequelae was reduced compared with controls \((4 \text{ RCTs, 328 children, RR 0.48, } 95\% \text{ CI 0.25 to 0.92, } p=0.03)\), but this benefit was not seen in studies in which corticosteroids were administered after the first dose of antibiotic (late administration) \((4 \text{ RCTs, 379 children, RR 0.81, } 95\% \text{ CI 0.42 to 1.57, } p=0.53)\) (see Appendix H). Corticosteroids were associated with a reduced risk of severe hearing loss whether administered early or late in children with bacterial meningitis (early administration: \(4 \text{ RCTs, 325 children, RR 0.36, } 95\% \text{ CI 0.15 to 0.87, } p=0.02\); late administration: \(5 \text{ RCTs, 501 children, RR 0.29, } 95\% \text{ CI 0.14 to 0.63, } p=0.002\)) (see Appendix H). Different timing of administration did not alter the effect of corticosteroids on mortality, short-term neurological sequelae or severe hearing loss in children with pneumococcal meningitis (see Appendix H). However, owing to the small number of included studies, the analyses were underpowered to detect significant differences between the groups.

Adverse events

The GDG review found that adjunctive corticosteroids were not associated with a significantly increased risk of adverse effects, including gastrointestinal bleeding, herpes zoster or herpes simplex infection, fungal infection or secondary fever \((p=0.92; \text{see table 6.2})\).

Data from studies conducted in low-income settings

The first review reported a subgroup analysis of 4 RCTs conducted in low-income countries involving 1037 children. Approximately 25% children had Hib meningitis and 32% had pneumococcal meningitis. The review found no significant difference between adjunctive corticosteroids and controls (placebo or no corticosteroids) in the risk of mortality, severe hearing loss, or short term neurological sequelae (see table 6.2). A large study conducted in Malawi, involving 596 children, contributed most of the events in these analyses. Many of the children in this study were anaemic and malnourished, 34% were HIV positive, and 36% of participants had received antibiotic therapy prior to admission.

One subsequent RCT compared the effects of adjunctive intravenous dexamethasone \((0.15 \text{ mg/kg 6 hourly for 48 hours})\), oral glycerol, a combination of both interventions, and placebo, on mortality, profound hearing loss and severe neurological sequelae (including blindness, Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009)) Page 128 of 244
quadriplegia, hydrocephalus, or severe psychomotor retardation). The RCT involved 654 children aged 2 months to 16 years with bacterial meningitis (six centres in Latin America) [EL=1+]. The RCT found no significant difference in mortality (OR 0.82, 95% CI 0.45 to 1.49, p=0.509) or in the risk of profound hearing loss (OR 0.79, 95% CI 0.33 to 1.91, p=0.604) between dexamethasone alone and placebo. It found that fewer children given dexamethasone alone developed severe neurological sequelae compared with placebo, but the difference did not reach statistical significance (OR 0.48, 95% CI 0.21 to 1.07, p=0.072). Two of the six centres in the study did not include a placebo arm, and therefore inclusion of these results in the analysis may have compromised the benefit of randomisation. Similar to the low-income studies in the first review 131, many of the children in the study were anaemic, presented late, and had been given preadmission oral antibiotics.

All of the studies identified in the systematic review for this guideline (from both high and low-income settings) analysed data from children with either bacteriologically confirmed bacterial meningitis or probable bacterial meningitis diagnosed on the basis of typical CSF cytology and biochemistry. Therefore, the outcome of children in whom corticosteroids were initially administered on clinical grounds, but then withdrawn because bacterial meningitis was excluded after investigation, was not assessed.

Corticosteroids for meningitis in infants younger than 3 months

Although some of the RCTs identified by the two systematic reviews131;132 included infants younger than 3 months, no study performed a subgroup analysis of this age-group.

One quasi-randomised RCT conducted in Jordan investigated the effect of dexamethasone on mortality, neurological sequelae and hearing loss in 52 full term newborn infants with bacterial meningitis [EL=1–]. Neonates admitted with suspected bacterial meningitis were given dexamethasone plus antibiotics, or antibiotics alone. Dexamethasone (0.15 mg/kg 6 hourly) was given before the first dose of antibiotics, and continued for a total of 4 days. The study found no significant difference in mortality between the groups after 1 week (p=0.87). It found similar proportions of children with mild to moderate neurological, developmental abnormality or hearing loss at 2 year follow up (p values not reported). In total, 44% of neonates in the study had meningitis caused by Klebsiella pneumoniae, 5% had Group B streptococcus meningitis and 7% had E. coli meningitis. The spectrum of causative pathogens in the study suggests that the results are probably not generalisable to newborns with meningitis in England and Wales.

Evidence Statement

High-income settings

All bacterial pathogens

In children with bacterial meningitis, evidence from 11 RCTs conducted in high-income countries showed no significant difference in mortality with corticosteroids plus antibiotics compared with antibiotics alone. A meta-analysis of 5 RCTs showed no significant difference in the risk of short-term neurological sequelae with adjunctive corticosteroid therapy compared with antibiotics alone. Because of low numbers of events, these meta-analyses were probably underpowered to detect clinically important differences between the groups.

One meta-analysis of 10 RCTs showed that treatment with corticosteroids plus antibiotics reduced the risk of severe hearing loss compared with antibiotics alone. A meta-analysis of 8 RCTs showed that corticosteroids plus antibiotics reduced the risk of long-term neurological sequelae compared with antibiotics alone.

Haemophilus influenzae type b (Hib) meningitis

In children with Hib meningitis in high income settings, there is insufficient evidence to determine whether treatment with corticosteroids plus antibiotics alters the risk of mortality compared with antibiotics alone.

Evidence from 8 RCTs showed that corticosteroids plus antibiotics reduced the risk of severe hearing loss compared with antibiotics alone.
Streptococcus pneumoniae meningitis

In children with pneumococcal meningitis in high-income settings, there is insufficient evidence to determine whether treatment with corticosteroids plus antibiotics alters the risk of mortality compared with antibiotics alone. Evidence from 9 RCTs showed no significant difference in the risk of severe hearing loss with corticosteroids plus antibiotics compared with antibiotics alone. There is insufficient evidence to determine whether the timing of corticosteroid administration relative to the first dose of antibiotic alters the risk of severe hearing loss in children with pneumococcal meningitis.

Non-Hib meningitis

In children with meningitis caused by bacteria other than Hib, evidence from 9 RCTs conducted showed a trend towards reduction in the risk of severe hearing loss with corticosteroids plus antibiotics compared with antibiotics alone.

Timing of corticosteroids relative to antibiotics

Evidence from two small meta-analyses showed that, compared with antibiotics alone, corticosteroids given before or with the first dose of antibiotics to treat children with bacterial meningitis (termed ‘early administration’) significantly reduced the risk of long term neurological sequelae whereas corticosteroids given after the first dose of antibiotics (‘late administration’) did not reduce the risk of long term neurological sequelae. Corticosteroids were associated with a reduced risk in severe hearing loss whether administered early or late in children with bacterial meningitis. There is insufficient evidence to determine whether the timing of corticosteroid administration relative to the first dose of antibiotic alters the risk of mortality or short term neurological sequelae.

Low-income settings

Evidence from RCTs conducted in low-income settings found no significant difference in the risk of mortality, severe hearing loss, or short term neurological sequelae between adjunctive corticosteroids compared with controls (placebo or no corticosteroids).

Corticosteroids for meningitis in infants younger than 3 months

No high-quality studies were found evaluating adjunctive corticosteroids to treat meningitis in infants younger than 3 months or in neonates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Number of Participants</th>
<th>Age Range</th>
<th>Male/Female</th>
<th>Threshold for CSF Measures</th>
<th>Types of Bacterial Meningitis (and numbers)</th>
<th>Exclusions</th>
<th>Included Participants Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bademosi (1979)</td>
<td>n= 52</td>
<td>10-59 years</td>
<td>27 M 25 F</td>
<td>Not specified</td>
<td>Pneumococcal (n= 52)</td>
<td>Not specified</td>
<td>Bacteriologically proven pneumococcal meningitis. Consecutive patients admitted to medical wards with bacteriologically proven pneumococcal meningitis. All participants had meningitis, but it is not clear how the diagnoses were made (e.g. at...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.1 Corticosteroids for bacterial meningitis (van de Beek et al, 2007 review)
Belsey (1969)  

- n = 102
- 0-17 years
- Not specified
- Pressure – normal up to 150 mmHg
- Protein – normal up to 75 mg/100ml
- Glucose – up to 45 mg/100ml
- GOT – up to 23 units

Not of these were explicitly linked to inclusion criteria

Meningitis due to Gram-negative enteric bacteria, staphylococci, streptococci and mycobacteria.

Recent exposure to measles, varicella or herpes.

Previous neurologic al procedures.

Presumptive meningococcal septicaemia with shock rather than meningitis.

Already receiving steroids for another reason at admission.

Meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 131 of 244

Purulent meningitis.

All participants had purulent meningitis. Lumbar puncture was performed at admission, along with blood cultures and blood counts. It is not stated whether these were used to diagnose meningitis or not.

Bennett (1963)  

- n = 329
- Not specified
- 195 M
- 134 F

Included 135 children under 16 years and 194 adults from 16 to over 75 years.

Inclusion: any patient with a life threatening infection

Diplococcus pneumoniae (n = 56, including 2 with endocarditis)

Neisseria meningitidis (n = 9)

Mycobacterium tuberculosis (n = 6)

Streptococcus haemolyticus group a (n = 1)

Aseptic (n = 1)

Escherichia coli (n = 1)

Proteus mirabilis

Study could not be found to establish details.
Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 132 of 244

**Bhaumik** (1998)  
$n=30$  
12-75 years  
26 M  
4 F  
WBC count $>100/mm^3$ with at least 60% polymorphs  
Sugar of $<\frac{1}{2}$ simultaneous blood sugar  
(These were inclusion criteria, alongside increased protein in CSF)

No isolates ($n=15$)  
S. pneumoniae ($n=9$)  
N. meningitidis ($n=6$)

Suspicion of brain abscess, intracranial empyema or treated outside study setting with antibiotics for more than three days.

**Ciana** (1995)  
$n=73$  
2-72 months  
Not specified (reported not to be significantly different between groups)

Leucocytes $>100/mm^3$  
Glucose $<2$ mmol/l  
(both used to establish diagnosis)

S. pneumoniae ($n=25$)  
No isolate ($n=19$)  
H. influenzae type b ($n=12$)  
N. meningitidis ($n=11$)  
Escherichia coli ($n=3$)

Encephalitis, congenital heart disease and bacterial endocarditis.

Persistent inflammatory CSF signs with repeated negative cultures.

**deLemos** (1969)  
$n=117$  
$>1$ month  
Not specified, but thresholds were not met.

II. influenzae ($n=69$)  
Not specified

CSF diagnosis of acute bacterial meningitis by...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Organisms</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Girgis (1989)</td>
<td>278</td>
<td>3 months – 60 years</td>
<td>278 M / 151 F</td>
<td>Details were obtained, but thresholds were not specified.</td>
<td>Neisseria meningitidis (n=267)</td>
<td>All participants had bacterial meningitis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanra (1995)</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>2-16 years</td>
<td>Not specified.</td>
<td>Details were used to establish diagnosis, but thresholds were not specified.</td>
<td>Pneumococcal meningitis (n=56)</td>
<td>Signs and symptoms of acute bacterial meningitis. BUT all any participants with sterile CSF and blood cultures and where no organism could be seen on Gram stained films of their CSF were excluded from the final analysis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi (1995)</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>3 months – 15 years</td>
<td>59 M / 63 F</td>
<td>Leukocyte count at least 1000 x 10^6/litre</td>
<td>H. influenzae type b (n=65)</td>
<td>Children admitted with pneumococcal meningitis (basis of diagnosis is not specified e.g. clinical signs/symptoms or blood culture). BUT all CSF specimens were examined to establish the diagnosis before treatment (although the study does not specify if anyone was excluded as a result of the CSF findings).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Signs and Symptoms

- Headache
- Focal neurological symptoms
- Vomiting
- Seizures
- Altered consciousness

### Treatment

1. **Antibiotics**
   - Oral or intravenous antibiotics are usually given before the first dose of dexamethasone.
2. **Dexamethasone**
   - May reduce the risk of long-term neurological sequelae.
3. **Supportive Care**
   - Nutritional support
   - Pain management
   - Monitoring of neurological status

**Note:** The specific regimens and dosages of antibiotics and dexamethasone will vary depending on the organism involved and the patient's clinical condition.
criteria along with positive CSF culture or positive blood culture in patients with characteristic symptoms and signs.

Streptococcus pneumoniae (n=12)

Group B streptococcus (n=2)

Staphylococcus aureus (n=1)

Escherichia coli (n=1)

Bacterial meningitis caused by Listeria monocytogenes resistant to ceftriaxone.

Septic arthritis treated with amoxicillin and cefradine before diagnosis of bacterial meningitis.

Not given drugs as instructed in study.

Treated with mannitol on first day of study.

White blood cell count was at least 1000 x 10⁶/litre and the blood culture was positive in patients with characteristic symptoms and signs of bacterial meningitis. (study does not state how many children with suspected bacterial meningitis did not meet the diagnosis criteria, and whether they were excluded or not)

King (1994) n=101

1 month – 18 years

45 M 56 F

White blood cell count >1000 x 10⁶/l

OR

White blood cell count between 100 and 1000 x 10⁶/l with neutropenia or sepsis.

(inclusion criteria alongside clinical diagnosis, bacteria seen on Gram stain, recovery of bacteria or the presence of bacterial antigens. Participants were also included if)

Haemophilus influenzae type b (n=57)

Neisseria meningitidis (n=18)

Streptococcus pneumoniae (n=13)

Group B streptococcus (n=1)

No isolate (n=12)

History of antecedent hearing or neurologic al disorder

Previous episode of meningitis, congenital or acquired immunodeficiency syndromes or presence of a ventricular shunt.

Current use of steroids or a contraindic ation to use of steroids.

Received first dose of intravenous

Suspected bacterial meningitis. Diagnosis was made on clinical grounds by the admitting paediatrician.

Lumbar puncture was performed to confirm the diagnosis. It is not stated whether patients whose lumbar puncture did not confirm bacterial meningitis were excluded or not. BUT 65% of children in one group and 70% in the other group are reported to have had laboratory confirmed bacteremia.
assumed to have bacterial meningitis but were too unstable for lumbar puncture)

Details used to establish inclusion, but thresholds not specified.

H. influenzae (n=75, n=79)
S. pneumoniae (n=9, n=8)
N. meningitidis (n=8, n=9)
No isolates (n=5, n=4)

Group B streptococcus (n=1, n=2)

Aseptic meningitis, gastrointestinal bleeding, recurrent meningitis associated with leakage of CSF, tuberculous meningitis.

History of hypersensitivity to beta-lactam antibiotics.

Acquired or congenital abnormality of central nervous system, prosthetic device such as shunt or known hepatic or renal impairment.

Received more than one intravenous dose of antibiotics beforehand.

Known hypersensitivity to beta-lactam antibiotics, congenital or acquired abnormality of central nervous system.

Suspected or proved bacterial meningitis.

Blood cultures were obtained on admission, and a diagnosis was established before antimicrobial therapy started, but it is not clear whether exclusions were made based on the results.

Across the four groups, 81%, 78%, 74% and 78% had bacteremia on admission, although 9 children were not tested on admission (it is not clear why they were not tested).

Lebel (1989) n=60 3 mont hs – 16 years 37 M 23 F Details used to establish inclusion, but thresholds not specified.

Haemophilus influenzae type B (n=45)

Streptococcus pneumoniae (n=9)

Neisseria meningitidis (n=4)

Suspected or proved bacterial meningitis.

All patients had examinations and cultures of CSF at diagnosis. No patients had CSF or clinical findings.
Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 136 of 244

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Molyneux (2002)</td>
<td>598</td>
<td>2 - 13 years</td>
<td>337</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>No isolate (n=0) nervous system, or prosthetic device of central nervous system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>S. pneumoniae (n=238) compatible with the diagnosis of aseptic meningitis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>H. influenzae (n=170)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No growth on culture (n=78)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>N. meningitidis (n=67)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Salmonella spp (n=29)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Other (n=16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100 white cells (mostly granulocytes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>reviewer comment: the paper did not specify the context of the white cells, e.g. 100 white cells per mm³)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- (used as definition of meningitis, or positive Gram stain, or grew bacteria in culture)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Odio (1991)</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>6 - 13 years</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>Details used to establish inclusion, but thresholds not specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>H. influenzae type b (n=79)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Streptococcus pneumoniae (n=8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unknown (n=8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Neisseria meningitidis (n=2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Escherichia coli (n=2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Group B streptococcus (n=1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Salmonella group D (n=1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Congenital or acquired abnormality of central nervous system, prosthetic device in central nervous system, previous episodes of bacterial meningitis, underlying neurologic abnormality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>History of hypersensitivity to beta-lactam antibiotics, previous parental antibiotic therapy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Bacterial meningitis based on CSF at admission, positive Gram stain or bacterial culture.
- Children were initially enrolled on the basis of a clinical diagnosis – when the history and physical findings were suggestive of meningitis and a lumbar puncture showed hazy or cloudy cerebrospinal fluid. If the cerebrospinal report was incompatible with a diagnosis of bacterial meningitis, the child was removed from the study.
- Culture proved bacterial meningitis or evidence of severe meningeal inflammation and findings characteristic of bacterial infection in CSF.
- Patients with aseptic meningitis were excluded.
- 8 patients had an unknown causal agent.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Diagnoses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Qazi (1996)</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>2 months – 12 years</td>
<td>54 M 35 F</td>
<td>Leucocytes &gt;1000 x 10^6 cells/l (predominantly polymorphonuclear), Protein &gt;1g/l, Glucose &lt;1.66 mmol/l (or 50% of serum glucose), No organism isolated (n=49), Haemophilus influenzae (n=20), Neisseria meningitidis (n=8), Streptococcus pneumoniae (n=6), Salmonella spp (n=2), Pseudomonas aeruginosa (n=1), Klebsiella pneumoniae (n=1), Streptococcus agalactiae (n=1), Staphylococcus aureus (n=1), Tuberculous meningitis or obvious viral infection or aseptic meningitis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaad (1993)</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>3 months – 16 years</td>
<td>69 M 46 F</td>
<td>Reactive protein – normal is 0-20 mg/l, H. influenzae (n=67), N. meningitidis (n=28), S. pneumoniae (n=11), No isolate (n=9), Suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thomas (1999)</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>18-79 years</td>
<td>34 M 26 F</td>
<td>Details used to establish inclusion, but thresholds not specified, S. pneumoniae (n=31), N. meningitidis (n=18), Unknown (n=8), Streptococcus bovis (n=1), H. influenzae, Received more than one dose of parental beta-lactam antibiotic or any other adequate treatment for more than 3 hours, Presenting with bacterial meningitis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 137 of 244
with more than 50% polymorphonuclear cells (n=1)

Listeria monocytogenes (n=1)

Septic shock, acute post surgical or post traumatic meningitis, brain abscess.

History of hypersensitivity to betalactam antibiotics or to corticosteroids or organ transplantation.

10% of one group and 16% of the other group had unknown causal agents.

Wald (1995) n=143 8 weeks – 12 years 79 M 64 F

White blood cell count at least 10 cells/μl with a predominance of polymorphonuclear leukocytes

H. influenzae type b (n=83)

S. pneumoniae (n=33)

N. meningitides (n=24)

Aseptic meningitis (n=15)

Streptococcus pyogenes (n=1)

H. influenzae type a (n=1)

Nontypeable H. influenzae (n=1)

Congenital or acquired abnormality of central nervous system (including prosthetic device), pre-existing hearing loss, congenital or acquired immunodeficiency or underlying renal or hepatic impairment.

Hypersensitivity to betalactam antimicrobials, administration of corticosteroids before enrolment, receipt of more than one dose of intravenous antibiotic before enrolment, or lack of receipt of

Suspected bacterial meningitis.

Bacterial meningitis was suspected if CSF met criteria outlined in thresholds column. 72% of one group and 70% of the other group of children had bacteremia on admission.
Those who received oral antimicrobial therapy in the three days before date of admission were permitted to enter the study but were excluded at 48 hours if CSF culture was sterile and antigen detection tests were negative, as the meningitis could not be classified as either bacterial or aseptic.

**de Gans (2002)**

- n=301
- 17 years and older (upper age range not specified)
- 169 M
- 132 F

**Leukocyte count**

- >1000/mm³

(Used for inclusion, or cloudy CSF or bacteria on Gram’s staining)

**Streptococcus pneumoniae**

- (n=108)

**Neisseria meningitidis**

- (n=97)

**Negative bacteria culture**

- (n=65, including 2 where CSF culture not performed)

**Other bacteria**

- (n=29)

**Clinical criteria**

- Hypersensitivity to beta-lactam antibiotics or corticosteroids,
- Pregnant,
- Cerebrospinal shunt, or oral or parenteral antibiotics in previous 48 hours,
- History of active tuberculosis or fungal infection, or recent history of suspected meningitis in combination with any of the previously outlined criteria in threshold column. (It is not clear whether ‘suspected meningitis’ therefore refers to signs/symptoms)

- 23% of study group and 21% of control group had a negative bacterial culture.

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ((October 2009)) Page 139 of 244
### Table 6.2 Data from studies conducted in high-income settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organisms</th>
<th>Details of meta-analysis</th>
<th>Number of RCTs, number of children</th>
<th>RR</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mortality</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All organisms</td>
<td>van de Beek et al 2007</td>
<td>11 RCTs, 1037 children</td>
<td>1.40</td>
<td>0.59 to 3.33</td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Severe hearing loss</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All organisms</td>
<td>van de Beek et al 2007</td>
<td>10 RCTs, 910 children</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>0.18 to 0.57</td>
<td>&lt;0.0001*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemophilus influenzae type b</td>
<td>GDG meta-analysis of children only: data extracted from all patients van de Beek et al 2007</td>
<td>8 RCTs, 493 children</td>
<td>0.29</td>
<td>0.14 to 0.61</td>
<td>0.001*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacteria other than Haemophilus influenzae type b</td>
<td>GDG analysis using data from Kanra et al 2007 and van de Beek et al 2007</td>
<td>9 RCTs, 333 children</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td>0.22 to 1.05</td>
<td>0.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Streptococcus pneumoniae</td>
<td>GDG analysis using data from McIntyre et al 1997</td>
<td>9 RCTs, 147 children</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.45 to 1.77</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Short term neurological sequelae</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All organisms</td>
<td>van de Beek et al 2007</td>
<td>5 RCTs, 354 children</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.45 to 1.27</td>
<td>0.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Long-term neurological sequelae</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All organisms</td>
<td>GDG meta-analysis of children only: data extracted from all patients van de Beek et al 2007</td>
<td>8 RCTs, 707 children</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.39 to 0.98</td>
<td>0.04*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Adverse effects</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All organisms</td>
<td>GDG analysis of children only: data extracted from all patients van de Beek et al 2007</td>
<td>10 RCTs, 919 children</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>0.82 to 1.24</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*significant p value
** See Appendix H

### Table 6.3 Data from studies conducted in low-income settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organisms</th>
<th>Details of meta-analysis</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>RR</th>
<th>95% CI</th>
<th>P value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mortality</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GDG interpretation of the evidence

After considering the results of studies of the use of adjunctive corticosteroids in meningitis occurring in high and low income settings, the GDG concluded that substantial differences in the populations precluded combining the data to inform best practice in the UK. Therefore to inform their recommendations, the GDG focused on results from studies conducted in high-income settings.

In children with bacterial meningitis from high-income settings, there is no evidence from meta-analyses that corticosteroids reduce mortality or short-term neurological sequelae. There is evidence that adjunctive corticosteroids reduce the risk of severe hearing loss and long-term neurological sequelae following bacterial meningitis. Cases of Hib meningitis predominated in these meta-analyses and, in a subgroup analysis of children with Hib meningitis, benefit for severe hearing loss from adjunctive corticosteroids remained apparent. There is no evidence that corticosteroids reduce the risk of severe hearing loss in children specifically with pneumococcal meningitis, but the small sample size means that this subgroup analysis was underpowered to detect such an effect. A subgroup analysis of children with non-Hib meningitis (including cases caused by pneumococcus and meningococcus) revealed a trend to benefit for severe hearing loss with adjunctive corticosteroids. There was no evidence of an increased risk of harmful effects in children with bacterial meningitis given corticosteroids in the steroid trials.

Data from analysis of meningitis cases in adults, in whom Hib infection is rare, supports the conclusion that adjunctive corticosteroids confer benefit. The 2007 systematic review found that adjunctive corticosteroids reduced overall mortality in adults receiving corticosteroids compared with controls regardless of bacterial aetiology, as well as in cases specifically of pneumococcal meningitis (data extracted from all patient analysis). The risk of short-term neurological sequelae in adults was also reduced with adjunctive corticosteroids.

The GDG recognised that the benefit of steroids in Hib meningitis in children is widely accepted and that, since the pathology in other types of bacterial meningitis is similar, these benefits are likely to extrapolate to pneumococcal and meningococcal cases. The GDG then considered whether it was possible to identify those children with bacterial meningitis for whom steroids could be recommended.

The steroid trials had various different entry criteria and are difficult to directly translate to current clinical practice. A particular problem is the reporting of the data only in the cases of proven bacterial meningitis in some of the studies and the absence of reporting of detailed entry criteria in others. Some of the studies that have examined the potential benefits of corticosteroids in meningitis used a substantially raised CSF white cell count (>1000/microL) or positive Gram stain, as an entry criterion. The average CSF white cell count reported in studies of steroids in bacterial meningitis, (including those that do not report the WBC count as an entry criterion) is greater than 1000/microL, and often substantially greater. The GDG was of the view that the available evidence is limited to the groups of children who met entry criteria for these studies or were actually included in the studies. Studies that have used CSF white cell count (see Section 5.5) to predict bacterial meningitis consistently found that the majority of cases were aseptic with higher specificity reported with a CSF white cell count cut off >1000microL. Similarly, a CSF protein concentration >1g/l had a high specificity for bacterial meningitis. Therefore, broader use of steroids for all children with pleocytic CSF carries the risk of exposing a large group of children to steroids for whom there is no evidence of benefit.

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 141 of 244
Furthermore, the reduction in bacterial meningitis as a result of immunisation means that the aetiology of most cases of meningitis will be viral. Indeed, with the introduction of effective vaccines to prevent bacterial meningitis caused by Hib, serogroup C meningococcus and some serotypes of pneumococcus, the epidemiology of meningitis in children in England and Wales has changed substantially and continues to do so. The marked decline in cases of Hib meningitis in particular has meant that the benefit of adjunctive corticosteroids is far less certain, but the GDG concluded that the trend to benefit in non-Hib cases should still support their use in those who have strong evidence of bacterial meningitis. However, there are no studies that provide data to allow distinction between bacterial and aseptic meningitis in a highly vaccinated population and to determine or justify “strong evidence”. Indeed there were very few cases of aseptic meningitis included in any of the steroids trials.

One study in the USA\textsuperscript{139} found very low rates of bacterial meningitis (3.7%) in a cohort of over 3000 children with a pleocytic CSF. Only 15% of those with a WBC count over 500 had bacterial meningitis and 28% among those with CSF WBC count over 1000 (Lise Nigrovic, personal communication). This study excluded those who had been pre-treated with antibiotics (544 cases), and those who were considered critically ill (but well enough to have a lumbar puncture; 218 cases), and the proportions with bacterial meningitis may have been higher. However, there were still relatively few cases of bacterial meningitis among those who were excluded with little impact on overall disease rates (Lise Nigrovic, personal communication) and the conclusion stands that most children with pleocytic CSF have aseptic meningitis. Children with aseptic meningitis were not included as a specific study group in any of the steroid trials and there are no effectiveness or adequate safety data for steroid use in aseptic meningitis.

Therefore, the importance of establishing a microbiological diagnosis in cases of meningitis is emphasised, to minimise the administration of corticosteroids to children with aseptic meningitis (in whom there is a lack of evidence about the benefit or harm of corticosteroids) or cases of tuberculous meningitis (where giving corticosteroids in the absence of anti-tuberculosis treatment may cause harm). Accordingly, the recommendation for corticosteroid therapy is closely tied to a recommendation for lumbar puncture in all cases of suspected meningitis where this procedure can be undertaken safely.

There is a lack of data from RCTs to support decisively the contention that the timing of steroid administration is critical to its beneficial effect. A meta-analysis of studies of children from high-income settings showed a reduction in severe hearing loss whether steroids were given early (before or with the first dose of antibiotic) or up to 12 hours later (the latest time in most studies). For long term neurological sequelae, the benefit seen for steroids given before or with the first dose of antibiotic is no longer evident when steroids are administered after the first dose. Accordingly the GDG recommends administration of adjunctive corticosteroid before or with the first dose of antibiotic. In exceptional cases where this has not been achieved, administration of steroids should not be considered beyond 12 hours.

The GDG concluded that steroids should be used where there was strong evidence of bacterial meningitis, to reduce the risk of hearing loss, but should not be used where the evidence was weak. The GDG also were of the view that those given steroids should match the population included in the steroid trials as closely as possible. Use of steroids when the CSF WBC count was $\geq 1000$ cells/μl would target at least 50% of cases of bacterial meningitis and was considered a logical step given the benefits documented in such cases in the steroid trials. An additional number could reasonably be included by use of steroids where the Gram stain was positive confirming the diagnosis of bacterial meningitis or the CSF protein was $>1g/L$. The GDG did not support the use of steroids for other groups of children who had not been adequately studied in trials and for whom there was a very high (90%) chance of aseptic meningitis. The GDG considered use of other variables (e.g., CRP, other CSF parameters etc) to inform the decision to treat but noted that none of these were consistently used specifically to identify the populations who had been studied in the steroid trials.

The dosage recommended by the GDG (0.15 mg/kg/day for 4 days, up to a maximum dose of 10mg) corresponds to the dosage of 6 mg/kg/day used in eight of the 13 studies included in the first systematic review\textsuperscript{131} that reported results for children and young people under 16 years. The dosage recommended by the GDG has also been used in UK clinical practice for several years.

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ((October 2009)) Page 142 of 244
The GDG were concerned that TB meningitis might be overlooked and that there was a risk in giving steroids without anti-tuberculous therapy. The GDG considered that ‘Tuberculosis’, NICE clinical guideline 331 should be followed if TB was on the differential diagnosis.

Corticosteroids for meningitis in infants younger than 3 months

There are no high-quality studies of children under 3 months of age to support the use of adjunctive corticosteroids for bacterial meningitis in this age group. As the bacteria commonly responsible for meningitis in these patients differ from those found in older children, the GDG does not recommend the use of steroids in the treatment of bacterial meningitis in infants younger than 3 months.

**Recommendations**

Give dexamethasone (0.15 mg/kg to a maximum dose of 10 mg, four times daily for 4 days) 64 as soon as possible if lumbar puncture reveals any of the following:

- frankly purulent CSF
- bacteria on Gram stain
- a CSF white blood cell count greater than 1000/microlitre
- CSF pleocytosis and a protein concentration greater than 1 g/litre.

If tuberculosis is in the differential diagnosis, refer to ‘Tuberculosis’ guideline (NICE clinical guideline 33) before administering steroids, because steroids may be harmful if given without antituberculous therapy.

If dexamethasone is not given before or with the first dose of antibiotics, but is appropriate, administer a first dose within 4 hours wherever possible, but not later than 12 hours.

After the first dose of dexamethasone always discuss the decision to continue dexamethasone with a senior paediatrician.

Do not use corticosteroids in children younger than 3 months with suspected bacterial meningitis.

**Research recommendations**

What is the effectiveness of corticosteroids as an adjunct to antibiotic treatment in neonates with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis?

**Why this is important**

Neonatal bacterial meningitis is associated with high morbidity, despite the availability of antibiotics that are highly effective against the leading causes of bacterial meningitis in this age group. New approaches to management are needed because there are currently no vaccines to protect against infection from the causative organisms. Corticosteroids are effective as an adjunct to antibiotic treatment in older children with meningitis caused by Hib, and in adults with bacterial meningitis but there is insufficient evidence to support a recommendation for adjunctive corticosteroid treatment in neonates. Extrapolation from older age groups would be inappropriate because the spectrum of organisms causing infection in neonates is different, and the impact on the developing brain of the causative organisms during inflammation may not be the same. A large-scale randomised controlled trial is therefore needed to compare the effectiveness of antibiotic

---

64 The dosage given in the recommendation is based on high-quality evidence and is consistent with established clinical practice (see the full guideline for further details). The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients. Dexamethasone does not have UK marketing authorisation for use at the dose specified in the recommendation. Such use is an off-label use. Informed consent should be obtained and documented in line with normal standards in emergency care.
6.8 Corticosteroids for meningococcal septicaemia

Introduction

Severe sepsis is associated with marked hormonal and metabolic responses including the increased release of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) from the pituitary gland, which functions to stimulate the production of corticosteroids (glucocorticoids and mineralocorticoids) by the adrenal glands. The physiological role of the stress response is to maintain normal tone of blood vessels, increase cardiac output and blood pressure, and modulate the inflammatory response. Glucocorticoids inhibit the production of various proinflammatory cytokines, prostaglandins and other proinflammatory mediators, while stimulating the production of anti-inflammatory cytokines.

The anti-inflammatory and cardiovascular stabilising properties of corticosteroids provided a rationale for their use in people with sepsis and septic shock. However, after several large clinical trials indicated that high dose corticosteroids showed either no benefit or the potential to cause excess mortality in people with septic shock, the routine use of corticosteroids as adjunctive therapy for septic shock was abandoned.

Recently, the debate about the use of corticosteroids in sepsis has been revived by results of studies examining the relationship between adrenal function and sepsis. It has been shown that many adults with septic shock have adrenal dysfunction, and that transient adrenal insufficiency, which is found in 50–80% of people with sepsis, may be associated with an adverse outcome. In children with meningococcal disease, low serum cortisol levels together with high ACTH levels have been associated with higher mortality.

These biological insights and the results of recent trials in adults have led to recommendations from the Surviving Sepsis Campaign that low dose corticosteroids should be considered for adults with septic shock when hypotension responds poorly to adequate fluid resuscitation and vasopressors.

Clinical question

Should corticosteroids be used in the treatment of children and young people with suspected/confirmed meningococcal septicaemia?

Previous UK guidelines

The SIGN Guideline on Management of Invasive Meningococcal disease in Children and Young People recommends that corticosteroids should not be given to children with meningococcal septicaemia. The guideline notes that a trial of hydrocortisone should be considered in the small subgroup of children with meningococcal septic shock and signs of absolute adrenal insufficiency (inotrope-resistant shock, hypoglycaemia and hyponatraemia).

Studies considered in this section

RCTs and systematic reviews of RCTs evaluating the effects of corticosteroids in children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal septicaemia were considered for this section. Because of a lack of evidence, all study designs of children and young people with sepsis, septicaemia or septic shock were included. RCTs and systematic reviews of RCTs involving adults with sepsis, septicaemia or septic shock were also considered for extrapolation.

Overview of available evidence

No studies were found assessing corticosteroid use in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia. Five studies examined the effects of corticosteroids in people with sepsis or septic shock: one RCT [EL=1+] involved children only, one systematic review involved mostly adults [EL=1++], and two subsequent RCTs [EL=1++] and one meta-analysis [EL=1+]...
recruited adults only. Two RCTs in adults with septic shock [EL=1++] examined whether the outcome of treatment with corticosteroids was dependent on adrenal function.

Review findings

One RCT assessed the effects of dexamethasone on sepsis in 72 African children aged 1 month to 16 years [EL=1+].142 Children admitted with sepsis syndrome or septic shock caused by Gram-negative and Gram-positive organisms were randomised to receive intravenous dexamethasone (0.6 mg/kg/day) or placebo for 48 hours. Dexamethasone was administered 5 to 10 minutes before the first dose of antibiotic. The RCT found no significant difference between dexamethasone and placebo in survival to discharge (83% with dexamethasone versus 89% with placebo, p=0.73). There was no significant difference in the proportion of children with shock reversal at 48 hours after treatment (p=0.29). About half of the children in the study were malnourished, and most presented to hospital late in the course of illness.

One systematic review and meta-analysis (search date 2003) evaluated the effect of systemic corticosteroids on mortality in people of all ages with severe sepsis and septic shock [EL=1++].143 The review included 16 trials (RCTs and quasi RCTs) involving 2063 people, of whom 207 (10%) were children. One RCT involved children only and is also reported separately above142. Another study enrolled adults and children, but reported adult data only. Systemic corticosteroids included hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, betamethasone, or dexamethasone. Overall, the review found no significant difference in 28-day all-cause mortality between corticosteroids and controls (15 RCTs, 2022 people, mortality: 34% with corticosteroids versus 33% with controls; RR 0.92, 95% CI 0.75 to 1.14, p=0.46). Significant heterogeneity in the results prompted the authors to perform a subgroup analysis of different dosage regimens of systemic corticosteroids (long course: at least 5 days of low-dose (<300 mg/day) hydrocortisone or equivalent; and short course: less than 5 days treatment with >300 mg hydrocortisone). The review found no benefit for mortality in people given short course high-dose corticosteroids (8 RCTs, 1115 people: mortality: 32% with corticosteroids versus 30% with controls; RR 0.97, 95% CI 0.72 to 1.31, p=0.84). Meta-analysis of five RCTs involving 465 adults, most of whom had vasopressor-dependant septic shock, found that long course low-dose corticosteroids significantly reduced 28-day mortality compared with controls (mortality: 45% with corticosteroids versus 56% with controls; RR 0.80, 95% CI 0.67 to 0.95, p=0.01). The review found that corticosteroid therapy was not associated with a significantly increased risk of adverse effects compared with controls (gastroduodenal bleeding: RR 1.16, 95% CI 0.82 to 1.65, p=0.40; superinfection: RR 0.93, 95% CI 0.73 to 1.18, p=0.54).

Two RCTs published subsequent to the systematic review 143 also assessed the effects of long course low-dose hydrocortisone (200 to 300 mg/day) in adults with vasopressor-dependent septic shock [EL=1++].144,145 One large multicentre RCT (CORTICUS trial) involving 499 adults with septic shock of less than 72 hours duration found no significant difference in 28-day mortality between corticosteroids and placebo in all patients (overall mortality: 34% with hydrocortisone, methylprednisolone, be tamethasone, or dexamethasone). Overall, the study enrolled adults and children, but reported adult data only. Systemic corticosteroids were children. One RCT involved children only and is also reported separately above142. Another recruited adults only. Two RCTs in adults with septic shock [EL=1++] examined whether the outcome of treatment with corticosteroids was dependent on adrenal function.

One metaanalysis [EL=1+] 146 conducted in 1995 aimed to evaluate clinical evidence and treatment effects of steroids in sepsis and septic shock. Ten RCTs with a total of 1329 patients with sepsis or septic shock were included, with the number of patients from any one trial ranging from 31 to 382. The mean age range was 50 to 65 years, and the proportion of men ranged from 55% to 97%. Each study compared steroids to no steroids, with positive effects and adverse events as outcomes. The global pooled effect was -0.2% (CI -9.2 to 8.8) in favour of corticosteroids. Only one of the ten studies (172 patients) had a significant result in favour of corticosteroids, and when this was removed, an effect of 4.8% in favour of controls was found. The pooled effect for
mortality rates (6 studies, 696 participants) was -1.7% (CI -11.0 to 7.6), for gastrointestinal bleeding (5 studies, 696 patients) was 2.3% (CI -0.7 to 5.4); secondary infection (7 studies, 1066 patients) was 0.4% (-4.4 to 5.2), and hypoglycaemia (4 studies, 529 participants) was 0.2% (CI -4.0 to 4.4). Studies that used a dose of less than 20g hydrocortisone during the first 24 hours (5 studies, 530 patients) had a pooled effect of -1.9% (CI -20.0 to 16.2) whereas studies with a higher dose (5 studies, 799 patients) had a pooled effect of 3.6% (CI -2.5 to 9.8).

Corticosteroid therapy and adrenal function

One RCT identified by the 2004 systematic review 143 found that, in adults with septic shock and relative adrenal insufficiency (defined by poor response to a corticotropin test), a short course of intravenous low-dose hydrocortisone plus oral fludrocortisone significantly reduced 28-day mortality compared with placebo (mortality: 53% with corticosteroids versus 63% with placebo; adjusted OR 0.54, 95% CI 0.31 to 0.97, p=0.04) [EL=1++]147 There was no significant difference in mortality between corticosteroids and placebo in all patients (mortality: 55% with corticosteroids versus 61% with placebo; adjusted OR 0.65, 95% CI 0.39 to 1.07, p=0.09) or in people with a normal response to corticotropin (mortality: 61% with corticosteroids versus 53% with placebo; adjusted OR 0.97, 95% CI 0.32 to 2.99, p=0.96). The CORTICUS trial found that the effects of corticosteroids in adults with septic shock were not dependent on adrenal function (mortality in non-responders to corticotropin: 39% with corticosteroids versus 36% with placebo; RR 1.09, 95% CI 0.77 to 1.52, p=0.69; mortality in responders to corticotropin: 29% with corticosteroids versus 29% with placebo; RR 1.00, 95% CI 0.68 to 1.49, p=1.00). 144

Evidence statement

There is no available evidence on the effects of corticosteroids in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia.

There is insufficient high-quality evidence to reach a conclusion about the effects of corticosteroids in children and young people with sepsis or septic shock.

Evidence from a large meta-analysis of 15 studies involving mainly adults indicates that corticosteroids do not reduce mortality in people with severe sepsis and septic shock. The definition of septic shock, the duration and severity of shock, and the corticosteroid regimens differed among the studies.

When vasopressor-dependent septic shock in adults is considered, evidence from eight RCTs showed that high-dose corticosteroids were not beneficial in reducing mortality compared with controls, whereas a meta-analysis of five RCTs showed that low-dose corticosteroids significantly reduced 28-day mortality compared with controls. Subsequent evidence from two RCTs found no significant difference in 28-day mortality between long course low-dose corticosteroids and placebo, with one RCT reporting an increased risk of new episodes of sepsis with corticosteroids compared with placebo.

Two RCTs that assessed whether the effects of corticosteroids were altered by differences in adrenal function in adults with septic shock found conflicting results.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

In view of the lack of evidence about the effects of corticosteroids in children and young people with sepsicaemia, results from studies in adults were considered. These studies showed that high-dose corticosteroids were not beneficial in the management of severe sepsis and septic shock and that high (treatment) doses could be unsafe.

Studies of low-dose corticosteroids in adults with septic shock showed conflicting results.

The GDG recognised that there is a subgroup of children with meningococcal septicaemia who have vasopressor-unresponsive shock and who may have adrenal insufficiency. Use of corticosteroids in this population has not been studied. However, the GDG considered that this subgroup of children may benefit from replacement doses of corticosteroids. The GDG’s view was that low (physiological doses) would be safe in this group. The dosage recommended by the GDG was based on adult studies,143 which demonstrated the effectiveness of doses of 200-300 mg daily, corresponding to a dosage of 0.25mg/m² (with body surface area as the...
Recommendations

Do not treat children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia with high-dose corticosteroids (defined as dexamethasone 0.6 mg/kg/day or an equivalent dose of other corticosteroids).

In children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia and shock that is unresponsive to vasoactive agents, steroid replacement therapy using low-dose corticosteroids (hydrocortisone 25 mg/m² four times daily) should be used only when directed by a paediatric intensivist.

Research recommendations

How effective is steroid replacement treatment in children and young people with vasoressor-unresponsive shock caused by septicaemia, including meningococcal septicaemia?

Why this is important

Well-conducted but relatively small randomised clinical trials involving adults only suggest that low-dose corticosteroid replacement treatment may ameliorate haemodynamic failure and inflammatory dysregulation associated with severe sepsis. Such treatment may also improve outcomes following septic shock. Severe sepsis in children and young people differs from that in adults in that multiple-organ dysfunction is less common in children and young people, and mortality is lower. A randomised controlled trial involving children and young people is needed to evaluate the effectiveness of corticosteroid replacement treatment. Studies involving adults only suggest that those with normal adrenal function have worse outcomes if they receive steroids than those with adrenal dysfunction, and so the proposed trial should consider whether testing for adrenal dysfunction before starting steroid replacement treatment improves outcomes.

6.9 Adjunctive therapies

Introduction

Despite effective immunisation against serogroup C meningococcus, meningococcal septicaemia and meningitis remain important causes of morbidity and mortality in children and young adults. Early recognition of disease, antibiotics, prompt treatment of shock and raised intracranial pressure, and supportive intensive care are the mainstays of treatment for meningococcal septicaemia. However, because of the continued high mortality associated with this disease, attempts to improve outcome have focused on the development of adjunctive treatments that may modulate the inflammatory process.

Improvements in understanding of the pathophysiology of sepsis have allowed the development of new therapies that aim to interrupt or limit the detrimental physiological changes that accompany severe sepsis and septic shock. In meningococcal septicaemia, most of these derangements are triggered by the presence of endotoxin in the bloodstream. In addition, endotoxin-mediated inflammation leads to severe endothelial cell dysfunction and abnormal clotting.

Activated protein C

---

65 The dosage given in the recommendation is based on high-quality evidence and is consistent with established clinical practice (see the full guideline for further details). The guideline will assume that prescribers will use a drug’s SPC to inform their decisions for individual patients. Hydrocortisone does not have UK marketing authorisation for use at the dose specified in the recommendation. Such use is an off-label use. Informed consent should be obtained and documented in line with normal standards in emergency care.
The sole adjunctive therapy for severe sepsis with high quality evidence to support a survival advantage is activated protein C (aPC). aPC is a natural anticoagulant that inactivates clotting factors Va and VIIIa. aPC is generated by interaction of a thrombin–protein C complex with thrombomodulin and the protein C receptor on the surface of the endothelial cell, and its function is dependent on circulating protein S. In sepsis, including meningococcal septicaemia, protein S and protein C levels are reduced, thrombomodulin expression is downregulated on endothelial cells, and endothelial protein C receptor expression is reduced. The net effect is deficiency of aPC.

The efficacy and safety of recombinant human aPC in adults with severe sepsis have been shown in a large multi-centre placebo-controlled trial in which aPC was associated with a reduction in mortality from 30.8% in the placebo group to 24.7% in the intervention group. However, the incidence of serious bleeding was higher in people treated with aPC. A subsequent study in adults at lower risk of death showed no benefit and a higher risk of severe bleeding in those treated with aPC compared with placebo.

**Bactericidal permeability-increasing protein**

Endotoxin is one of the most important bacterial components that contribute to the inflammatory process in meningococcal septicaemia. Levels of circulating endotoxin directly correlate with the severity of meningococcal disease, and with elaboration and release of inflammatory mediators. Circulating endotoxin is bound and neutralised by neutrophil granule proteins, including the bactericidal permeability-increasing protein (BPI). A recombinant form of BPI consisting of 21 amino acids of the N-terminal fragment of naturally occurring BPI (rBPI21) has been shown to function synergistically with antimicrobials in the killing of many bacteria, and to bind and neutralise endotoxin. This recombinant protein has been the subject of studies in children with severe meningococcal septicaemia.

**Clinical question**

What is the effect of experimental therapies in children and young people with suspected/confirmed meningococcal septicaemia?

**Previous UK guidelines**

The SIGN guideline on Management of Invasive Meningococcal Disease in Children and Young People recommends that activated protein C should not be used for the treatment of children with meningococcal sepsis.

**Studies considered in this section**

RCTs evaluating the effects of activated protein C and bactericidal permeability-increasing protein in children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal septicaemia were considered for this section. Where evidence in children with meningococcal septicaemia was lacking, RCTs of children and young people with septicaemia were reviewed. Studies involving adults were not considered for review.

**Overview of available evidence**

One RCT of activated protein C involving children with severe sepsis [EL=1+], and one RCT of bactericidal permeability-increasing protein involving children with meningococcal septicaemia [EL=1+] were reviewed.

**Review findings**

**Activated protein C**

One phase III multicentre and multinational RCT evaluated the safety and efficacy of recombinant activated protein C (aPC) in 477 children and young people aged between 38 weeks’ corrected age and 17 years with severe sepsis [EL=1+]. In total, 11% of children had meningococcal septicaemia. Patients were randomised to receive aPC (intravenous infusion of 24µg/kg/hour) for 96 hours or placebo. Because of the lower mortality rate of sepsis in children,
the study was not powered to show a benefit in mortality but measured time to complete organ
deficiency as a primary endpoint and surrogate for mortality. The RCT found no significant
difference between placebo and aPC in the time taken for resolution of organ failure (p=0.72). It
found no significant difference between placebo and aPC in mortality at 28 days (17.2% with
aPC versus 17.5% with placebo; RR 1.06, 95% CI 0.66 to 1.46, p=0.93). A post-hoc subgroup
analysis found a trend towards reduced mortality in children with disseminated intravascular
coagulopathy (14% with aPC versus 22% with placebo, p=0.05). An analysis of study-drug related
adverse events found a significantly increased risk of serious study-drug related bleeding events
in children given aPC compared with placebo over 28 days (p=0.04). More children given aPC
had CNS bleeding events over both follow-up periods. Overall, there was no significant
difference between the groups in severe bleeding events during the 6-day drug-infusion period
(p=0.83) or over the 28-day study period (p=0.97). It was unclear how study-drug related
bleeding events were distinguished from other serious bleeding events. A subgroup analysis
found that children younger than 60 days had a significantly increased risk of serious adverse
events (p=0.03). The trial was suspended for futility at the second planned interim analysis.

Bactericidal permeability-increasing protein

One double blind phase III RCT conducted in the UK and the United States assessed the effects
of recombinant bactericidal permeability-increasing protein (rBPI) in 393 children and young
people with severe systemic meningococcal disease [EL=1+]171. Patients aged from 12 weeks to
18 years were randomised to receive rBPI21 (2 mg/kg over 30 minutes followed by 2 mg/kg over
24 hours) or placebo (human albumin solution). The study found no significant difference
between placebo and rBPI21 in mortality at 60 days (OR 1.31, 95% CI 0.62 to 2.74, p=0.48). As
18% of children died before completing the study drug infusion, an analysis of children who
survived to complete study drug infusion was performed. The RCT found a lower mortality in the
rBPI21 treated group (2%) compared with the placebo group (6%), but the difference was not
statistically significant (p=0.07). Fewer children given rBPI21 had multiple severe amputations
compared with placebo. This difference did not reach statistical significance (OR 2.47, 95% CI
0.94 to 6.51, p=0.067). The RCT found that rBPI21 significantly increased the proportion of children
with a functional outcome at 60 days similar to that before illness (OR 1.75, 95% CI 1.08 to 2.82,
p=0.019). Because the trial was underpowered to detect significant differences in the primary
outcome of mortality at 60 days, a composite endpoint that included data on morbidity was
introduced. However the authors acknowledged that the composite endpoint was
methodologically flawed and these data are not included in the guideline appraisal.

Evidence statement

Activated protein C

No RCTs have been conducted assessing the effects of activated protein C in children with
meningococcal septicaemia. There is insufficient evidence to assess the efficacy of activated
protein C in children and young people with severe sepsis, and the limited available evidence
raises concerns about safety, particularly in infants younger than 60 days.

Bactericidal permeability-increasing protein

There is insufficient evidence to assess the effects of recombinant bactericidal permeability-
increasing protein in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

The lack of a beneficial effect noted in the single study of activated protein C in children and
the concerns raised over risk of bleeding in young infants indicate that activated protein C
should not be used in meningococcal septicaemia.

There is insufficient evidence to recommend the use of recombinant bactericidal permeability-
increasing protein in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia and the
GDG considered that further investigation of this therapy is required.
Recommendation

Do not use activated protein C or recombinant bacterial permeability-increasing protein in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia.

Research recommendations

Do anticoagulant and anti-inflammatory treatments such as activated protein C improve outcomes in children and young people with disseminated intravascular coagulation and severe sepsis, including meningococcal septicaemia?

Why this is important

Given the possibility of an improvement in outcomes in children and young people with septic shock and disseminated intravascular coagulation following treatment with activated protein C, and positive results reported in adults with septic shock, a randomised controlled trial to evaluate the effectiveness of activated protein C in children and young people with severe sepsis and disseminated intravascular coagulation is needed.

Does early intervention with anti-endotoxin treatments such as recombinant bactericidal permeability-increasing protein improve outcomes in children and young people with severe meningococcal septicaemia?

Why this is important

Disease progression in meningococcal septicaemia is rapid and so anti-endotoxin treatment is likely to be effective only if it is given early in the course of disease. A multi-centre randomised controlled trial involving children and young people with severe sepsis reported that the mean time of delivery of recombinant bactericidal permeability-increasing protein rBPI21 was 5.9 hours after receiving initial antibiotic treatment. The results of the trial suggest that rBPI21 might be more effective if given earlier in the course of the disease, such as when children are first diagnosed and treated in the emergency department, or within 2 hours of giving intravenous antibiotics. A further randomised controlled trial is needed to evaluate the effectiveness of such practice in children and young people with severe meningococcal septicaemia.

6.10 Severity scoring systems

Introduction

Severity scoring systems comprise a number of clinical features and investigation results, which together generate a score; children with a higher score have a higher risk of mortality (or morbidity). Many scoring systems have been developed specifically for assessment of children with meningococcal disease, although not all scores have been scientifically derived or validated. These scoring systems are generally used after a diagnosis of meningococcal disease has been made or strongly suspected to identify children at high risk and select them for further treatment or higher level care (such as paediatric intensive care). Scores that are based on clinical features of meningococcal disease can be generated early in the course of the disease and can theoretically influence clinical management. Severity scores that incorporate results of laboratory investigations have the advantage of using more specific indicators of inflammation, but the time delay in obtaining results from the laboratory makes them less useful in a rapidly evolving clinical scenario.

The PN product (the product of platelet and neutrophil counts) can discriminate between survivors and non-survivors of meningococcal disease, but needs further validation.\textsuperscript{153} It is not a recognised severity scoring system and therefore was not considered in this review.

Other scoring systems used for general clinical management of ill children or the identification of children who may have meningococcal disease or meningitis are not included in this review.
Clinical question

In children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal disease, does the use of severity scoring systems affect outcomes or management?

Previous UK guidelines

The SIGN guideline on Management of Invasive Meningococcal disease in Children and Young People recommends that children with invasive meningococcal disease should have sequential documentation of the GMSPS and that any deterioration should be discussed with intensive care.26

Studies considered in this section

All study designs evaluating the role of severity scoring systems in children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal disease were considered for this section. Studies of adults only were excluded. Studies describing the initial development of a score, retrospective studies in which investigator blinding to outcome was not reported, and studies that included less than 40 participants were excluded from the review. Studies conducted solely in tertiary care were excluded from the review.

Overview of available evidence

No studies were found that addressed whether using severity scoring systems altered the management or the outcome of children and young people with meningococcal disease.

Two cohort studies [EL=II and EL=III] were identified evaluating the accuracy of different scoring systems in predicting mortality in secondary care.

Review findings

One prospective cohort study compared the performance characteristics of the GMSPS with nine other severity scores (Stokland, Stiehm and Damrosch, Ansari, Niklasson, Leclerc, Kahn and Blum, Lewis, Istanbul and Bjark), and with laboratory markers of severe disease [EL=II].154. The study involved 278 children younger than 16 years admitted to six hospitals in the UK with confirmed (73%) or suspected meningococcal disease (1988–1990 and 1992–1994). The GMSPS was recorded on admission and repeated if the child’s condition deteriorated. If a GMSPS ≥8 was recorded, transfer to PICU was suggested. These patients comprised approximately 30% of the total with meningococcal disease. Overall mortality in the study was 9.4%. The study found that a GMSPS ≥8 had a sensitivity of 100%, specificity of 75%, a positive likelihood ratio of 4.2, and a positive predictive value for mortality of 29%. The GMSPS correlated significantly with laboratory markers of severity, including endotoxin and cytokine levels (p<0.0001). Of the nine other severity scores, the Lewis, Istanbul and Ansari scores had sensitivities of 100%, with positive likelihood ratios ranging from 2.4 to 6.7 (see table 6.4). The GMSPS was noted to be the only score that could be derived using clinical criteria alone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Score threshold</th>
<th>Lewis ≥2</th>
<th>Istanbul ≥5</th>
<th>GMSPS ≥8</th>
<th>Ansari ≥3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUC</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Se (%)</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sp (%)</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPV (%)</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPV (%)</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ve LR</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>2.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.4 Performance characteristics of scores predicting mortality in secondary care154
One combined prospective and retrospective study compared the prognostic accuracy of eight meningococcal-specific scoring systems (the GMSPS, MenOPP bedside clinical (MOC) score of Gedde Dahl, Stiehm, Niklasson, Leclerc, Garlund, Tesoro and Tüysüz scores) [EL=III].

The study involved 125 children younger than 17 years admitted to a University hospital in the Netherlands with culture-proven meningococcal disease (1986–1994). Mortality was 21%. The study found that the overall discriminative ability of the GMSPS was significantly better than eight scores (area under the ROC curve (AUC) for competitor scores ranged from 0.74 to 0.83; comparisons with GMSPS: p<0.01 to p=0.03). The ability of the GMSPS to discriminate between survivors and non survivors was better than the MOC score but, for this comparison, the difference was not statistically significant (AUC 0.925 for GMSPS versus 0.87 for MOC score; p=0.19; no CIs reported). When the base deficit was omitted from the GMSPS, the AUC remained high (AUC=0.92). The external validity of the study was limited by its restriction to one hospital site and by the exclusion of children with unproven meningococcal disease.

**Evidence statement**

No studies were found examining whether using severity scoring systems altered the management or the outcome of children and young people with meningococcal disease.

Two studies conducted in secondary care showed that several meningococcal-specific severity scores, including the GMSPS, had good performance characteristics for predicting death from meningococcal disease.

**GDG interpretation of the evidence**

There is no evidence to show that severity scoring systems alter the outcome of children and young people with meningococcal disease.

The GDG agreed that scoring systems (most often, and best, GMSPS) may be clinically useful for severity assessment in meningococcal disease as part of local management arrangements and in conjunction with discussion about transfer to tertiary PICU care.

Severity scoring systems can be used in secondary or tertiary care to stratify children with meningococcal disease for purposes of research. Children who have a higher risk of mortality can then be entered into trials of new management or treatment. In secondary care, the GMSPS can be used for this purpose.

In severe meningococcal disease the priority is to manage airway, breathing and circulation, regardless of mortality/severity predictors from GMSPS or other scoring systems.

The GDG considers that there is insufficient evidence to recommend change of current clinical practice around use of severity scoring systems in meningococcal disease.

**Recommendations**

Monitor children and young people with meningococcal disease closely after admission to hospital for signs of deterioration.

Be aware that children and young people with meningococcal disease can deteriorate rapidly, regardless of the results of any initial assessment of severity.

**Research recommendations**

Are severity scoring systems useful for directing clinical management of suspected or confirmed meningococcal disease in children and young people?

**Why this is important**

Scoring systems are used widely in clinical research to classify the severity of suspected or confirmed meningococcal disease in children and young people. They are also used in clinical practice in some areas of the UK. Such systems can be applied relatively easily at presentation, and sequentially thereafter. If severity...
scoring systems can be used to identify changes in clinical condition that would
direct clinical management to improve outcomes they could have widespread
applicability in clinical practice. Studies are, therefore needed to evaluate the
usefulness of severity scoring systems for meningococcal disease in children and
young people. The outcomes evaluated in the studies should include mortality and
morbidity; they could also include satisfaction with care among children and young
people, their parents or carers and other family members.

6.11 Retrieval and transfer to tertiary care

Introduction

The majority of children with suspected or confirmed meningococcal disease are initially treated
at their local district general hospital. Due to the potential for clinical instability and the need for
escalation in treatment, these children often require transfer to a regional PICU for ongoing
management. Aggressive early treatment of meningococcal disease can reduce mortality
however this relies on prompt recognition and treatment and appropriate ongoing intensive
care management. Initial resuscitation and stabilisation will take place in the hospital where the
child presents, however some children will require transfer to a regional PICU. These children
require a secure airway, mechanical ventilation, central venous and arterial access for drug
therapy and cardiovascular monitoring. Due to the potential instability of these children and the
significant interventions required, specialist paediatric retrieval teams have been established in
the UK over recent years with the aim of optimising the outcome of critically ill children who
require transfer to a regional PICU.

The GDG reviewed the evidence to provide guidance on the use of specialist paediatric
transport teams to improve the outcome of children with meningococcal disease.

Clinical question

Do specialist transport teams improve outcomes and/or reduce adverse incidents during the
transfer of children with meningococcal disease?

Previous UK guidelines

No previous guidelines were identified in relation to this question.

Studies considered in this section

All study designs evaluating specialist paediatric transport teams were considered for inclusion in
this section.

Studies of children with meningococcal disease were included or studies of children with critical
illness where the majority of the sample had meningococcal disease.

Overview of available evidence

Two studies were included in the review, both of which were conducted in the UK (London) and
were descriptive studies [EL=3]. No comparative studies were identified which evaluated the
outcomes of a specialist paediatric transfer team.

A prospective descriptive study was conducted to evaluate morbidity and severity of illness
during interhospital transfer of critically ill children by a specialised paediatric retrieval team [EL=3].
The study involved 51 critically ill children (24 [47%] with meningococcal disease) transferred to a paediatric unit. The retrieval team consisted of a paediatric intensivist (senior registrar or consultant) and an experienced intensive care nurse. Two children had preventable
deterioration during transport (including one child with meningococcal shock who developed
hypo-glycaemia). On admission and before retrieval the severity of illness (PRISM) score
decreased in 28 children and was unchanged in 23 (median (range) difference: 1.0 (0 to 24);
p<0.001). During stabilisation and transfer the PRISM score decreased in 34 children, was
unchanged in 11 and increased in 6 (median (range) difference: 3.0 (-6 to 17); p<0.001.
Interventions undertaken by the specialist retrieval team included: endotracheal intubations/
reintubation 57% (n=29); establishing central venous access 87% (n=32); establishing arterial access 63% (n=32); colloid therapy 70% (n=28) and vasoactive therapy 27% (n=6).

A retrospective case series with historical comparison between years of data collection was conducted to investigate the effect on patient outcome of a new PICU specialising in meningococcal disease and a specialist transport service delivering mobile intensive care [EL=3]. Findings were based on data collected for children admitted between June 1992 to Dec 1997 with confirmed diagnosis of meningococcal disease or with clinical features of meningococcal disease and no confirmed alternative diagnosis (n=331). Septicaemia was the principal diagnosis in 281 cases. The case fatality rate compared with the PRISM predicted fatality rate by year was reported shown in table 6.5.

Table 6.5 Observed and predicted fatality rates from meningococcal disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Observed fatality rate</th>
<th>PRISM predicted fatality rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>% (n)</td>
<td>% (n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1992/3</td>
<td>22% (10)</td>
<td>32% (14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1994</td>
<td>13% (5)</td>
<td>32% (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1995</td>
<td>11% (8)</td>
<td>25% (18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1996</td>
<td>10% (8)</td>
<td>26% (21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1997</td>
<td>2% (2)</td>
<td>34% (34)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Logistic regression analysis controlling for disease severity (PRISM score), age and sex showed the overall reduction in odds of risk of death 1992-1997 as 59% (OR for yearly trend 0.41, 95% CI 0.27 to 0.62). The findings from the study were complicated by two trials of treatments for meningococcal disease running during the study period. The effects of these trials are controlled for statistically in the analysis using a logistic regression model. There was no significant reduction in the rate of complications following meningococcal disease (amputations/skin grafting: 1992-5 =5.8% versus 1996-7 =5.5%; neurological abnormality: 1992-5 =9.7% versus 1996-7 =7.3%). This is an evaluative description of the impact of a multifactorial intervention including the paediatric specialist transport service and a PICU specialising in the care of children with meningococcal disease. From these data it is not possible to conclude which of these components has the greater impact on outcomes.

Evidence summary

No studies were found which compared outcomes from a specialist paediatric transfer team with an alternative transfer method.

Findings from a UK descriptive study showed that a specialist paediatric transfer team can effectively stabilise and safely transfer critically ill children. A second UK descriptive study showed a decrease in mortality over time following establishment of a specialist paediatric transfer team and a PICU specialising in care of children with meningococcal disease.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

There is limited evidence specifically focusing on the transfer of children with meningococcal disease. Evidence suggests that the transfer of critically ill children from a district general hospital to a tertiary referral centre by specialist paediatric retrieval team provides safe transfer for all critically ill children, including those with meningococcal disease.

The GDG recognised that the evidence was limited and studies included were from one UK city. Regional PICUs across the UK have over recent years established retrieval services to provide specialist transfer for all critically ill children from district general hospitals to PICUs. Personnel involved in these teams include medical and nursing staff with specialist knowledge and skills in caring for critically ill children.

Although the use of specialist retrieval teams to transfer children with meningococcal disease from district general hospitals to PICUs has helped contribute to an improved outcome for these children, the GDG recognised that this improvement has been multi-factorial. Improved media
publicity, improved district general hospital recognition, management and liaison with regional PICUs as well as specialist retrieval teams and the expansion of PICUs across the UK have assisted in this improvement.

**Recommendations**

Children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal disease who need resuscitation should be discussed with a paediatric intensivist as soon as possible.

Transfer of children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal disease to tertiary care should be undertaken by an experienced paediatric intensive care retrieval team comprising medical and nursing staff.

Healthcare professionals involved in the treatment of seriously ill children and young people should be trained in the recognition and management of meningococcal disease.
7 Long-term management

Introduction

Following bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease, there is a wide and varied range of potential long-term sequelae. Although the majority of children and young people recover completely, some are left with disabilities and more subtle problems that can have profound effects on their lives and the lives of their families.

The incidence, type and severity of sequelae is influenced by the infecting organism, the age of the child, and severity of the acute illness, but it can nevertheless be difficult to predict which children will develop sequelae. The potential impact of the illness is further complicated by the fact that some sequelae may not become apparent until months or years after the acute illness.

It is important for clinicians planning discharge of children after bacterial meningitis or meningococcal disease to understand typical patterns of recovery, potential sequelae, and specific recommendations for follow up assessment and treatment, particularly for assessments and treatments that are time-critical. This is also important for GPs who may need to refer children who later develop sequelae back into specialist care. Parents and young people need to understand these issues so that they are empowered to seek care and support as needs arise.

7.1 Long-term effects of bacterial meningitis

Clinical question

What proportion of children and young people with bacterial meningitis develop physical and psychological morbidity?

Previous UK guidelines

No previous UK guideline was identified that addressed this clinical question.

Studies considered for this review

Papers published since 1995 were considered for inclusion in this review. Studies of children, or those involving predominantly children, or where children were identified as a separate subgroup were included. The specific outcomes of interest were: visual impairment, hearing loss, psychosocial/behavioural problems, mobility/ambulation, post-traumatic stress disorder, educational achievement, speech, cognition, pain, quality of life, hydrocephalus, epilepsy and cerebral palsy.

Overview of available evidence

Four studies looked at data from a large cohort of children in England Wales who had meningitis in the first year of life. One of these aimed to compare the sequelae at five years of children who had had bacterial meningitis with matched controls. Three studies looked at data from a large cohort of Dutch children. These three studies aimed to determine the occurrence of educational, behavioural and general health problems. An additional 11 cohort studies and five case series looked at various long-term outcomes of bacterial meningitis.

Review Findings

Four studies were conducted on a cohort of children in England and Wales. The first cohort study from England and Wales aimed to compare the sequelae at 5 years of children who had had meningitis in their first year of life with matched controls. The study had
participation from parents and GPs of 1485 meningitis survivors and 1391 controls matched for age and sex from the same GP list. 

H. influenzae (26%), N. meningitidis (25%) and S. pneumoniae (9%) made up the majority of cases. E. coli and Group B streptococcus were present in 4% and 6% of cases respectively. GPs completed a questionnaire on developmental problems and seizure disorders. Parents completed a questionnaire on the child's health, development and learning. There was a significant relative risk for learning difficulties (RR 7.0; CI 95%, 4.1 to 11.8), neuromotor disabilities (RR 8.6; CI 95% 4.9 to 15.2), seizure disorders (RR 2.7; CI 95% 1.9 to 3.9), hearing problems (RR 1.9; CI 95% 1.6 to 2.2), sensorineural hearing loss (RR 22.8; CI 95% 7.22 to 72.1), ocular or visual disorders (RR 3.4; CI 95% 2.6 to 4.6), speech and/or language problems (RR 3.5; CI 95% 2.8 to 4.6) and behavioural problems (RR 3.6; CI 95% 2.6 to 4.9). Cerebral palsy was reported in 79 of the 1485 (5.3%) meningitis survivors compared to 2 of the 1391 (0.1%) matched controls, but it was not reported whether this was significant. Children with Group B streptococcus showed the highest proportion of disability, with 31% of children developing a severe or moderate disability and 51% developing no disability. In cases of S. pneumoniae and E. coli, 24% developed a severe or moderate disability, although half of the children showed no disability. In cases of Haemophilus influenzae, 11% developed a moderate or severe disability, with 57% not developing a disability. In cases of N. meningitidis, 9% of children developed a severe or moderate disability and 61% did not develop a disability. The rate of severe or moderate disability in other Gram-positive bacteria cases was 48%, with 35% showing no disability. The authors of the study note that the data used was from 1985-1987, before the Hib vaccine was routinely used.

The second cohort study based on the same population aimed to assess how meningitis in the first year of life affects teenage behaviour. Seven hundred and thirty-nine cases and 288 age and sex matched controls from the same GP list were used. The mean age was 13.3 years (SD 0.4 years). The incidence of each strain of meningitis was not specified. A postal questionnaire was used, with questions on emotional symptoms, conduct problems, hyperactivity, peer problems and prosocial behaviour as well as the impact of the child's behaviour on the family or classroom. The meningitis group was split into complicated meningitis (one of more of the following: meningitis diagnosed prior to 28 days old, birth weight less than 2kgs, coma, convulsions, hydrocephalus, a temperature above 40°C, ventriculitis or relapse) or uncomplicated meningitis. Comparing meningitis to controls, there was a significant relative risk for an abnormal score on total deviance in both complicated and uncomplicated meningitis from parents (RR 2.18; CI 95% 1.77 to 2.68; and RR 1.79; CI 95% 1.44 to 2.22 respectively) and teachers (RR 1.62; CI 95% 1.27 to 2.08; and RR 1.45; CI 95% 1.13 to 1.86). There was also a significant relative risk for an abnormal score on impact (a measure of the child’s burden on parents or teachers) in both complicated and uncomplicated meningitis from parents (RR 2.46; CI 95% 1.78 to 3.39 respectively) and from teachers (RR 1.59; CI 95% 1.25 to 2.03; and RR 1.44; CI 95% 1.13 to 1.84 respectively). There was also a significant decrease in relative risk in all meningitis survivors compared to controls for a normal score in social skills from parents (RR 0.82; CI 95% 0.73 to 0.91) and teachers (RR 0.88; CI 95% 0.80 to 0.98). The authors note, however, that there were several pieces of data missing, including 129 controls’ teacher ratings for total deviance, and 139 controls’ teacher ratings for impact. The authors note that this study was conducted prior to the Hib vaccine.

The third cohort study based on the same population aimed to assess whether meningitis in the first year of life adversely affects academic achievement at age 16. Four hundred and sixty cases and 288 age and sex matched controls from the same GP list were used from across England and Wales. The incidence of each strain of meningitis was not specified. Pupils were asked to list all the GCSE examinations they have taken, with grades. One hundred and seventeen (25.4%) survivors and 19 (4.1%) controls achieved no passes at GCSE, 105 (22.8%) survivors and 41 (14.2%) controls achieved between 1 and 4 passes, 198 (43.0%) survivors and 189 (65.6%) controls achieved between 5 and 10 passes, and 40 (8.7%) survivors and 39 (13.5%) controls achieved more than 10 passes at GCSE. There was a significant difference in the mean number of GCSE passes between the two groups in comprehensive schools (5.05, SD 4.1; versus 6.88, SD 3.5; p<0.0001), but this difference was not significant in independent or grammar schools. However, the greatest differences between survivors and controls were among those who passed fewer than five GCSEs (in comprehensive schools, 36...
versus 11) and these were not represented in independent or grammar schools, where only 1 survivor and no controls achieved less than five GCSEs. The authors note that this study was conducted prior to the introduction of the Hib vaccine.

The fourth study6 [EL=2+] aimed to determine the prevalence of serious sequelae among a national cohort of 5 year old children who had had neonatal meningitis. One hundred and sixty six children in the cohort had complete questionnaires at follow up. One hundred and nine GP controls matched for sex and age and 191 hospital controls matched for gestational age, birth weight, sex and age were also used. The mean age at follow up was 63.4 months in survivors, 69.3 months in GP controls and 63.4 months in hospital controls. No disability was found in 51% of survivors, 71% of GP controls and 63% of hospital controls. Mild disability was found in 26% of survivors, 27% of GP controls and 30% of hospital controls. 18% of survivors, 2% of GP controls and 5% of hospital controls had a moderate disability. 5% of survivors and hospital controls but no GP controls had a severe disability at follow up. There was a statistically significant difference between survivors and GP controls for a severe or moderate disability (OR 16.4, 95% CI 4.1-142.7, p<0.0001) and hospital controls (OR 3.9, 95% CI 2.0-8.1, p<0.0001). A Statement of Special Educational Needs was significantly more common among survivors than either GP controls (OR 4.9, 95% CI 1.1-45.4, p<0.05) or hospital controls (OR 3.4, 95% CI 1.1-12.4, p<0.05). Behaviour problems were found in 38% of survivors, 27% of hospital controls and 17% of GP controls. Sensorineural hearing loss was found in 3% of survivors, no GP controls and 1% of hospital controls whilst conductive hearing loss was reported in 13% of survivors, 8% of GP controls and 7% of hospital controls. Cerebral palsy was reported in 15 (9%) survivors compared to 5 (3%) hospital controls (p<0.01, OR 3.7 CI 95% 1.2-13.3) and no GP controls. Hydrocephalus was present in 14 (8%) of survivors and 5 (3%) of hospital controls (p<0.002, OR 8.7 95% CI 1.9 to 79.7) and no GP controls. No children were blind. 4 (2%) survivors, 3 (2%) hospital controls and no GP controls had epilepsy (p values not reported). 41 cases of meningitis were caused by Group B streptococcus, of which 39% had no disability, 27% had a mild disability, 29% had moderate disability and 5% had a severe disability. E coli and other Gram-negative bacteria were responsible for 20 cases, 50% of which had no disability, 20% had mild disability, 25% had moderate disability and 5% had severe disability.

Three studies were conducted on a Dutch cohort. The first cohort study7 [EL=2+] aimed to determine the occurrence of educational, behavioural and general health problems in Dutch school age survivors of bacterial meningitis. The study looked at 680 survivors of bacterial meningitis and 304 controls (235 siblings, 64 close friends, 5 of unknown relationship). There was a significant difference between the median age of the survivors (8.5 years, ranging from 4.3 to 13.6 years) and of the controls (9.1 years, ranging from 3.2-14.9 years) (p<0.01). Hearing problems were reported by parents and further details regarding the type or severity of problems was not provided, but there was a significant difference in the number of survivors and controls reported to have hearing problems (7% versus 1%, p<0.001). Perfect health was also reported by parents, with 47% of survivors and 70% of controls being reported as such (p<0.001). There was a significant difference between survivors and controls on a score for behavioural problems (FS-II score, 84.6 versus 89.9, p<0.001 adjusted for gender and age). This score did not differ significantly with age at the onset of bacterial meningitis (≤ 1 month old at onset= 84.1 versus >1 month old at onset= 84.6, p>0.5 adjusted for age and gender). In terms of school achievement, there was a significant difference in the number of survivors and controls who would be repeating their kindergarten year (55/111 survivors (50%) versus 9/25 controls (36%), p<0.001). There was an odds ratio of 2.5 comparing the number having to repeat a year at school for survivors and controls (16% versus 8%). Comparing S. pneumoniae survivors to N. meningitidis survivors resulted in an OR of 0.7 (12% versus 18%). There was an odds ratio of 5.6 (adjusted for age and gender) between survivors and controls for deficient school achievement (20% survivors versus 5% controls). The odds ratio for deficient school achievement between S. pneumoniae survivors and N. meningitidis survivors was 1.3 (22% versus 19% respectively). The odds ratio for concentration problems between groups was 5.7 (22% survivors versus 5% controls) and for S. pneumoniae compared to N. meningitidis survivors it was 1.3 (23% versus 21%). The odds ratio for hyperactive behaviour was lower, at 1.8 (29% survivors versus 17% controls), and between S. pneumoniae and N. meningitidis survivors it was 1.1 (31% versus 29%). An odds ratio...
The second cohort study\(^1\) \([\text{EL}=2+]\) aimed to establish the incidence of sensorineural hearing loss in children who had survived non-Hib bacterial meningitis. Cases of meningitis caused by Hib \((n=117)\) or rare pathogens \((n=4)\), and those secondary to immunodeficiency state \((n= 84)\) were excluded. Three hundred and ninety-five children who had hearing evaluated as part of the routine follow up of meningitis were included in the study, out of a larger cohort of 628. The mean age at infection was 2.4 years and at follow up it was 11.7 years. Hearing loss was detected within 6 months of meningitis in all but two children. Forty-three \((11\%)\) survivors had hearing loss, with 5 children \((1\%)\) receiving cochlear implants. There was a significant difference in the number of children with hearing loss between different causative agents \((n=628, p<0.001)\), although only 395 \((63\%)\) of these children had their hearing evaluated. \(S.\) pneumoniae accounted for 49\% of the children with hearing loss, but only 14\% of the children without hearing loss. Neisseria meningitidis was responsible for 47\% of the hearing loss cases, and 81\% of cases with no hearing loss. Escherichia coli caused 5\% of the hearing loss cases, and 1\% of those without hearing loss. Neither Group B streptococcus nor \(L.\) monocytogenes caused any cases of hearing loss, and only 3\% and 1\% of the cases with no hearing loss respectively.

The third cohort study\(^1\) \([\text{EL}=2+]\) aimed to describe health related quality of life of survivors of meningitis. One hundred and eighty-two non-Hib meningitis survivors were included along with 353 controls representative of the Dutch school-age population. The mean age at infection was 2.4 years \((\text{range} 0.1 \text{ to } 9.5 \text{ years})\), and follow up was 5 to 10 years after meningitis. Only those without severe sequelae were included. Neisseria meningitidis caused 78\% of the cases and \(S.\) pneumoniae a further 16\%. Group B streptococcus was responsible for 3\%, Escherichia coli for 2\% and \(L.\) monocytogenes for 1\%. There was no significant difference between survivors and controls on scores of emotional/behavioural functioning \((96.7 \text{ versus } 97.9, \text{effect size}=0.10, p=0.17)\), general behaviour \((76.3 \text{ versus } 78.5, \text{effect size}=0.11, p=0.09)\), impact on parental emotions \((82.8 \text{ versus } 86.3, \text{effect size}=0.15, p=0.02)\) or time \((94 \text{ versus } 94, \text{effect size}=0, p=0.98)\), or on an overall score of health related quality of life \((0.93 \text{ versus } 0.92, \text{effect size}= -0.03, p=0.34)\). There was no significant difference on scores of mobility \((1 \text{ versus } 1, p=0.14)\) and the difference in scores for cognition was borderline in terms of significance \((0.96 \text{ versus } 0.97, p=0.05)\). However there was a significant difference between survivors and controls on scores for pain \((0.99 \text{ versus } 0.99, p=0.05)\). These figures may not be representative of all survivors of bacterial meningitis, as it only includes those who had no severe sequelae at discharge from hospital.

A cohort study\(^1\) \([\text{EL}=2+]\) conducted in England aimed to estimated the overall long-term health related quality of life implications of meningitis in childhood. This study only looked at children with pneumococcal meningitis, and was conducted in two areas of England. Seventy children aged five and over who had had pneumococcal meningitis, 61 sibling controls and 5 neighbourhood controls of similar age and same sex were involved in the study. Children over the age of 11 completed the HUI-3 for measuring health related to quality of life. Parents of children under 11 completed the questionnaire for them. Significant differences in mean scores were found for hearing \((0.930 \text{ versus } 0.996, p=0.005)\) and an overall score \((0.774 \text{ versus } 0.866, p=0.019)\). No significant differences were found in mean scores for vision \((0.981 \text{ versus } 0.992, p=0.434)\), speech \((0.976 \text{ versus } 0.995, p=0.248)\), ambulation \((0.986 \text{ versus } 1.000, p=0.333)\), dexterity \((1.000 \text{ versus } 1.000, p=1.000)\), emotion \((0.915 \text{ versus } 0.942, p=0.297)\), cognition \((0.871 \text{ versus } 0.916, p=0.167)\) or pain \((0.952 \text{ versus } 0.972, p=0.203)\). Univariate analyses were conducted for each attribute with no correction for multiple comparisons \((\text{e.g.}\ \text{Bonferroni correction})\), and so the significance levels reported may over estimate the true effects. Also, the significance of the overall score probably reflects the effect of hearing.

A prospective cohort study\(^1\) \([\text{EL}=2+]\) conducted in Australia aimed to investigate long-term neurobehavioural outcomes from childhood bacterial meningitis. The study involved 130 cases and 130 controls at a 7 year follow up, with 109 cases and 96 controls at a 12 year follow up. The cases were children aged 3 months to 14 years with bacterial meningitis and the controls were matched from the classroom of each case child or taken from another school in the same region. The large majority of the children had Hib \((78\%)\). \(S.\) pneumoniae \((11\%)\).
and N. meningitidis (5.5%) were the second two most prevalent types of meningitis. The Wechsler Intelligence Scales-III, Full Scale Intellectual Quotient and the Wide Range Achievement Test-3 were used to assess ability. There were significant differences between the group in verbal comprehension (95.0 versus 99.4, p=0.009), perceptual organisation (99.4 versus 103.6, p=0.029), reading ability (99.0 versus 104.3, p=0.007) and spelling (95.4 versus 101.3, p=0.002). There were no significant differences in full scale IQ (97.2 versus 101.6, p=0.10), freedom from distractibility (97.7 versus 99.7, p=0.323) or arithmetic (95.0 versus 97.4, p=0.146). The age at which children developed meningitis was not a significant predictor of long-term health related quality of life, although meningitis before 12 months of age was significantly related to poorer performance on tasks requiring language and executive skills.

A retrospective cohort study164 [EL=2+] conducted in The Netherlands aimed to evaluate the neurological outcome of meningitis in children. It studied 103 children aged 1 month to 15 years old with bacterial meningitis who presented at a hospital in the Netherlands. N. meningitidis (50%), S. pneumoniae (10%) and H. influenzae type B (33%) made up the majority of cases, with no pathogen identified in the remaining 8%. Clinical records were used to establish neurological and audiological sequelae. The median follow up time was 6.7 months. Two (2%) children had died. Of 13 children who had their persistent neurological sequelae assessed during follow up, 7 individuals had neurological sequelae, consisting of 5 cases of mental retardation, 3 cases of persistent palsy of the abducens nerve, 3 cases of locomotion deficits and 1 case of epilepsy. Of the 83 children whose hearing function was assessed at follow up, 7 individuals suffered hearing loss, with 1 child becoming deaf and 6 suffering from mild hearing loss.

A cohort study165 [EL=2+] conducted in The Netherlands aimed to examine behaviour problems, personality, self-perceived confidence and academic deficits in children who recovered from meningitis without obvious medical sequelae. The study involved 280 children with non-Hib bacterial meningitis. N. meningitidis (80%) and S. pneumoniae (14%) made up the majority of cases. The mean age at onset of meningitis was 2.4 years, and the mean age at follow up was 10 years. Parents completed part of the Child Behaviour Checklist and the Personality Questionnaire for Children. Children completed a Dutch adaptation of the Self-Perception Profile for Children and the Academic Achievement Test. There was a moderate deviation from normal in the total behavioural problem score (n=61, d=0.52, p<0.001). The estimated percentage of children with behaviour problems after surviving bacterial meningitis was 9%. Two hundred and fifty-eight (38%) children showed a deficit in writing to dictation, 159 (24%) showed a deficit in reading aloud, 116 (17%) showed a deficit in copying sentences and 222 (33%) showed a deficit in written arithmetic. One hundred and eighty-four (27%) children showed a deviation on at least 2 of these 4 academic deficit tasks.

A retrospective cohort study166 [EL=2+] conducted in Australia aimed to demonstrate whether one causative agent of meningitis is more likely to cause profound hearing loss and labyrinthitis officans. Data was gained from the Notifiable Diseases Database System of the New South Wales Health Department, the Australian National Centre for Immunisation Research and Surveillance of Vaccine Preventable Diseases and the Sydney Cochlear Implant Centre. A total of 1568 recorded cases of meningitis were found. Of all confirmed cases of meningitis, 80 (5.1%) were later cochlear implant patients. A causative agent (N. meningitidis, S. pneumoniae or Hib) could be confirmed from medial records for 35 cases of cochlear implants. N. meningitidis resulted in 56.9% of cases of meningitis and 11.4% of the cases of cochlear implants (incidence of cochlear implants in survivors of N. meningitidis = 0.4%). S. pneumoniae caused 41.1% of meningitis but 85.7% of the cochlear implants (incidence of cochlear implants in survivors of S. pneumoniae = 4.6%). Hib resulted in 1.9% of cases of meningitis and 2.9% of the cases of cochlear implants (incidence of implants in survivors of Hib = 3.2%). The mean age at time of deafness was 2 years and 9 months.

A prospective cohort study167 [EL=2+] conducted in Australia aimed to determine the outcomes of bacterial meningitis in school-age survivors. 158 survivors were studied, with 130 completing follow up (this resulted in 131 cases as one child had meningitis twice). Grade, sex and classroom matched controls were used. Ages ranged from 3 months to 14 years, with the median age at admission being 1 year and 5 months. Hib was responsible for 100 (76%) of the 131 cases, S. pneumoniae for 18 (14%) and N. meningitidis for 6 (5%). A significant difference in
the number of survivors and controls with a full scale IQ under 70 was found (11 versus 0, p<0.001). Although the significance was not reported, a difference was also found between groups for severe to profound deafness (3 versus 0). There were also differences between groups regarding the number of children with no problems (95 survivors versus 116 controls), one minor problem (e.g. IQ 70-80, mild to moderate deafness; 16 survivors, 14 controls) and more than one minor problem or at least one major problem (e.g. IQ<70, blindness, severe to profound deafness; 20 survivors versus 0 controls). Although significance was not reported, there was a difference in the incidence of spasticity (2% versus 0%), blindness (1% versus 0%), epilepsy (5% versus 0%) and VP shunt (2% versus 0%) between survivors and controls.

A retrospective cohort study\textsuperscript{168} [EL=2+] conducted in Canada aimed to build predictive models of severe adverse outcomes of bacterial meningitis. One hundred and one cases of bacterial meningitis were reported, with a mean age at diagnosis of 10.8 days and all cases being diagnosed within the first 28 days of life. Premature babies (GA< 35 weeks) were excluded due to risk of pre-existing neurological complications. Outcome information was available for all survivors to 1 year of age, and the latest outcome information was 4 years. Group B streptococcus was the causative agent in nearly half of the cases (n= 50, 49.5%). Escherichia coli was responsible for 25 (24.8%) of cases, S. pneumoniae for 5 (5%) and Hib for 3 (3%). Development delay was reported in 10 cases (9.9%) and hearing loss in 1 (1%). Cerebral palsy was found in 1 (1%) of survivors, hemiparesis in 3 (3%) and blindness in 2 (2%). 3 (3%) also suffered from seizure disorder. There was no significant difference in age between those with a good outcome and those with an adverse outcome (11.2 days versus 9.1 days, p=0.314).

A cohort study\textsuperscript{169} [EL=2+] conducted in Australia aimed to determine whether the intellectual and cognitive impairments observed at seven years after bacterial meningitis persist into adolescence. One hundred and sixty-six children were involved in the original cohort, of which 130 (82%) were available at the first follow up (mean 6.7 years since meningitis) and 109 (66%) at second follow up (mean 11.5 years since meningitis). One hundred and thirty grade and sex matched controls were used at first follow up, and 96 (74%) were re-evaluated at second follow up. Ages ranged from 3 months to 14 years, with the mean age at first follow up being 8.4 years. At the second follow up, 29% of survivors and 11% controls had at least one minor impairment (e.g. IQ 70-80, educational deficit; OR 3.2, 95% CI 1.5 to 6.7) and 23% of survivors and 5% controls had at least one major impairment (e.g. IQ<70, severe-profound deafness >70dB) or more than one minor impairment (OR 5.4, CI 95% 2.0 to 14.3). Four percent of survivors and no controls had an IQ less than 70, and 5% of survivors and 3% of controls had an IQ between 70 and 80 (OR 3.2, 95% CI 1.5 to 6.7). Educational deficits were seen in 10% of survivors and 3% of controls (OR 3.5, CI 95% 1.0 to 15.9) and 7% of survivors and no controls were deaf (at 25-69 dB). 1 (1%) of survivors and no controls were blind, whilst 2 (2%) of survivors and no controls had VP shunt. Whilst 23% survivors and 7% controls had behaviour problems (OR 3.8, 95% CI 1.6 to 9.8), 62% of survivors and 89% of controls had no problems at the two year follow up (OR= 0.2, CI 95% 0.1 to 0.4). Overall, meningitis subjects were at substantially greater risk of an adverse outcome than controls (OR= 4.7, CI 95% 2.2 to 10.0).

A cohort study\textsuperscript{170} [EL=2+] aimed to quantify long term impairment after neonatal meningitis. One hundred and eleven survivors of neonatal meningitis; 113 hospital controls matched for sex, age and birthweight; and 49 GP controls born at term and matched for birth date and sex were included in the study. The mean age was 9.4 years. Children were excluded if their meningitis was caused by organisms other than Group B streptococcus. Gram-negative bacteria or L monocytogenes. Group B streptococcus accounted for the majority of the cases (n=49, 44%), of which 63.3% of the survivors had a normal outcome, 14.3% had a mild outcome, 8.1% moderate and 14.3% had a severe outcome. E coli affected 42 children, with 64.2% having a normal outcome, 21.4% mild, 9.6% moderate and 4.8% severe. L monocytogenes was responsible for 13 cases, with 76.9% having a normal outcome, 15.4% mild, 0% moderate and 7.7% severe. Gram-negative bacteria caused seven cases, with 30% having a normal outcome, 14% mild, 28% moderate and 28% severe. Survivors had a significantly lower IQ than hospital controls (88.8 versus 99.4, p<0.001) and than GP controls (88.8 versus 99.6, p<0.002). There was no significant difference between GP and hospital controls. There was a significant difference on scores of mobility between survivors (mABC score= 7.1) and hospital controls (mABC score= 5.0) (p=0.001) and GP controls (mABC score= 4.0) (p=0.003). A normal overall outcome was found in 63.1% of

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 161 of 244
survivors, 86.7% of hospital controls and 84% of GP controls. A mild overall outcome was found in
17.1% survivors, 11.5% of hospital controls and 16% of GP controls. A moderate overall outcome
was reported in 9% of survivors, 1.8% of hospital controls and no GP controls. 10.8% of survivors
had a severe overall outcome, whereas no hospital or GP controls did. Severe hearing loss in this
study was reported at >60dB.

A retrospective cohort study\textsuperscript{171} [EL=2+] conducted in Sweden aimed to investigate whether
children with bacterial meningitis without obvious neurological sequelae at discharge from
hospital have sequelae several years later. Three hundred and four survivors with sibling controls
were included. Controls were excluded if they had neurological impairment. Median age at
follow up was 9.6 years for survivors and 11 years for controls. H. influenzae was responsible for
85% of the cases, S. pneumoniae for 9% and N. meningitidis for 6%. There was a significant
difference between survivors and controls for hearing impairment as reported by parents (60
versus 5, \(p<0.001\)), but was no significant difference for inattention (11 versus 5, \(p=0.21\)) or for
hyperactivity-impulsiveness (11 versus 4, \(p=0.092\)). There was no significant difference between
survivors and controls for dizziness (9 versus 4, \(p=0.27\)), impaired vision (15% versus 16%, \(p=0.90\)) or
speech difficulties (7% versus 5%, \(p=0.60\)). There were, however, significant differences between
survivors and controls for balance impairment (6% versus 1%, \(p<0.001\)) and in the number of
individual symptoms of inattention (\(p<0.05\)) and hyperactivity-impulsiveness (\(p<0.01\)) reported.

A cohort study\textsuperscript{172} [EL=2+] aimed to investigate whether otitis media with effusion (OME) is the
mechanism of reversible hearing loss after meningitis. One hundred and twenty four children
with meningitis were included, along with 124 age and sex matched controls. 92 (74%) of the
cases were meningococcal meningitis. 9 (4%) survivors had conductive hearing loss (auditory
brainstem responses threshold of >dB HL) at discharge. 3 survivors regained their hearing after 9
months. There were no reports of acute otitis media in survivors or controls.

A case series\textsuperscript{173} [EL=3] conducted in the US aimed to describe the incidence of acute-phase
neurologic complications in a sample of 126 children with Hib meningitis. The mean age at
testing was 9.7 years (range 6 to 14 years). Only children who had had a single episode of Hib
meningitis, and were between the ages of 6 and 14 years at the time of testing, were included.
Data was collected from medical records, with some information provided by parents. The
mean duration since hospitalisation was 8.2 years (range 1 to 13 years). At follow up, 3 (2%)
children suffered from seizures, 15 (12%) had hearing loss, 2 (2%) had hemiparesis and 7% had
low IQ. 18% of survivors had deficits in reading, 19% in spelling and 20% in arithmetic. 15% of
survivors had repeated a grade at school, whilst 22% had a behaviour problem at school. 23%
had a behaviour problem at home.

A case series\textsuperscript{174} [EL=3] conducted in Canada aimed to establish the proportion of children who
develop sensorineural hearing loss after bacterial meningitis. Seventy nine children with a
confirmed causal agent of bacterial meningitis were studied. The majority of these children
(n= 58, 73.4%) were less than two years old. The causative agent in 29 of the 79 (36.7%) cases
was S. pneumoniae. N. meningitidis was responsible for 13 (16.5%) cases, and Group B
streptococcus for 12 (15.2%). H. influenzae caused 11 (13.9%) cases, and E. coli caused 7 (8.9%).
68 of the 79 children had an audiological assessment, at a mean of 13.2 days after admission
(±7.25 days) for those assessed as inpatients (n= 42, 61.7%) and 74.3 days (±13.8 days) after
discharge for those assessed as outpatients (n= 26, 38.3%). Some degree of hearing loss was
seen in 22 (32.3%) of the 68 children. Permanent sensorineural hearing loss was reported in 11
(64.7%) of the 17 children who were followed up, which is 16.1% of the children who underwent
an audiological assessment. A statistically significant association between S. pneumoniae
meningitis and sensorineural hearing loss was found (\(p<0.001\)) with no significant results for the
other pathogens.

A case series\textsuperscript{175} [EL=3] conducted in Australia aimed to gain information on the outcome of
pneumococcal meningitis to target vaccination strategies. Ninety four cases of meningitis were
included (93 children). The age of survivors ranged from 1 day to 16.5 years, with a median of
12.4 month. Three survivors who had meningitis as neonates were included in the study, and 67
(71.3%) of the children were under two years old at the onset of meningitis. All children had
microbiologically confirmed pneumococcal meningitis. Medical records were obtained 12 to
140 months after the diagnosis of meningitis. There were 8 meningitis related deaths and 1

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 162 of
unrelated death, leaving 85 survivors at follow up. 61 (72%) survivors had no apparent sequelae. 16 (19%) had severe sequelae and 8 (9%) had less severe sequelae. 17 (20%) survivors had some degree of hearing loss. There was no significant relationship between age at diagnosis and the risk of sensorineural hearing loss (p=0.43). 4 (5%) survivors had hemiparesis and 6 (7%) had quadraparesis. Seizure disorder was present in 12 (14%) survivors, and 4 (5%) had visual deficits.

A case series\textsuperscript{175} [EL=3] aimed to evaluate the outcome of invasive pneumococcal disease in children. 61 children with pneumococcal meningitis were included in the analysis. Ages ranged from 1 month to 16 years, with the majority of children being between 2 and 11 months old. At least one neurological sequela was found in 16 (26%) children, with 8 (13%) of these having multiple neurological deficits. Sensorineural hearing impairment was reported in 7 of the 51 (14%) children who had an auditory assessment. Six (10%) of survivors had cerebral palsy.

A case series\textsuperscript{174} [EL=3] conducted in Greece aimed to assess the long-term effects of pneumococcal meningitis. Sixty three children were included in the study, of which 47 children completed follow up and hospital records were used to establish sequelae in the other 16. Ages ranged from 1 month to 14 years (mean 2.6 years) and 55% of the children were less than one year old, with 70% being male. A diagnosis was established with a CSF culture of S. pneumoniae. Follow up took place 4 to 23 years after discharge, and children who died before follow up were excluded from the analysis. No complications were found in 33 (70%) of survivors. 14 (30%) had at least one defect, with 8 (17%) having a combination of complications. Mental retardation was found in 9 (19%) survivors and behavioural problems with marginal IQ in 1 (2%). Sensorineural hearing loss was present in 8 (17%) children, of which 4 cases were profound or severe and 4 were moderate or mild. Seizure disorder was reported in 15% of survivors and motor defect in 11%. Two percent of children had behaviour problems with marginal IQ and 2% had visual impairment.

**Evidence Statement**

Bacterial meningitis appears to have a significant relative risk for health, development, deviancy and burden on parents and/or teachers. Significant differences were found between meningitis survivors and controls in regards to hearing loss, quality of life, educational achievement, mobility, behaviour, pain, hydrocephalus, speech and cerebral palsy. Differences were also found between survivors and controls for spasticity, visual impairment, epilepsy, VP shunts and cognition, although these differences were not reported as being significant. Seizures were reported in some survivors, but the incidence was not compared to controls. The studies included in the review looked at data from a large cohort of bacterial meningitis sufferers in England and Wales, another large cohort in the Netherlands, as well as smaller cohorts and hospital records from the UK, the Netherlands, Australia, Canada, Greece, Sweden and the US. Where data by pathogen was available, Group B streptococcus appears to have the worst outcomes, with an average of 29% of survivors developing moderate or severe disabilities. An average of 22% of *S. pneumoniae* survivors developed moderate or severe disabilities and 4.7% required cochlear implants. An average of 19% of *E. coli* sufferers developed moderate or severe disabilities. Nine percent of *N. meningitidis* survivors developed severe or moderate disabilities, and 0.4% required cochlear implants. *H. influenzae* appeared to have the least damaging long term effects, with only 1% of survivors developing severe or moderate disabilities, and 3.2% requiring cochlear implants. See table 7.1 for a summary.

**Table 7.1 Summary of moderate or severe disability and cochlear implants by causative agent**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Organism</th>
<th>Survivors with Moderate or Severe Disability</th>
<th>Incidence of Cochlear Implant in Survivors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Group B streptococcus</td>
<td>29% (3 studies, 22-34%)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Streptococcus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pneumoniae</em></td>
<td>22% (2 studies, 19-24%)</td>
<td>4.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escherichia coli</td>
<td>19% (2 studies, 14-24%)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neisseria meningitidis</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemophilus influenzae</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>3.2%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ((October 2009)) Page 163 of 244
7.2 Long-term effects of meningococcal disease

Clinical question
What proportion of children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia develop physical and psychological morbidity?

Previous UK guidelines
The SIGN guideline on the management of invasive meningococcal disease in children and young people (2008) made the following recommendations regarding long term complications:

“All children who have had a diagnosis of meningitis should have their hearing tested to allow any therapies required to be started as early as possible.

“Children and families or carers of children who have survived invasive meningococcal disease should be made aware of potential long term complications of the disease.

“When assessing the follow-up needs of children with meningococcal disease healthcare professionals should consider the following potential morbidities:

- Hearing loss
- Neurological complications
- Psychiatric, psychosocial and behavioural problems
- Bone and joint complications, with awareness that these may not be apparent for many years after illness
- Post necrotic scarring with possible requirements for amputations and skin grafting. Long term follow-up may be needed for children for scar revision, surgical repair of deformities, leg length discrepancy, angular deformities and poorly fitting prosthesis
- Renal impairment, particularly in those who required renal replacement therapy during their acute illness.

“All children who have had meningococcal sepsis or meningitis should have a follow-up appointment and be carefully assessed for evidence of any immediate or potential long term complications.

“An individual care plan should be developed for each patient on leaving hospital.

“Healthcare professionals involved in the follow up of children with meningococcal disease need to be aware of the potential for post-traumatic stress disorder in both the children and their families and carers.”

Studies considered for this section
Papers published since 1994 were considered for inclusion in this review. Studies of children, or those involving predominantly children, or where children were identified as a separate subgroup undertaken in high income countries were included (Western Europe, North America, Australia and New Zealand). The specific outcomes of interest were: visual impairment, hearing loss, psychosocial/behavioural problems, mobility/ambulation, post-traumatic stress disorder, educational achievement, speech, cognition, pain, quality of life, hydrocephalus, epilepsy and cerebral palsy.

Overview of available evidence
One systematic review published in 2008 was identified for inclusion in this review. The review comprised 22 studies, mainly case series and single cohorts from both high income and low income countries. Data were collected between the years 1985 and 2002. The findings from high
income countries (n=9) were extracted for the current review. An additional 6 studies were also included, 1 descriptive survey [EL=3], 1 prospective cohort study [EL=2+], 3 retrospective cohort studies [EL=2+] and a case series [EL=3].

Review findings

The review findings will be presented for each of the major morbidities considered and the data synthesised where possible to give an approximation of the proportion of children who develop each of the sequelae discussed.

Hearing loss

A systematic review comprising 22 studies included 8 studies conducted in high income countries (n=1108 children surviving meningococcal disease) which reported hearing loss as an outcome [EL=3]. The timing of follow-up ranged from “more than 12 weeks following hospital discharge” to 12 years post discharge, although this is not reported clearly in all studies. Measures of hearing loss also differ between studies e.g. auditory brainstem response, play audiometry, and are not always fully described. Findings from these studies reported the rates of moderate to severe hearing loss as being between 1.9% and 15% (these figures both derived from Canadian studies).

A multicentre prospective survey [EL=3] (n=159 episodes of systemic meningococcal infections) carried out in the USA between 2001 and 2005 identified 14 cases of hearing loss (6 unilateral, 8 bilateral) in the 146 surviving children, an incidence of 9.6%. The timing of follow-up and measure of hearing loss used are not described.

The overall incidence of hearing loss based on all 7 studies is 4% (57/1369).

Orthopaedic complications including amputations

The same systematic review detailed above included 4 studies conducted in high-income countries that reported orthopaedic sequelae following meningococcal disease (total n=1159 children) [EL=3]. A case series described “skeletal, vascular or cutaneous sequelae” together, reporting an incidence of 40/122 (33%). The study reported amputations and cutaneous lesions requiring skin grafting and noted the need for longer-term follow-up of children requiring limb surgery in order to detect cases of growth arrest. Time to presentation of growth arrest was noted as being 2-9 years following discharge from hospital (median 4 years). A Canadian study included in the review reported 13/340 children requiring amputation. A further 5 orthopaedic sequelae were also described (3 children with permanent knee damage from septic arthritis, 1 with an ankylosing finger, 1 with reduced bone growth causing asymmetry of the legs). Two other studies only reported children requiring amputation with incidences of 1/407 and 7/151. The severity of amputations was only reported for one study where 4/13 amputations involved loss of part or all of at least one limb.

Four additional studies were identified that reported orthopaedic complications. A prospective survey conducted in the USA 2001-2005 [EL=3] identified 2/146 children requiring amputation (one all 4 limbs, one toes only).

A prospective cohort study [EL=2+] (Netherlands, data collection 2001-2005) described an incidence of 2/47 amputations (fingers), and one child with lower limb shortening with associated genu varum deformity.

A cohort study also conducted in the Netherlands (data collected 2005-2006 for children who were admitted with meningococcal disease 1988-2001) [EL=2+] reported 5/65 children undergoing amputation [EL=2+]. One child was found to have lower limb length discrepancy and one child had varus deformity of the right ankle.

A case series [EL=3] conducted in the Netherlands reported 8% of 120 children had amputation of extremities due to irreversible necrosis of tissue, and 6% had limb-length discrepancy.
The overall incidence of children requiring amputation across all studies is 3% (40/1415). The severity of amputations varies greatly between individuals, with most involving digits rather than limbs. The incidence of orthopaedic complications other than amputation is 3% (15/587).

**Skin complications including scarring**

Four studies included in the systematic review reported outcomes relating to skin complications and scarring [26 EL=3]. One of these studies reported cutaneous outcomes together with vascular and skeletal outcomes and is reported in the sub-section above. Two additional included studies report incidence of scarring as 32/471 children (Canada, data collection 1990-1994) and 16/407 (Eire, data collection 1995-2000). One study, of poorer quality, reported the need for skin grafting in 8/150 children.

In addition to the systematic review 4 studies were identified that reported cutaneous sequelae. The incidence of scarring (ranging from mild to severe) was reported as 33/65 children, with scarring most commonly found on limbs [184 EL=3] (Netherlands, data collection 1988-2001); 14/146 children, 4 of whom required skin grafting [180 EL=3]; 26/47 children [181 EL=2+] (Netherlands, data collection 2001-2005); and 58/120 children, with scarring most commonly found on legs [183].

The overall incidence of skin damage/scarring across all studies is 13% children (187/1406).

**Psychosocial complications**

Three included studies in the systematic review [26 EL=3] report psychosocial complications (total number of children involved =777). A retrospective cohort study included a self-completion quality of life (QoL) questionnaire (n=231 completed questionnaires). Twenty-three percent of respondents noted a reduction in QoL (presumably this is comparative to life before the illness) with problems including reduced energy, increased anxiety, reduction in leisure activities and a reduced ability to work. A case control study followed-up participants (n=115 cases and 115 controls) 8-12 years after their illness and administered a battery of tests of neurological function, coordination, cognition and behaviour to assess neurodevelopmental status. Participants in the control group scored higher in all 4 tests. Measures of motor function, cognitive ability and behaviour all showed significant detriments following meningococcal disease. Three cases versus 1 control were found to have ADHD, with a further 8 cases versus 0 controls with possible ADHD. Nine cases versus 3 controls were identified as having special educational needs, with an additional 29 cases versus 14 controls being assessed for suspected learning difficulties. One cohort study reported the incidence of neurological developmental delay as 18/407 children. No further details are given.

Three additional studies also described psychosocial consequences following meningococcal disease.

A prospective cohort study [181 EL=2+] compared parental ratings of children’s QoL following meningococcal disease (all children had suffered septic shock and been cared for in a PICU) (n=47 children and their parents; response rate 89%) with a population-based reference group (n=353 children aged 5-13 and 175 women aged 26-35 years as comparator for mothers). For cases the median follow-up interval was 14 months, median age at time of follow-up 4.8 years (range: 1-17 years). Eight of the 12 domains on the infant and toddler QoL questionnaires showed no significant difference between the cases and controls. For 4 domains children who had survived MSS scored significantly lower than the reference group, those domains being: physical abilities, general health perceptions, parental impact – emotional and change in health. Parental ratings for children aged 4-17 years showed no difference compared with the reference group for 12 of 14 domains. The 2 domains where a significant difference was seen were general health perceptions and physical summary. For both age groups the general health perception score was very low compared with the reference group, indicating that parents perceived their child’s current health status as poor and were concerned about future health as well. Specific ongoing psychosocial problems reported by parents were: behavioural/emotional problems n=6; fatigue n=2; sleep disturbances n=1; stuttering n=1.

Overall number of children still receiving follow-up for psychosocial problems 10/47 (21%).
A cohort study\textsuperscript{184} \cite{EL=3} compared the self-esteem of children who had survived meningococcal septic shock (MSS) with a same age-same sex normative reference group. Self-esteem was measured using recognised and tested scales (although some reported measures of reliability are moderate rather than good). The questionnaire was administered to 2 age groups – children aged 8-11 years (n=29 completed questionnaires) and adolescents aged 12-17 years (n=36 completed questionnaires) at least 4 years after discharge from hospital. Children aged 8-11 years who had survived MSS scored very similarly to those in the reference group. More differences were seen in the adolescent groups. On 6 of the 7 domains on the self-esteem questionnaire male (n=16) or female (n=20) adolescents who had survived MSS scored significantly (p<0.05) lower than the same sex reference group (males n=601; females n=785), the domains were: scholastic competence (males), social acceptance (males and females), athletic competence (males), physical appearance (males), close friendship (males and females) and global self-worth (males and females). Severity of illness, age at time of illness and age at time of follow-up did not seem to be significant predictors of long term self-esteem scores.

A second cohort study conducted in the Netherlands 2005-2006 (children admitted to PICU 1988-2001) compared the behavioural and emotional problems of children surviving MSS (n=89 6-17 year olds) with data from normative reference groups (n=1538) \textsuperscript{182} \cite{EL=2+}. Behavioural, emotional and post-traumatic stress problems were assessed using standard, test scales administered to children themselves (n=45 completed questionnaires; response rate 74%; 11-17 year olds) and to both parents and teachers of children aged 6-17 years surviving meningococcal septic shock (n=89 parents, response rate 85%; n=61 teachers, response rate 58%). The sample of children self-completing a questionnaire represented a sub-sample of the main study group. Overall, scores obtained for emotional, behavioural and post-traumatic stress scales were similar for the children following PICU admission for MSS compared with the reference group. Only one significant difference was noted - mothers of children who had suffered MSS reported more somatic complaints in the children compared to the reference group. Severity of illness (recorded using the PRISM score) was not found to be significantly associated with later behavioural, emotional or post-traumatic stress problems. Parents of children who were younger at the time of illness were found to report significantly more emotional, behavioural and post traumatic stress problems in their children than parents of older children.

### Neurological sequelae

The systematic review included 4 studies which reported neurological sequelae following meningococcal disease \textsuperscript{26} \cite{EL=3}. A cohort study (data collection 1980-1990) followed up children 1 year after discharge and found 6/29 had neurological problems (3 seizures, 3 ataxia). A case-control study identified 4/139 children as having severe neurological complications including microcephaly, spastic quadriplegia, epilepsy and blindness. Significantly more cases than controls performed poorly on measures of coordination, cognition and behaviour (see section above on psychological/behavioural sequelae). Two further studies report incidence as 8/151 children suffering seizures and 2/51 with neurological sequelae, no other details are given.

A prospective cohort study \textsuperscript{181} \cite{EL=2+} looking primarily at QoL in children surviving meningococcal disease also reported neurological sequelae. These were reported for 3/47 children and comprised: motor skills problems n=1; pes equinus n=1; and Raynaud phenomenon at amputated finger n=1.

The prospective survey conducted in the USA \textsuperscript{180} \cite{EL=3} reported an incidence of children having seizures as 9/146; ataxia as 4/146; and hemiplegia as 3/146, giving a total incidence of neurological sequelae of 11\% (16/146). The timing of these sequelae in relation to discharge from hospital is not clear.

The overall incidence of neurological sequelae reported in the included studies was 7\% (19/278).

### Pain

Only one study was identified that reported specifically on pain as an outcome. A prospective cohort study\textsuperscript{181} \cite{EL=2+} (Netherlands, data collection 2001-2005) described an incidence of

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ((October 2009)) Page 167 of 244
10/47 children experiencing chronic pain (lower limbs, n=7; headache, n=3). Pain was the most frequent chronic symptom. However, in a comparative section of the study, the incidence of pain was found not to be significantly different from the reference class for either age group assessed (children aged 0-3 were compared with a reference group of 410 children aged 3 months to 3 years. Children aged 4-17 years were compared with a reference group of 353 schoolchildren aged 5-13 years).

Evidence statement

There is evidence from a number of descriptive and comparative studies that show the proportion of children who have developed long-term sequelae following meningococcal disease. The approximate percentages derived from these studies are shown in table 7.2.

Table 7.2 Summary of long term effects of meningococcal septicaemia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Morbidity</th>
<th>Incidence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hearing loss</td>
<td>4% (7 studies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthopaedic complications</td>
<td>amputations: 3% (7 studies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>orthopaedic complications other than amputation: 3% (4 studies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin complications including scarring</td>
<td>13% (8 studies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurological sequelae</td>
<td>7% (6 studies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain</td>
<td>21% (1 small study)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For psychosocial outcomes there is evidence from 3 studies that quality of life is reduced following meningococcal disease, although the degree of this reduction is uncertain and does not appear large. Findings from one case-control study showed self-esteem to be lower in adolescents following meningococcal disease than for those in a reference group. Findings from one cohort study showed poorer neurodevelopmental status in children following meningococcal disease compared with controls which was associated with an increase in ADHD and special educational needs, although the numbers involved are small. In contrast another cohort study found no difference in emotional, behavioural or post traumatic stress problems in children following meningococcal disease compared with a reference group.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

The GDG were aware from their own experience and considerable evidence from the literature, that significant morbidity was associated with some cases of meningococcal disease. Those who suffered meningococcal disease with shock were especially likely to have orthopaedic or skin problems in addition to psychological problems. Those who suffered meningitis were more likely to have hearing loss and other neurological problems including behavioural difficulties. The GDG were of the view that this information should be provided to parents at discharge and at follow up during convalescence in order to empower families to seek appropriate help. The National Deaf Children's Society (NDCS) Quality Standards in Paediatric Audiology, Vol IV[REF] state that hearing should be tested as soon as possible before discharge but within 4 weeks of fitness to test. The GDG’s view was that children and young people who are found to have severe or profound deafness should be offered an assessment for cochlear implants. After discharge an appointment with a paediatrician should be arranged to provide information and coordinate the necessary services for the child. In making their recommendations, the GDG highlighted children and young people who experience disability as a result of having bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia as a priority for receiving follow up care and support to minimise health inequalities associated with their disabilities.

Recommendations

Before discharging children and young people with bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia from hospital:
consider their requirements for follow-up, taking into account potential sensory, neurological, psychosocial, orthopaedic, cutaneous and renal morbidities.

discuss potential long-term effects and likely patterns of recovery with the child or young person and their parents or other family members, and provide them with opportunities to discuss issues and ask questions.

**Offer children and young people with bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia and their parents or carers:**

- information about and access to further care immediately after discharge, and
- contact details of patient support organisations including meningitis charities that can offer support, befriending, in-depth information, advocacy, counselling, and written information to signpost families to further help, and
- advice on accessing future care.

Perform a formal audiological test in children and young people who have had bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia as soon as possible, preferably before discharge, within 4 weeks of being fit to test.

**Offer children and young people found to have a severe or profound deafness an assessment for cochlear implants.**

Children and young people who have had bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia should be reviewed by a paediatrician with the results of their hearing test 4-6 weeks after discharge from hospital to discuss morbidities associated with their condition and offered referral to appropriate services. The following morbidities should be specifically considered:

- hearing loss
- orthopaedic complications (damage to bones and joints)
- skin complications (including scarring from necrosis)
- psychosocial problems
- neurological and developmental problems
- renal failure.

Inform the child’s or young person’s GP, health visitor and school nurse (for school-age children and young people) about their bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia.

Healthcare professionals with responsibility for monitoring the child’s or young person’s health should be alert to possible late-onset sensory, neurological, orthopaedic and psychosocial effects of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia.

**Research Recommendations**

Does routine follow-up reduce the incidence of psycho-social stress and long term morbidity in children and young people who have had bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia and their families?

**Why this is important**

Access to follow-up therapies (such as occupational therapy) and other services for children and young people who have had bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia is recommended. Qualitative research is needed to evaluate the effectiveness of this practice. It should seek to elicit views and experiences of the children and young people themselves and the impact on their parents or carers and other family members.
7.3 Immune testing

Introduction

A number of inherited defects of the immune system have been reported in certain patients with meningococcal disease. The most-well known of these are deficiencies of the complement system, which is a collection of immune molecules that are involved in the killing of encapsulated organisms such as the meningococcus. A range of defects of the complement system have been described in survivors of meningococcal disease, and people with certain types of complement deficiency are prone to recurrent meningococcal disease or other serious bacterial illnesses. People with complement deficiencies may also be at risk of infection with unusual serogroups of meningococcus. Defects of other components of the immune system, such as deficiencies of immunoglobulins and mannan-binding lectin (an activator of complement), have also been described in patients with meningococcal disease.

The benefits of identifying immune deficiencies in survivors of meningococcal disease include lowering the threshold for diagnosing future infections in these individuals and identifying family members who may be at risk of meningococcal or other infections. People with identified immune deficiencies can also be protected at least partially from further infections by immunisation or long-term prophylactic antibiotics. For these reasons, some authorities have suggested that all survivors of meningococcal disease should be screened for complement deficiency. However, before any recommendations can be made on screening it is first important to identify the prevalence of immune deficiencies in children with meningococcal disease.

Clinical question

What is the prevalence of primary immunodeficiency in children and young people with meningococcal disease?

Previous UK guidelines

No previous UK guideline was identified that addressed this clinical question.

Studies considered in this section

All study designs determining the prevalence of the following primary immune deficiencies in children and young people diagnosed with meningococcal disease were considered for this section: deficiencies of components of the classical, alternative and terminal complement pathways; deficiencies of the mannan-binding lectin protein; deficiencies of total immunoglobulin, immunoglobulin G or immunoglobulin G subclasses. Studies conducted in the UK and Europe, Northern America and Australasia were considered for the review. Studies of people of all ages were included only if prevalence was reported separately for a subgroup of children.

Overview of available evidence

Six studies determining the prevalence of complement deficiency in survivors of meningococcal disease caused by any serogroup were included in the review [EL=3]. Four of the studies involved children only and two involved people of all ages, but reported prevalence data separately for subgroups of children. Two studies were found assessing the prevalence of complement deficiency in survivors of infection with uncommon meningococcal serogroups [EL=3]. Two of the included studies also investigated the prevalence of total immunoglobulin and immunoglobulin G (IgG) subclass deficiency. No studies were found investigating the prevalence of deficiency of mannan-binding lectin in children and young people with meningococcal disease.

Review findings

One study conducted in the UK screened 297 children aged 2 months to 16 years for complement deficiencies after recovery from meningococcal disease (1996–1999) [EL=3]. The EL reflects the design of the study in the hierarchy, however it was conducted very well and the
results are very relevant to the question. The study found a deficiency of C2 in one 4-year old child who had recovered from serogroup B meningococcal infection (prevalence: 0.3%). The child had a history of previous systemic pneumococcal disease. In this hospital-based study 212 with confirmed meningococcal disease had complement assessed. Of the 352 children with confirmed disease, 203 had group B, 138 had group C, 11 were non-groupable, one had W135, but it was not reported which of these children had complement assessed. Two children had a history of pneumonia, one of UTI plus the third child noted in the summary who had pneumococcal disease.

A study conducted in The Netherlands involved 29 children aged 9 months to 14.4 years admitted to a PICU with fulminant meningococcal septic shock (1991–1993) [EL=3]. It found properdin deficiency in one 7-year old boy infected with meningococcus serogroup Y, but found no complement deficiencies in the remaining 28 surviving children. There was no history of recurrent meningococcal infection. This study reported the serogroups of 25 of the 29 children: 20 group B, 3 group C and the child with serogroup Y, 4 children did not have serogrouping performed.

A study conducted in a hospital in Switzerland found no evidence of complement deficiency in 35 children younger than 16 years who had recovered from meningococcal meningitis (1988–1995) [EL=3]. Serogroups were not reported. Familial occurrence or recurrence of meningitis was reported in three children, but other bacterial meningitis were included in the study and the recurrence rate in children with meningococcal meningitis was not reported.

A multicentre study conducted in Denmark found no evidence of complement deficiency in 23 children aged between 3 months and 16 years admitted to hospital with meningococcal disease (1983–1985) [EL=3]. Serogroups were reported in 35 cases with meningococcal disease: serogroup B: 13 patients, serogroup C: 4 patients, serogroup X: 0, serogroup Y: 1, not determined: 17. There was no history of recurrent disease in patients with meningococcal meningitis.

A population-based retrospective survey conducted in Italy aimed to determine the prevalence of complement deficiencies and other immune abnormalities associated with meningococcal disease (1985–1989) [EL=3]. Five hundred and twenty survivors of meningococcal disease were identified from national notification records, of whom 65 people (12.5%) were available for investigation and 59 were enrolled in the study. Thirty-four participants (58%) were younger than 14 years at the time of infection. In total, 10/59 people (17%) had deficiencies of terminal complement pathway components, of whom 3 were younger than 14 years (prevalence in children younger than 14 years: 9%). All people with complement deficiency had been infected with meningococcal serogroup C compared with 61% of people without complement deficiency (p=0.05). Fifty percent of people with complement deficiency had a history of recurrent meningococcal infection. The number of complement sufficient people with a history of recurrent infection was inconsistently reported in the study (2% or 10%). There was no evidence of total immunoglobulin or IgG subclass deficiency. The low participation rate (12.5%) and the high rate of recurrent disease in an unselected series of patients — inconsistently reported in the study as 10% or 17% — suggest the possibility of selection bias. This would result in a study population that may not be representative of the general population with meningococcal disease.

A population-based retrospective survey conducted in the Netherlands estimated the prevalence of complement deficiency in survivors of meningococcal disease caused by any serogroup (1959–1992) [EL=3]. Patients with meningococcal disease were identified from National Reference laboratory records (n=7732). One hundred and seventy-six survivors were selected for the study based on age and infecting meningococcal serogroup; 62 (35%) were younger than 5 years at the time of disease. The study found a primary complement deficiency in 3 people, one younger than 5 years at the time of disease (prevalence of complement deficiency in children younger than 5 years: 1.6%). This child had survived infection with meningococcal serogroup A or C (exactly which serogroup was not reported) and had a deficiency of a terminal complement pathway component. The study did not report the rate of complement deficiency in children aged between 5 and 16 years. People with a history of serogroup B infection were underrepresented in the study population (45%) compared with the
frequency of serogroup B infection in the general population (71%). This suggests that, because of the limitations of selected sampling, the study population may not be representative of the general population with meningococcal disease. This study selected patients by serogroup, so the distribution of serogroups was not representative. There were other caveats with this study: the total recurrence rate seems high for an unselected series, although the figures are inconsistent. The study initially reports that 6/59 (10%) participants had a history of recurrent disease. Later states that 10/59 (17%) had recurrent disease: 5 with complement deficiencies and 5 without. The uptake is worryingly low (12.5%): the large Dutch study had an uptake rate of 38%. The authors scrutinised the study population and reported that it was representative of the entire population in terms of: age range (1–60 years), sex, geographical spread and distribution of meningococcal serogroups; Serogroup A: 10% Serogroup B: 22% Serogroup C: 68%. Serogroup C was the most prevalent strain causing 79% of meningococcal disease in Italy between 1985 to 1989. Twelve percent had severe disease, severe disease defined as ‘meningococcaemia sometimes accompanied by DIC, arthritis or encephalitis.

Meningococcal disease caused by uncommon serogroups

One survey determined the prevalence of complement deficiency in people who had disease caused by uncommon serogroups: X, Y, Z, W135, 29E, or nongroupable meningococcus (1959–1992) [EL=3]. Of 97 people included in the study, 16 (16.5%) were aged between 5 and 15 years and 30 (31%) were younger than 5 years at the time of meningococcal infection. In total, 32/97 people (33%) had a complement deficiency. Of the 46 children younger than 15 years, 9 (19.5%) had a complement deficiency: 8 aged between 5 and 15 years, and 1 child younger than 5 years. Complement deficiencies included properdin deficiency, C3 deficiency and deficiencies of the terminal complement pathway components. Some people with deficiencies of C3 and the terminal complement pathway components had a history of recurrent meningococcal disease. There was no history of recurrent meningococcal disease in properdin-deficient individuals. In this study the serogroup distribution was as follows (based on 97 people of all ages, mostly unselected sample):

- W135: 54 people (56%): 16/54 (30%) with complement deficiency
- X: 9 people (9%): 3 (33%) with complement deficiency
- Y: 23 people (24%): 11 (48%) had complement deficiency
- Z: 1 person (1%): no one had complement deficiency
- 29E: 2 people (2%): no one had complement deficiency
- non-groupable: 8 people (8%): 2 (25%) had complement deficiency

serogroup was not reported by age.

A population-based retrospective survey conducted in Germany estimated the prevalence of complement and immunoglobulin deficiency in 30 survivors of infection with uncommon meningococcal serogroups [X, Y, Z, W135, 29E], of whom 15 were younger than 10 years at the time of infection (1966–1992) [EL=3]. The study included a matched control group comprised of 30 survivors of infection with meningococcal serogroup B. In total, 8/30 people (27%) infected with either serogroup W135 or Y had a deficiency of a terminal complement pathway component (C7 or C8). All people in the control group were complement sufficient (p<0.01). One person with complement deficiency was younger than 10 years (prevalence: 7%). The study did not report the rate of complement deficiency in children aged between 10 and 16 years. It did not report recurrent disease. There was no evidence of total IgG or IgG subclass deficiency. Uncommon serogroups in the study group were reported as follows:

- W135: 13 patients (43.3%)
- Y: 11 patients (36.6%)
- X: 4 patients (13.3%)
- 29E: 1 patient (3.3%)

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 172 of 244
Evidence statement

There is evidence from three studies involving a total of 355 children that the estimated prevalence of complement deficiency in children and young people younger than 16 years with meningococcal disease is ~0.3%.

One study using selected sampling found complement deficiency in 1.6% of children younger than 5 years with meningococcal disease. Complement deficiencies included C2 deficiency and deficiencies of terminal complement pathway components.

One small study conducted in tertiary care found that one of 29 children admitted to tertiary care with meningococcal septic shock had complement deficiency. The small sample size provides insufficient evidence to reach a conclusion about the prevalence of complement deficiency in severely ill children with meningococcal disease.

There is limited evidence from two small studies that the prevalence of complement deficiency in children infected with unusual meningococcal serogroups is higher, ranging from 7% in one study of children younger than 10 years to 19.5% in a second small study of children younger than 15 years. In the second study, 90% of children with complement deficiency were older than 5 years. Complement deficiencies included properdin deficiency, C3 deficiency and deficiencies of the terminal complement pathway components.

Two studies found no evidence that total immunoglobulin deficiency or immunoglobulin G subclass deficiency is associated with meningococcal disease in children and young people.

Cost effectiveness

The GDG identified testing for complement deficiency as a priority for economic analysis within the guideline. The evaluation compared:

i. a strategy of selective testing in children who have had meningitis caused by meningococcus serogroups other than B, or who have had previous serious bacterial infections (including meningococcal disease) versus no testing

ii. selective testing versus routine testing of all children with meningococcal disease.

There is a lack of evidence on the degree of protection that would be afforded by treatment, using immunisation or long-term antibiotic prophylaxis, in those identified with immune deficiency. Therefore, the evaluation took the form of a threshold analysis exploring the scenarios when each strategy could be considered cost effective. A summary of this analysis is presented below. Full details of the evaluation are given in Appendix L.

The rationale for selective testing is that there exists a clearly identified sub-group with a higher pre-test probability of complement deficiency. If selective testing is not cost-effective relative to no testing then routine testing will not be cost-effective. If selective testing is cost-effective relative to no testing the decision between selective and routine testing hinges on whether the additional cases identified by routine testing can be achieved at an acceptable cost, which we take to be £20,000 per QALY in this case.

In addition to uncertainty about any treatment effect size there is also uncertainty with respect to the savings and the QALY gain (which is a weighted average based on the incidence of all
sequelae including death) from an averted meningitis case. While there is published data on the cost and QALY implications of averted disease\(^{196,197}\), children who are susceptible to repeat infection often have milder disease\(^{198,199}\). Therefore, this analysis shows the threshold for cost effectiveness for both testing strategies varying the gain from an averted case between 0-10 QALYs and the relative risk reduction with treatment between in 0% and 100%. The analysis was undertaken using a lower bound estimate of the saving from an averted case of meningococcal disease (based on the treatment cost of an acute episode) and a higher saving of £10,000 per averted case. It was assumed that the prevalence of complement deficiency was 0.3% amongst all children with meningococcal disease, but 1% in the subgroup who accounted for 10% of all cases. The results are illustrated below in Figures 7.1 to 7.4.

1. Saving per averted case = £3,179

---

**Figure 7.1.** Threshold cost effectiveness for selective testing

**Figure 7.2.** Threshold cost effectiveness for routine testing
2. Saving per averted case = £10,000

Figure 7.3. Threshold cost effectiveness for selective testing

Figure 7.4. Threshold cost effectiveness for routine testing
The regions shaded green indicate cost-effective treatment effectiveness and QALY gains per averted case combinations under two alternative scenarios for the cost saving associated with an averted case of meningococcal disease. The frontier between the green and blue shaded area gives the cost effectiveness threshold (i.e. the treatment efficacy needed for a given QALY gain per averted case and vice versa).

In both cost-saving scenarios, the results show that the thresholds are markedly less for the selective testing strategy. So, for example, using the conservative estimate about the cost saving per averted case, the QALY gain that would be needed if treatment gave complete protection against subsequent infection would be 0.4 QALYs per averted case. Or, if treatment reduced the risk of subsequent infection by 50%, the minimum QALY gain per averted case for cost effectiveness would be 1.0. Conversely, the minimum QALY gain necessary for routine testing to be cost-effective relative to selective testing at treatment efficacy of 50% would be 4.2 QALYs.

Given that disease tends to be milder in this group of patients such a QALY gain cannot be necessarily considered likely.

As Figure 7.3 shows the impact of a higher cost saving on the selective testing strategy is to substantially reduce the thresholds for cost effectiveness. With treatment reducing the risk of infection by 50% the QALY gain threshold for cost effectiveness falls to 0.7. The higher cost saving also reduces the thresholds for the cost effectiveness of routine testing relative to selective testing with the equivalent QALY threshold being 3.8.

GDG interpretation of the evidence

On considering the evidence regarding complement deficiency, the GDG concluded that one study was most relevant to the UK child population despite its study design being lower in the hierarchy. In this study of nearly 300 children it was found that only one child in an unselected series of children with meningococcal disease had a complement deficiency. The affected child had serogroup B meningococcal disease and a previous history of serious bacterial infection. At the time the most prevalent serogroups causing meningococcal disease were serogroups B and C. The other studies in the review did not report any cases of complement deficiency in children with serogroup B meningococcal disease (although not all studies gave data on serogroups). The review showed that complement deficiency was considerably more common in children who had meningococcal disease caused by rare serogroups, particularly serogroup Y. An economic analysis suggested the cost effectiveness thresholds for testing for complement deficiency in a sub-group (i.e. serogroup Y) were substantially lower than a strategy which tested all children with meningococcal disease. Whilst the evidence isn’t sufficiently robust to derive point estimates for the incremental cost effectiveness of either strategy only modest treatment efficacy and QALY gains were shown to be necessary for cost effectiveness by a threshold analysis in the sub-group strategy even with conservative assumptions about the cost savings from an averted case of meningococcal disease. Furthermore, the overall cost impact of such a strategy would be very small. Whilst the threshold analysis does not show that routine testing is not cost-effective, the higher QALY and treatment efficacy thresholds necessary make it far less likely especially given that subsequent disease is generally milder in patients with complement deficiency. The GDG therefore considered that testing for complement deficiency could not be justified in children with meningococcal disease cause by the serogroup B meningococcus unless there was a history of previous serious bacterial infection but was justified in children who had meningococcal disease caused by the historically rare serogroups (A, X, Y, W135, Z, 29E and non-groupable).

The situation with disease caused by the serogroup C meningococcus is less clear. While most studies did not find any cases of complement deficiency in children with disease caused by this...
serogroup, one (possibly selective) study did find a number of cases of complement deficiency in children with disease caused by the serogroup C meningococcus. The GDG were aware that cases of serogroup C meningococcal disease are now rare in the UK as a result of universal immunisation against this serogroup. In 2007/2008 there were only 29 cases of disease caused by the serogroup C meningococcus in England and Wales.\(^{200}\) It is therefore reasonable to include serogroup C meningococcal disease in the category of rare serogroups that would justify testing for complement deficiency. Moreover, there is good evidence from the laboratory evaluation of the immune response to MenC vaccine in the UK that the combination of antibody and complement correlates with protection against serogroup C meningococcal disease\(^ {190}\) providing theoretical grounds to suspect that complement deficiency could result in vaccination failure. The GDG therefore considered that it may be worthwhile testing for complement deficiency in children who have had serogroup C meningococcal disease.

Many cases of meningococcal disease are not confirmed by microbiological culture or PCR. According to current epidemiology, the great majority of these cases are likely to be caused by the serogroup B meningococcus. The GDG therefore considered that testing for complement deficiency could not be justified in cases of unconfirmed meningococcal disease.

The GDG also considered the role of possible immune deficiency in cases where there have been more than one case of meningococcal disease in a family. This raises the possibility of immune deficiency because most deficiency syndromes, including complement deficiency, are inherited and it is possible that earlier cases in the family may not have been screened for immune deficiency. Although there was no evidence to be found, the GDG made a pragmatic decision that it would be appropriate to test cases where there had been previous cases in the same immediate family. This decision would not apply to cases where there had been more than one family member affected during an outbreak because this would almost certainly represent simple person to person transmission rather than an underlying susceptibility to meningococcal disease.

Regarding other forms of immunodeficiency, the GDG could find no evidence that deficiencies of immunoglobulins or mannann-binding lectin are prevalent in survivors of meningococcal disease. The GDG concluded that testing for deficiencies of these components of the immune system could not be recommended.

### Recommendations

Test children and young people for complement deficiency if they have had either:

- meningococcal disease caused by serogroups other than B, or
- previous serious bacterial infections (including meningococcal disease).

Children and young people with recurrent episodes of meningococcal disease should be assessed by a specialist in infectious disease or immunology.

Do not test children and young people for complement deficiency who have had either:

- meningococcal disease caused by serogroup B meningococcus, or
- unconfirmed meningococcal disease.

If a child or young person who has had meningococcal disease has a parent or sibling with a history of complement deficiency, test for complement deficiency.

If a child or young person who has had meningococcal disease is found to have complement deficiency, test their parents and siblings for complement deficiency.

Testing for complement deficiency should follow laboratory protocols.

Refer children and young people with complement deficiency to a healthcare professional with expertise in the management of the condition.
Do not test children and young people for immunoglobulin deficiency if they have had meningococcal disease, unless they have a history suggestive of an immunodeficiency.
References, abbreviations and glossary of terms

References


38. Ostergaard C, Konradsen HB, and Samuelsson S. Clinical presentation and prognostic factors of Streptococcus pneumoniae meningitis according to the focus of infection. BMC Infectious Diseases 2005; 5:93.


45. Aponso D and Bullen C. Presenting features of meningococcal disease, public health messages and media publicity: are they consistent? New Zealand Medical Journal 2001; 114:(1127)83-5.


DRAFT FOR CONSULTATION


125. International liaison Committee on Resuscitation. The International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation (ILCOR) consensus on science with treatment recommendations for pediatric and neonatal patients: pediatric basic and advanced life support. Pediatrics.


130. Tauber MG, Khayam-Bashi H, and Sande MA. Effects of ampicillin and corticosteroids on brain water content, cerebrospinal fluid pressure, and cerebrospinal fluid lactate levels in experimental pneumococcal meningitis. Journal of Infectious Diseases 1985; 151;(3)528-34.


Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 191 of 244


Abbreviations
To be inserted in the final published guideline.

Glossary of terms
To be inserted in the final published guideline.
Appendix A – Scope

[The final published guideline will include a copy of the scope which is available on the NICE website http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/index.jsp?action=download&o=39930.]
Appendix B – Declarations of interest

This appendix includes all interests declared on or before 19 October 2009.

B.1 Guideline development group members

Angela Cloke
No interests declared

Linda Glennie

Personal pecuniary interests: Conference expenses and/or lecture fees from GlaxoSmithKline, Lilly, Wyeth and Xoma

Non-personal pecuniary interests: Meningitis Research Foundation receives funding from Dorset Orthopaedic, GlaxoSmithKline, Lilly, Novartis, Sanofi Pasteur, Wyeth and Xoma for organising conferences and providing educational materials/services

Caroline Haines
No interests declared

Paul Heath

Personal pecuniary interests: Conference expenses from Sanofi Pasteur

Non-personal pecuniary interests: St George’s, University of London receives funding from GlaxoSmithKline, Novartis and Wyeth for research into meningitis vaccines

J Simon Kroll

Personal pecuniary interests: Consultancy for GlaxoSmithKline (as member of UK Paediatric Vaccines Advisory Board); conference expenses from GlaxoSmithKline and Wyeth

Non-personal pecuniary interests: Department receives funding from Baxter and Sanofi Pasteur for research into vaccines to prevent meningococcal disease and from Wyeth for educational activities

Ian Maconochie
No interests declared

Sheila McQueen
No interests declared

Philip Monk
No interests declared

Simon Nadel
No interests declared

Nelly Ninis
No interests declared
Andrew Pollard
Non-personal pecuniary interests: University Department receives funding from GlaxoSmithKline Vaccines, Novartis Vaccines, Sanofi Pasteur MSD and Wyeth Vaccines for research into meningococcal, Hib or pneumococcal and payment from these manufacturers for advisory work, sponsorship for scientific/educational meetings and travel expenses; principal investigator on meningitis vaccine research projects funded by Meningitis Research Foundation, the Wellcome Trust and Meningitis UK

Martin Richardson
No interests declared

Matthew Thompson
Non-personal pecuniary interests: Principal investigator on a project funded by the Meningitis Research Foundation

Alistair Thomson
Personal pecuniary interests: Conference expenses from Mead Johnson
Non-personal pecuniary interests: Adviser to Meningitis Trust; principal investigator on a research project investigating the role of microcirculation in pathophysiology of meningococcal disease funded by the Meningitis Research Foundation

B.2 NCC-WCH staff and contractors
Shannon Amoils
No interests declared
Jay Banerjee
No interests declared
Paula Broughton-Palmer
No interests declared
Shona Burman-Roy
No interests declared
Andrew Clegg
No interests declared
Ella Fields
No interests declared
Rupert Franklin
No interests declared
Paul Jacklin
No interests declared
Rosalind Lai
No interests declared
Moira Mugglestone
No interests declared
Maria Pella
No interests declared
Julia Saperia
Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 195 of 244
B.3 External advisers

James Stuart
No interests declared

David Turner
Personal pecuniary interests: Member of data and safety monitoring board sponsored by Choice Pharma for a clinical trial of a novel agent for treatment of severe sepsis in adults (not directly related to meningitis or meningococcal infection)
Appendix C – Registered stakeholder organisations

[The list of registered stakeholder organisations will be included in the final published guideline. For the current list please see the NICE website http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/index.jsp?action=download&o=34295.]
Appendix D – Clinical questions

1. In children and young people under 16 years of age, what symptoms and signs or combinations of symptoms and signs are predictive of bacterial meningitis?

2. In children and young people under 16 years of age, what symptoms and signs or combinations of symptoms and signs are predictive of meningococcal septicaemia?

3. Does giving antibiotics to children and young people with suspected meningitis pre-hospital improve outcome?

4. Does giving antibiotics to children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia pre-hospital improve outcome?

5. In children and young people under 16 years of age, are the results of non-specific laboratory tests predictive of meningococcal septicaemia?

6. In children and young people under 16 years of age, are the results of non-specific laboratory tests predictive of bacterial meningitis?

7. What is the diagnostic value of blood and CSF PCR in children and young people with suspected meningococcal meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia?

8. What is the diagnostic value of microscopy and culture of skin aspirates in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia?

9. In children and young people with suspected meningococcal disease what is the diagnostic value of throat swabs?

10. In children and young people with suspected meningitis, can CSF variables (white blood cell count, glucose, protein) distinguish between bacterial and viral meningitis?

11. When is lumbar puncture contraindicated in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis?

12. When is lumbar puncture contraindicated in children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia?

13. Should lumbar puncture be performed prior to stopping antibiotic treatment in children less than 3 months of age with bacterial meningitis?

14. What are the clinical indications for brain imaging in children and young people with suspected bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia?

15. What antibiotic regimen (type) should be used to treat children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia in the secondary care setting?
What antibiotic regimen (type) should be used to treat children and young people with suspected meningitis in the secondary care setting?

What antibiotic regimen should be used to treat confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia?

What are the indications for administering intravenous fluids to resuscitate children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia?

What are the clinical indications for giving inotropes in children and young people with suspected/confirmed meningococcal septicaemia?

What type of intravenous fluid should be used to resuscitate children and young people with suspected meningococcal septicaemia?

Should fluid volume be restricted in children and young people with suspected/confirmed bacterial meningitis?

In children and young people with suspected or confirmed meningococcal septicaemia, what are the clinical indications for intubation and mechanical ventilation?

In children and young people with suspected or confirmed bacterial meningitis, what are the clinical indications for intubation and mechanical ventilation?

Should corticosteroids be used in the treatment of children and young people with suspected/confirmed bacterial meningitis?

What is the effect of experimental therapies in children and young people with suspected/confirmed meningococcal septicaemia?

Should corticosteroids be used in the treatment of children and young people with suspected/confirmed meningococcal septicaemia?

What is the effect on outcomes of using scoring systems in children and young people with suspected/confirmed meningococcal disease?

Do specialist transport teams improve outcomes and/or reduce adverse incidents during the transfer of children with meningococcal disease?

What proportion of children and young people with bacterial meningitis develop physical and psychological morbidity?

What proportion of children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia develop physical and psychological morbidity?

What is the prevalence of primary immunodeficiency in children and young people with meningococcal disease?
Appendix E – Search strategies

The search strategies are presented in a separate document for consultation.
Appendix F – Excluded studies

The excluded studies are listed in a separate document for consultation.
Appendix G – Included studies evidence tables

The evidence tables for included studies are listed in a separate document for consultation.
Appendix H – Meta-analyses (Forest plots) conducted as part of guideline development

H.1 Corticosteroids

Figure H.1 Mortality from specific organisms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Corticosteroids</th>
<th>Controls</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kanra 1995</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.19 [0.01, 3.84]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi 1995</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.80 [0.52, 6.22]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1991</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.33 [0.02, 6.37]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaad 1993</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.60 [0.07, 4.83]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal (95% CI)</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>0.61 [0.22, 1.65]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total events: 107 (Heterogeneity: Chi² = 3.67, df = 3 (P = 0.30); I² = 18%)
Test for overall effect: Z = 0.97 (P = 0.33)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Corticosteroids</th>
<th>Controls</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>King 1994</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.86 [0.07, 10.96]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988a</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.00 [0.31, 28.84]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988b</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.33 [0.02, 5.97]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1989</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.58 [0.03, 11.21]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wald 1995</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>2.31 [0.44, 11.98]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal (95% CI)</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>1.25 [0.48, 3.27]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total events: 106 (Heterogeneity: Chi² = 2.25, df = 4 (P = 0.69); I² = 0%)
Test for overall effect: Z = 0.46 (P = 0.65)
### Figure H.2 Severe hearing loss from *Haemophilus influenzae* type B (Hib)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi 1995</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>5.5%</td>
<td>0.29 [0.01, 6.60]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King 1994</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>6.9%</td>
<td>0.48 [0.05, 5.03]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988a</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>25.8%</td>
<td>0.12 [0.02, 0.93]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988b</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>14.4%</td>
<td>0.22 [0.03, 1.91]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1989</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>3.8%</td>
<td>0.80 [0.05, 12.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1991</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>20.2%</td>
<td>0.51 [0.14, 1.91]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaad 1993</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>3.8%</td>
<td>0.81 [0.05, 12.43]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wald 1995</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>19.7%</td>
<td>0.08 [0.00, 1.45]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total (95% CI) 260 233 100.0% 0.29 [0.14, 0.61]

Total events 8 27
Heterogeneity: $\chi^2 = 3.45$, df = 7 ($P = 0.84$); $I^2 = 0$
Test for overall effect: $Z = 3.30$ ($P = 0.0010$)

### Figure H.3 Severe hearing loss from species other than *Haemophilus influenzae* type B (Hib)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kanra 1995</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>14.5%</td>
<td>0.19 [0.01, 3.84]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi 1995</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>12.9%</td>
<td>0.38 [0.04, 3.77]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King 1994</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>5.6%</td>
<td>1.05 [0.07, 15.69]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988a</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>10.8%</td>
<td>0.56 [0.06, 5.63]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988b</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>13.2%</td>
<td>0.23 [0.01, 4.38]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1989</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>7.0%</td>
<td>0.48 [0.02, 10.07]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1991</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10.0%</td>
<td>0.24 [0.01, 5.26]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaad 1993</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>16.4%</td>
<td>0.36 [0.04, 3.24]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wald 1995</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>9.5%</td>
<td>1.40 [0.21, 9.28]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total (95% CI) 161 172 100.0% 0.48 [0.22, 1.05]

Total events 6 16
Heterogeneity: $\chi^2 = 2.46$, df = 8 ($P = 0.96$); $I^2 = 0$
Test for overall effect: $Z = 1.83$ ($P = 0.07$)

---

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 204 of 244
**Figure H.4 Severe hearing loss from *Streptococcus pneumoniae***

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Corticosteroids</th>
<th>Controls</th>
<th>Risk Ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kanra 1995</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.19 [0.01, 3.84]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi 1995</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.80 [0.52, 6.22]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King 1994</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.86 [0.07, 10.96]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988a</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.00 [0.31, 28.84]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988b</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.33 [0.02, 5.97]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1989</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.58 [0.03, 11.21]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1991</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.33 [0.02, 6.37]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaad 1993</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.60 [0.07, 4.83]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wald 1995</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>2.31 [0.44, 11.98]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total (95% CI)</strong></td>
<td>65</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>0.90 [0.45, 1.77]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure H.5 Long-term neurological sequelae from all organisms**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Corticosteroids</th>
<th>Controls</th>
<th>Risk Ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kanra 1995</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1.86 [0.18, 19.38]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi 1995</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>0.81 [0.12, 5.38]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King 1994</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>1.98 [0.51, 7.75]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988a</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>0.89 [0.19, 4.14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>0.32 [0.07, 1.49]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1991</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>0.31 [0.12, 0.80]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaad 1993</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>0.55 [0.14, 2.19]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wald 1995</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>0.73 [0.21, 2.46]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total (95% CI)</strong></td>
<td>358</td>
<td>349</td>
<td>0.62 [0.39, 0.98]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 205 of 244
### Figure H.6 Effect of timing of steroids on long-term neurological sequelae

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Corticosteroids</th>
<th>Controls</th>
<th>Risk Ratio</th>
<th>Risk Ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Events</td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>Events</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.1.1 Corticosteroids given before or with first dose of antibiotics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanra 1995</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi 1995</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1991</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaad 1993</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal (95% CI)</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>156</td>
<td>100.0%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total events</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heterogeneity: Chi² = 2.42, df = 3 (P = 0.49); I² = 0%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test for overall effect: Z = 2.19 (P = 0.03)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Figure H.7 Effect of timing of steroids on severe hearing loss
### 12.2.1 Corticosteroids given before or with first dose of antibiotics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kanra 1995</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>14.8%</td>
<td>0.19 [0.01, 3.84]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi 1995</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>19.2%</td>
<td>0.27 [0.03, 2.45]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1991</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>41.8%</td>
<td>0.40 [0.11, 1.47]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaad 1993</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>24.2%</td>
<td>0.46 [0.09, 2.40]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal (95% CI)</strong></td>
<td><strong>170</strong></td>
<td><strong>155</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>0.36 [0.15, 0.87]</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total events: 4

Heterogeneity: $\chi^2 = 0.34$, $df = 3$ (P = 0.95); $I^2 = 0$

Test for overall effect: $Z = 2.28$ (P = 0.02)

### 12.2.2 Corticosteroids given after first dose of antibiotics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>King 1994</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>11.0%</td>
<td>0.67 [0.12, 3.82]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988a</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>34.1%</td>
<td>0.21 [0.05, 0.92]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988b</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>22.5%</td>
<td>0.16 [0.02, 1.28]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1989</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>7.6%</td>
<td>0.47 [0.04, 4.89]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wald 1995</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>24.7%</td>
<td>0.31 [0.07, 1.45]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal (95% CI)</strong></td>
<td><strong>251</strong></td>
<td><strong>250</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>0.29 [0.14, 0.63]</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total events: 27

Heterogeneity: $\chi^2 = 1.53$, $df = 4$ (P = 0.82); $I^2 = 0$

Test for overall effect: $Z = 3.13$ (P = 0.002)

### Figure H.8 Effect of timing of steroids on mortality

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kanra 1995</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>50.1%</td>
<td>1.86 [0.18, 19.38]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi 1995</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Not estimable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1991</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>49.9%</td>
<td>0.94 [0.06, 14.65]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaad 1993</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Not estimable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal (95% CI)</strong></td>
<td><strong>173</strong></td>
<td><strong>157</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>1.40 [0.24, 8.13]</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total events: 2

Heterogeneity: $\chi^2 = 0.14$, $df = 1$ (P = 0.71); $I^2 = 0$

Test for overall effect: $Z = 0.38$ (P = 0.71)

### Figure H.9 Effect of timing of steroids on short-term neurological sequelae

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Events</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DeLemos 1969</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>15.5%</td>
<td>2.33 [0.22, 25.03]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King 1994</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>25.0%</td>
<td>0.34 [0.01, 8.15]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988a</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>25.7%</td>
<td>0.32 [0.01, 7.68]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988b</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Not estimable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1989</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>25.6%</td>
<td>0.32 [0.01, 7.63]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wald 1995</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>8.1%</td>
<td>3.21 [0.13, 77.60]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subtotal (95% CI)</strong></td>
<td><strong>306</strong></td>
<td><strong>316</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>0.87 [0.27, 2.78]</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total events: 4

Heterogeneity: $\chi^2 = 2.40$, $df = 4$ (P = 0.66); $I^2 = 0$

Test for overall effect: $Z = 0.23$ (P = 0.82)
### 12.4.1 Corticosteroids given before or with first dose of antibiotics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Corticosteroids</th>
<th>Controls</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kanra 1995</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>2.00 [0.19, 20.77]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi 1995</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>0.84 [0.13, 5.55]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subtotal (95% CI): 58 / 53 = 1.00 [0.29, 5.07]

Heterogeneity: Chi² = 0.32, df = 1 (P = 0.57); I² = 0%
Test for overall effect: Z = 0.25 (P = 0.80)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Corticosteroids</th>
<th>Controls</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988a</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>0.56 [0.20, 1.58]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988b</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>0.86 [0.39, 1.92]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1989</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>0.62 [0.20, 1.99]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subtotal (95% CI): 126 / 117 = 1.00 [0.40, 1.22]

Heterogeneity: Chi² = 0.47, df = 2 (P = 0.79); I² = 0%
Test for overall effect: Z = 1.26 (P = 0.21)

### 12.4.2 Corticosteroids given after first dose of antibiotics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Corticosteroids</th>
<th>Controls</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Belsey 1969</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>1.50 [0.46, 4.94]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanra 1995</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1.16 [0.35, 3.89]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi 1995</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>1.07 [0.72, 1.58]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King 1994</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.67 [0.30, 1.49]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988a</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>Not estimable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>4.81 [0.24, 97.68]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1989</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Not estimable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1991</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>0.41 [0.24, 0.69]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaad 1993</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.19 [0.71, 1.99]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wald 1995</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>1.55 [1.08, 2.23]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subtotal (95% CI): 468 / 451 = 1.01 [0.82, 1.24]

Heterogeneity: Chi² = 19.87, df = 7 (P = 0.006); I² = 65%
Test for overall effect: Z = 0.10 (P = 0.92)

---

**Figure H.10** Adverse effects following administration of corticosteroids

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>Corticosteroids</th>
<th>Controls</th>
<th>Risk Ratio M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Belsey 1969</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>1.50 [0.46, 4.94]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kanra 1995</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1.16 [0.35, 3.89]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilpi 1995</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>1.07 [0.72, 1.58]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King 1994</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.67 [0.30, 1.49]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988a</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>Not estimable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1988b</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>4.81 [0.24, 97.68]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebel 1989</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Not estimable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1991</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>0.41 [0.24, 0.69]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schaad 1993</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.19 [0.71, 1.99]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wald 1995</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>1.55 [1.08, 2.23]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subtotal (95% CI): 468 / 451 = 1.01 [0.82, 1.24]

Heterogeneity: Chi² = 19.87, df = 7 (P = 0.006); I² = 65%
Test for overall effect: Z = 0.10 (P = 0.92)

---

**Figure H.11** Mortality from all organisms

---

**H.2 Empiric antibiotics**

---

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 208 of 244
### Figure H.12 Mortality from Haemophilus influenzae type B (Hib)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>3 g cephalosporins</th>
<th>Conventional</th>
<th>Risk Difference</th>
<th>Risk Difference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Events</td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>Events</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bryan 1985</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congeni 1984</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delrio 1983</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jacobs 1985</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1986</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peltola 1989</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rodriguez 1985</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharma 1996</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steele 1983</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total (95% CI)</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>100.0%</td>
<td>0.01 [-0.05, 0.06]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total events: 7, 6

Heterogeneity: Chi² = 1.10, df = 8 (P = 1.00); I² = 0%
Test for overall effect: Z = 0.23 (P = 0.82)

---

### Figure H.13 Mortality from Streptococcus pneumoniae

---

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009])
**Figure H.14 Mortality from Neisseria meningitidis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>3 g cephalosporins</th>
<th>Conventional</th>
<th>Risk Difference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total Events</td>
<td>Total Events</td>
<td>M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bryan 1985</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.17 [-0.71, 1.04]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congeni 1984</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.75, 0.75]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Girgis 1988</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>-0.08 [-0.42, 0.26]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jacobs 1985</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.39, 0.39]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1986</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>-0.14 [-0.61, 0.33]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peltola 1989</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.63, 0.63]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rodriguez 1985</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0.10 [-0.41, 0.61]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharma 1996</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.85, 0.85]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steele 1983</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.39, 0.39]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total (95% CI) 56 36 100.0% -0.02 [-0.21, 0.18]

Total events 12 9

Heterogeneity: Chi² = 0.77, df = 8 (P = 1.00); I² = 0%

Test for overall effect: Z = 0.16 (P = 0.87)

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 210 of 244
Figure H.15 Effect of third-generation cephalosporins on deafness with all organisms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>3 g cephalosporins Events</th>
<th>Conventional Total Events</th>
<th>Total Events</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Risk Difference M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
<th>Risk Difference M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aronoff 1984</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>3.6%</td>
<td>0.06 [-0.30, 0.42]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barson 1985</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>7.5%</td>
<td>-0.19 [-0.47, 0.09]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bryan 1985</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>6.8%</td>
<td>-0.02 [-0.28, 0.23]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delrio 1983</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>12.3%</td>
<td>-0.17 [-0.42, 0.08]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haffejee 1988</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>5.6%</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.14, 0.14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jacobs 1985</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>10.5%</td>
<td>-0.03 [-0.17, 0.10]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peltola 1989</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>41.2%</td>
<td>-0.00 [-0.06, 0.06]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steele 1983</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>6.5%</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.18, 0.18]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wells 1984</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>6.1%</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.13, 0.13]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total (95% CI)</strong></td>
<td><strong>232</strong></td>
<td><strong>235</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
<td><strong>-0.04 [-0.09, 0.01]</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Heterogeneity: Chi² = 5.04, df = 8 (P = 0.75); I² = 0%
Test for overall effect: Z = 1.42 (P = 0.16)

Figure H.16 Effect of cephalosporins in all culture-positive children

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>3 g cephalosporins Events</th>
<th>Conventional Total Events</th>
<th>Total Events</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Risk Difference M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
<th>Risk Difference M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aronoff 1984</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>4.1%</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.21, 0.21]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barson 1985</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>10.8%</td>
<td>-0.07 [-0.35, 0.22]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bryan 1985</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>8.2%</td>
<td>0.01 [-0.22, 0.23]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congeni 1984</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>10.4%</td>
<td>-0.19 [-0.37, -0.01]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delrio 1983</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>9.7%</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.14, 0.14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Girgis 1988</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>7.0%</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.13, 0.13]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haffejee 1988</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>7.1%</td>
<td>-0.04 [-0.34, 0.26]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jacobs 1985</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>9.0%</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.10, 0.10]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1986</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>21.1%</td>
<td>-0.16 [-0.28, -0.05]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steele 1983</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>7.5%</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.12, 0.12]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wells 1984</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>5.1%</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.17, 0.17]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total (95% CI)</strong></td>
<td><strong>212</strong></td>
<td><strong>194</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
<td><strong>-0.06 [-0.12, -0.01]</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Heterogeneity: Chi² = 10.41, df = 10 (P = 0.41); I² = 4%
Test for overall effect: Z = 2.14 (P = 0.03)
**Figure H.17 Diarrhoea following use of cephalosporins**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study or Subgroup</th>
<th>3 g cephalosporins Events</th>
<th>Total Events</th>
<th>Conventional Events</th>
<th>Total Events</th>
<th>Weight</th>
<th>Risk Difference M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
<th>Risk Difference M-H, Fixed, 95% CI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aronoff 1984</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2.3%</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.21, 0.21]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barson 1985</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>6.9%</td>
<td>0.38 [0.12, 0.63]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bryan 1985</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>5.0%</td>
<td>0.00 [-0.21, 0.21]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congeni 1984</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>6.3%</td>
<td>0.14 [-0.07, 0.35]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delrio 1983</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>10.9%</td>
<td>0.21 [0.01, 0.40]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haffejee 1988</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4.3%</td>
<td>0.12 [-0.11, 0.35]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jacobs 1985</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>6.9%</td>
<td>0.09 [-0.04, 0.22]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odio 1986</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>11.9%</td>
<td>-0.14 [-0.28, 0.01]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peltola 1989</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>27.9%</td>
<td>0.09 [-0.03, 0.20]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rodriguez 1985</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>13.3%</td>
<td>-0.01 [-0.07, 0.05]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steele 1983</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
<td>0.13 [-0.11, 0.37]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total (95% CI)</strong></td>
<td><strong>374</strong></td>
<td><strong>348</strong></td>
<td><strong>100.0%</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>0.08 [0.03, 0.13]</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total events</td>
<td><strong>76</strong></td>
<td><strong>45</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Heterogeneity:** Chi² = 26.29, df = 10 (P = 0.003); I² = 62%

**Test for overall effect:** Z = 3.04 (P = 0.002)
Appendix I – Cost effectiveness of polymerase chain reaction for diagnosis in suspected meningococcal disease

1.1 Introduction
The recently published SIGN guideline on the Management of Invasive Meningococcal disease in children recommends that all children with suspected invasive meningococcal disease should have blood taken for meningococcal PCR to confirm the diagnosis. However, whilst this may reflect the practice of some units in England and Wales, there is variation with other units only offering PCR in the event of a negative blood culture result.

Whilst there is evidence from clinical studies showing that blood PCR has a greater diagnostic accuracy than blood culture this does not automatically mean that routine PCR for all patients would represent an optimal use of scarce resources. Therefore, we compare the cost effectiveness of the following diagnostic strategies in children presenting in secondary care with a suspicion of meningococcal disease:

1. routine PCR and blood culture to all
2. blood culture followed by a PCR only if the blood culture is negative
3. routine ‘rapid’ PCR and blood culture for all

Strategies 1 and 2 are intended to reflect current practice in England and Wales. Strategy 3 has been included because it reflects an option that is technically feasible. However, the infrastructure does not currently exist to support such a strategy and is unlikely to within the next few years.

Children who present with a suspicion of meningococcal disease in secondary care will be started on antibiotic therapy immediately and the results of the diagnostic tests are less important than symptom severity in directing treatment. Most children would continue treatment for seven days unless there was a confirmed negative diagnosis. The low sensitivity of blood culture means that a negative culture will rarely be used as a basis for discontinuation of therapy, which is why a PCR is usually required in order to confirm a diagnosis.
expectation that these diagnostic strategies would have a clinically significant bearing on patient outcomes and therefore our economic assessment takes the form of a cost minimisation analysis. Whilst routine PCR for all children may increase the diagnostic costs, the earlier availability of confirmed negative results may produce some offsetting savings by facilitating early discontinuation of treatment and hospital discharge.

I.2 Method

This analysis is undertaken from the perspective of the NHS and personal social services which is in accordance with NICE guidelines methodology (http://www.nice.org.uk/media/5F2/44/The_guidelines_manual_2009_-_All_chapters.pdf). The model was developed in Tree Age Pro 2007® using a Markov decision analytic approach to reflect the importance of the temporal aspect in the analysis. The Markov modelling approach involves a transition between different health states over time. The model is split into cycles of equal duration and at the end of each cycle a transition to another health state is possible unless the state is said to be ‘absorbing’ [66]. In this analysis we model outcomes over a period of seven days to reflect the normal course of antibiotic treatment for a child presenting in secondary care with a suspicion of meningococcal disease. A cycle duration of four hours was chosen, as most mortality occurs within four hours of initial presentation to secondary care. Furthermore, most of the cases in which a diagnosis of meningococcal disease can be ruled out on clinical grounds (i.e. because of an alternative diagnosis) would become apparent within that four hour window. The model is run for 42 cycles in total.

A schematic of the model is shown in Figures I.1 to I.4 alongside a description of the strategies. The Markov model notation is briefly described below.

Decision node – the branch entering the decision node represents the population in which a decision between competing alternative strategies has to be made. The branches emanating from this node represent the alternative strategies that are available and are being compared in the analysis.

This indicates a truncated tree. Sometimes it is useful for presentational reasons not to show the complete decision tree.

This denotes the start of the Markov process.

Chance node – the branches emanating from a chance node give alternative patient pathways with implications for costs, outcomes and, in a Markov model, transition to other states. Probabilities are assigned to each branch emanating from a chance node.

Terminal node – in a Markov model these denote the transition to the various health states at the end of a cycle.

Figure I.1: The diagnostic strategies
All patients in the cohort start the model with a suspicion of meningococcal disease and incur the costs associated with the PCR test. At the end of the first cycle the cohort transfers to different health states. A proportion of patients are assumed to die in the first cycle (four hours after admission to hospital) reflecting the high mortality associated with meningococcal disease. It is also assumed that for a proportion of patients it will become clear during the first cycle that they do not in fact have meningococcal disease. Patients for whom a suspicion remains are sub-divided into two groups. The 'probable' group can, to all intents and purposes, be considered to have meningococcal disease and receive the full seven-day course of antibiotic treatment. The 'possible' group consists of those both with and without meningococcal disease. Those with disease will also receive the full seven-day course of antibiotic treatment as PCR is used to rule out a positive diagnosis. Therefore, the 'possible' group with disease also transit to the 'treat' health state at the end of the first cycle. Thus the only group of patients who are not in an 'absorbing state' after the first cycle are the 'possible no disease'. A proportion of these will be in generally good health ('well') and are discharged when the negative culture is available. The 'not well' remain in the 'possible no disease' state until a negative PCR result is available.

Figure I.3: Culture and PCR if culture negative (Strategy 2)

67 Cost of the test plus transport cost
In strategy 2 patients only have a PCR if the blood culture is negative. Blood culture has a high specificity and therefore most of the patients in the ‘possible no disease’ group will have a PCR following a negative blood culture, although that is not necessary in a sub-group of ‘well’ patients who, as in strategy 1, can be discharged once a negative blood culture result is available. In those in the ‘treat’ health state neither test result alters management and hence they remain in this ‘absorbing’ state. However, not all this group of patients will have a PCR as some will have a positive blood culture.

**Figure I.4: Culture and rapid PCR for everyone (Strategy 3)**

In strategy 3 all patients have a PCR test incurring the costs associated with this. As the PCR results are available earlier in this strategy, this facilitates an earlier discharge of patients in the ‘possible no disease’ group.
I.3 The Markov states

1. **suspicion** – this is the initial state and all patients start in this state. However, all patients move out of this state at the end of the 1st cycle. This transition at the end of the 1st cycle does not necessarily mean that meningococcal disease is no longer suspected but rather that the initial patient cohort has been divided into sub-groups. Patients are started on antibiotic treatment in this state.

2. **treat** – patients in this state receive the full seven-day course of antibiotic treatment.

3. **possible no disease** – testing has most value for patients in this state. Their objective condition is that they do not have meningococcal disease but that is not known to clinicians until they have a confirmed negative PCR. Most of these patients remain in this state until the PCR result becomes available although a proportion of ‘well’ patients may be discharged with a negative blood culture. Other patients are discharged when the PCR (negative) becomes available.

4. **discharged** – patients in this state are discharged from hospital and antibiotic treatment is discontinued.

5. **dead** - meningococcal disease has a high mortality rate and a proportion of the initial cohort are assumed to have died during the first four hours after hospital admission with a suspicion of meningococcal disease.

I.4 Model probabilities

Table I.1 shows the initial probabilities which determine the distribution of the cohort amongst the various states at the start of the Markov process. As meningococcal disease is suspected in all patients these probabilities are set so as ensure that all the cohort start in the suspicion state.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Probability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suspicion</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possible no disease</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treat</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ve clinical</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dead</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

At the end of the 1st cycle all patients in the cohort transfer to a health state which is governed by the probabilities shown in table I.2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Probability (value used in sensitivity analysis)</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Probable case</td>
<td>10% (15%)</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>Transition to ‘treat’ health state</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possible</td>
<td>70% (50%)</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>A chance node then determines transition according to actual disease status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possible no (disease)</td>
<td>90% (80%)</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>Transition to ‘possible no disease’ health state. The probability is of the subset (70%) defined as possible – it therefore represents 63% of the cohort</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The ‘treat’, ‘discharged’ and ‘dead’ states are absorbing and patients in that state remain in it until all model cycles are complete. It is only the ‘possible no disease’ health state that any further transition occurs.

Within the model there are also implicit and explicit probabilities attached to the diagnostic accuracy of blood culture and PCR and these values are given in table I.3. The sensitivity of blood culture is a particularly important parameter for strategy 2 as it determines the extent to which additional PCR is undertaken in order to confirm the diagnosis. PCR has a very high diagnostic accuracy and culture has a negligible false positive rate which is the justification for the simplifying assumptions indicated in table I.3.

### Table I.3 Test characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test characteristic</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Culture sensitivity</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>Varied as part of sensitivity analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culture specificity</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>Simplifying assumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR sensitivity</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>Simplifying assumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR specificity</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>Simplifying assumption</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The model uses probabilities that are conditional on the cycle number to determine patient flow and transition dependent on test results. So the probabilities assigned to branches from a chance node indicating whether a test result is available will be set to zero until a certain time has elapsed (measured in cycles) at which point that probability will become 100%. Table I.4 shows the time-to-test result (in cycles) which is assumed in the model. These values can be varied in sensitivity analyses.

### Table I.4 Time to test result

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Cycle available</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Culture</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>GDG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>GDG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR if ordered after a negative culture</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>GDG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid PCR</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>GDG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Finally, the model assumes that 20% of patients in the ‘probable no disease’ state would be ‘well’ enough to be discharged on the receipt of a negative culture result. Again this value can be altered as part of sensitivity analysis.

### 1.5 Costs

The costs included in the model were restricted to those relevant to an incremental analysis. So, for example, the costs of taking a culture were not included as all children would have this. The costs used in the model are given in table I.5. All costs can be varied in sensitivity analysis.
Table I.5 Model costs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>£25</td>
<td>Personal communication with Malcolm Guiver, HPA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid PCR</td>
<td>£25</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR transport</td>
<td>£25</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid PCR rapid transport</td>
<td>£25</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningitis treatment cost per cycle</td>
<td>£76</td>
<td>NHS Tariff 2008-09 (HRG Code A25 Nervous system Infection)</td>
<td>Non-elective spell tariff is £2,838 which is eligible for a 12% admitted patient tariff top-up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I.6 Results

A comparison of the incremental costs of the three strategies using ‘base-case’ model inputs is shown in table I.6. These include the costs of meningitis treatment as the different strategies have different implications for patient discharge. The model assumes that the test strategy does not affect clinical outcomes and therefore the least costly strategy is considered to be the most cost-effective.

Table I.6 Model costs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategy</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Incremental cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. Rapid PCR to everyone</td>
<td>£943</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. PCR to everyone</td>
<td>£1,460</td>
<td>£517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. PCR if culture negative</td>
<td>£1,901</td>
<td>£441</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I.7 Sensitivity analysis

Sensitivity analysis is used to explore the impact on the results of a change in model assumptions. This is particularly important where considerable uncertainty exists as to what the exact value of model inputs should be. If the conclusion of the model is not sensitive to changes in the assumptions within plausible ranges then there is greater confidence in the model output. Where results are sensitive to changes in the model’s inputs then further research may be indicated to resolve the uncertainty. Below a number of one-way sensitivity analyses are described, in which one input value is changed whilst holding all other values constant. The value is changed in a direction which favours strategy 2, as other changes would simply strengthen the base case result. Using this approach it can be possible to identify the cost effectiveness threshold for a model parameter holding all other base case inputs constant. If such a threshold value is outside of the plausible range than that can be considered as lessening the uncertainty surrounding the base case finding.

i. sensitivity of culture

Increasing the sensitivity of culture from 30% to 90% only reduces the cost of strategy 2 (PCR if culture negative) by £5 and therefore does not alter the ranking of the strategies in terms of their cost.

ii. Days from culture-to-test result

If the results of culture were available after cycle 6 (day one) the costs are as follows:

Strategy 3: £943
Strategy 1: £1,460
Even if the culture results were available after cycle 1, strategy 2 would be £19.50 dearer than strategy 1 (the cost of which is not altered by changes in the time-to-culture test result).

iii. Days from PCR-to-test result

In this sensitivity analysis, strategy 2 would only be cheaper than strategy 1 if PCR results were not available in strategy 1 until cycle 40, almost seven days.

iv. Cost of PCR test and PCR transport

These costs can be treated as a single entity as collectively they represent the incremental test cost of PCR. The cost of the PCR test and transport has to be £1,225 (compared to £50 in the base case analysis) before strategy 2 becomes a less costly strategy than strategy 1.

v. Proportion of ‘well’ patients who can be discharged after a negative culture

93% or more of the ‘possible no disease’ state patients would have to ‘well’ enough to be discharged following a negative culture in order for strategy 2 to be less costly than strategy 1 keeping all other base case inputs constant.

vi. Cost of meningitis per cycle

The treatment cost of meningitis per cycle would have to be £3.12 or lower for strategy 2 to be less costly than strategy 1, and £1.47 or lower for strategy 2 to be less costly than strategy 3 (culture plus rapid PCR).

vii. Cost of rapid PCR test and transport

The cost of the rapid PCR test plus transport would have to be £542 or greater for strategy 1 to be the cheapest strategy and the cost of the rapid PCR test plus transport would have to be £1,008 or more in order for strategy 3 to be more expensive than strategy 2.

Clearly, uncertainty is not restricted to a single parameter value and if several inputs were changed in a direction favouring strategy 2 then the cost effectiveness thresholds would be different. For example, if we change the model inputs as follows:

Cost of meningitis per cycle £50
Proportion of ‘possible no disease’ who are well 40%
Cost of PCR + PCR transport £100
Cycles from PCR-to-test result 24 (4 days)
Cycles from PCR-to-test result strategy 2 36 (6 days)
Cycles from culture-to-test result 6 (1 day)
Sensitivity of culture 40%

This multi-way sensitivity analysis gives the results shown in table I.7:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategy</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Incremental cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. Rapid PCR to everyone</td>
<td>£638</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. PCR to everyone</td>
<td>£1,255</td>
<td>£617</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. PCR if culture negative</td>
<td>£1,606</td>
<td>£351</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lastly we vary the probabilities (see table I.2) which govern the transition to the various ‘states’ at the end of the first cycle whilst holding all other model inputs constant at their base case values. This gives the results shown in table I.8.
Table I.8 Sensitivity analysis varying first cycle transition probabilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strategy</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Incremental cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. Rapid PCR to everyone</td>
<td>£1,087</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. PCR to everyone</td>
<td>£1,416</td>
<td>£329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. PCR if culture negative</td>
<td>£1,682</td>
<td>£266</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I.8 Discussion

In the base case analysis only 17% of the cohort is in the ‘treat’ state, where the model assumes that all children have meningococcal disease. Strategy 2 (PCR only if culture negative) allows lower test costs in this cohort only to the extent that culture detects cases, which given the poor sensitivity is limited. Lower test costs are also incurred for patients in the ‘dead’ and ‘discharged’ state which collectively account for another 20% of the base case population. However, 63% of the cohort are in the ‘possible no disease’ state and all these patients will have a negative culture. Most of the patients in this state will then have a PCR anyway in order to confirm the diagnosis. However, this delays the confirmatory negative diagnosis by two days (relative to strategy 1) with important implications for length of hospital stay.

If it is assumed that a negative culture would be available at cycle 6 (24 hours) rather than the base case which is cycle 12 (48 hours) then the relative cost effectiveness of strategy 2 would improve. However, even with this earlier availability of the culture result reduced test costs would still not offset the costs associated with an additional 6 cycle (24 hours) hospital length of stay.

Naturally assuming a higher PCR test and/or PCR transport cost also improves the relative cost effectiveness of strategy 2 by increasing the savings associated with averted PCR testing. However, these costs would have to be far higher than they actually would be for the averted test savings to more than compensate for the longer length of stay associated with strategy 2.

In a similar vein, increasing the proportion of ‘well’ children in the ‘possible no disease’ state who can be discharged following a negative culture increases the relative cost effectiveness of strategy 2. This is because it reduces the number of children who would be eligible for PCR in strategy 2 and also reduces the additional length of stay associated with this strategy. However, a very high proportion would have to fit this ‘well’ category in order for strategy 2 to be cheaper than strategy 1.

Again the cost of meningitis treatment does affect the relative costs of the different strategies. The lower the cost of treatment the lower the saving from averted hospital stay. However, treatments costs have to be implausibly low in order to alter the ranking of cost-effective treatments.

In the model rapid PCR and blood culture to all children (strategy 3) is more cost effective than PCR and blood culture to all children (strategy 1) because the base case assume identical test and transport costs and the earlier availability of confirmed negative diagnoses facilitates earlier discharge.

I.9 Conclusion

The results presented above suggest that rapid PCR given to all children presenting in secondary care with a suspicion of meningococcal disease is the cheapest and, given the cost minimisation approach, most cost-effective strategy. This finding was not sensitive to changes in the model’s inputs within plausible ranges. The principle driver of this result is that the rapid PCR allows a much earlier discharge of patients in the ‘possible no disease’ group.

Of the two strategies that are currently used in England and Wales (strategy 1 and strategy 2) blood culture and PCR (strategy 1) to all patients presenting in secondary care with a suspicion of meningococcal disease is more cost-effective than only undertaking PCR in those with a negative blood culture (strategy 2). Low test sensitivity and a relatively low proportion of the Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ((October 2009)) Page 221 of 244
cohort with actual disease means that strategy 2 averts only a small number of PCR tests. On the other hand the delay of a confirmatory PCR negative as a result of not ordering the test at admission means that a large number of the cohort who do not have disease have a longer length of hospital stay than is necessary. Again this finding is not sensitive to changes in the model’s inputs within plausible ranges.
Appendix J – Cost effectiveness of antibiotics for treatment of bacterial meningitis and meningococcal disease

J.1 Introduction
This analysis assesses the cost effectiveness of three antibiotics (determined by current prescribing practices and antibiotic resistance patterns of causative organisms in England and Wales) for the treatment of suspected meningococcal disease/suspected bacterial meningitis in children.

In economic evaluation it is necessary to take into account benefits/effects as well as costs. However, the clinical review undertaken for this guideline did not find evidence to support a difference in efficacy between the comparator antibiotics. Where there is no difference in effectiveness between different comparators, a cost-minimisation approach is justified. By selecting the cheapest option more resources are freed up for alternative uses in the NHS without any concomitant loss in health gain in the population of concern.

Therefore, a cost model was developed in Microsoft Excel® to compare the costs of the relevant antibiotics (ceftriaxone, cefotaxime and benzylpenicillin).

Cost effectiveness of empiric antibiotics for suspected bacterial meningitis/mentingococcal septicaemia

J.2 Method
The cost analysis is undertaken from the perspective of the NHS and personal social services which is in accordance with NICE guidelines methodology (http://www.nice.org.uk/media/5F2/44/The_guidelines_manual_2009_-_All_chapters.pdf). The costing is done using a bottom-up or “ingredients” approach which involves detailing the physical quantity of resources used in providing treatment alongside the unit cost of those resources. From this it is possible to estimate the total cost of treatment. This analysis has
restricted itself to pharmaceutical, other consumables and staffing costs. Those costs that are the same across different treatments (e.g. occupation of hospital bed) have been omitted as they have no impact on the cost differential between alternatives.

Unit cost data is taken from the most recently available published sources. Other model parameters are estimated using the expert opinion of the GDG.

The model did not address issues of antibiotic resistance which may of course have consequences for both health and resource use.

**J.3 Model parameters and assumptions**

The model’s input values are given in tables J.1 to J.6.

### Table J.1 Staff unit costs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Cost per hour</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Band 5 Nurse</td>
<td>£22.00</td>
<td>PSSRU Unit Costs of Health and Social Care (2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Band 6 Nurse</td>
<td>£25.00</td>
<td>PSSRU Unit Costs of Health and Social Care (2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specialty registrar</td>
<td>£41.00</td>
<td>PSSRU Unit Costs of Health and Social Care (2007)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table J.2 Staff tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource</th>
<th>Time (mins)</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Staff responsible</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Giving intravenous drug(^{68})</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>1 x Band 5 nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannula placement(^{69})</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>1 x Band 6 nurse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supervision of infusion(^{70})</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>1 x Specialty registrar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table J.3 Treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Weight of child (kg)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>The implications of different weight is assessed using sensitivity analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment duration (days)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of cannula insertions (benzylpenicillin)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>GDG(^{71})</td>
<td>Best Practice Guidelines suggest that peripheral IVs should be changed every 72hrs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of cannula insertions (cefotaxime)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>Best Practice Guidelines suggest that peripheral IVs should be changed every 72hrs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of cannula insertions (ceftriaxone)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>GDG</td>
<td>Best Practice Guidelines suggest that peripheral IVs should be changed every 72hrs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table J.4 Drug costs and dose

\(^{68}\) includes getting the drug & equipment to draw / make it up, checking the prescription, the patient & delivery which takes 3-5 minutes

\(^{69}\) This was estimated as 5-10 minutes. The higher value has been used for base case analysis

\(^{70}\) Ceftriaxone is given as an infusion at a dose of 80mg/kg. Benzylpenicillin and cefotaxime are given as a bolus

\(^{71}\) Whilst, the Best Practice Guidelines might suggest that only one cannula would be required for treatment of 2-day duration, the GDG felt that in practice, because of the number of doses, more than one cannula would be typically needed with benzylpenicilllin
### Drug Dose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dose (mg/kg)</th>
<th>Vial quantity</th>
<th>Cost per vial (£0.46)</th>
<th>Frequency (per day)</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>benzylpenicillin</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>600mg</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>BNFC (2008)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cefotaxime</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>500mg</td>
<td>2.14</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>BNFC (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ceftriaxone</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>1g</td>
<td>10.17</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>BNFC (2008)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table J.5 Consumable costs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Unit cost (£)</th>
<th>Total cost (£)</th>
<th>Antibiotic dose</th>
<th>Cannula insertion</th>
<th>Infusion</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal saline flush – 10ml ampoule</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>BNFC (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10ml leuk lock syringe</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Medisave UK Ltd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manometer extension line (50cms)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.56</td>
<td>1.56</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>NHS Supply Chain (Oct 2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepsal flush – 5ml ampoule</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>BNFC (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5ml syringe</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>First Aid Warehouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2ml syringe</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>First Aid Warehouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Needle</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>First Aid Warehouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-sterile gloves</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>NHS Supply Chain (Oct 2007)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinell wipe</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>SP Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV burette giving set</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>SP Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500ml bag of dextrose/saline</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Baxter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannula t-piece extension (t-connector)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.37</td>
<td>1.37</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>NHS Supply Chain (Oct 2007)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

72 For a child of a given weight the total dose (mg) is calculated. This is then used to determine the minimum number of vials needed to meet that dose given the size of the vials
73 http://www.medisave.co.uk/10ml-syringe-leurloklock-per-box-of-100-p-5150.html - £19.94 per box of 100
74 Price each if bought in a box of 50 - £1.56
75 http://www.firstaidwarehouse.co.uk/xpp-sterile_single_use_hypodermic_syringe_5ml_pack_of_100.html
76 http://www.firstaidwarehouse.co.uk/xpp-sterile_single_use_hypodermic_syringe_2ml_pack_of_100.html
77 http://www.firstaidwarehouse.co.uk/xpp-sterile_single_use_hypodermic_syringe_5ml_pack_of_100.html
78 Gloves examination latex powder free sterile pairs (£7.32 for box of 50 - 6 box order)
79 £2.99 for box of 40 - http://www.sp-services.co.uk/product_info.php/products_id/3708
80 http://www.sp-services.co.uk/product_info.php/products_id/2292
81 http://www.ecomm.baxter.com/ecatalog/browseCatalog.do?lid=10011&hid=10000&cid=10001&key=cfcf53b166f78076c8decf6a58e2f1&pid=462468
82 IV accessory - T connector £1.37 each for 50 box order

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 225 of 244
The purchase of medical equipment also carries an opportunity cost but differs from operating costs such as labour and consumables in certain respects. The purchase of equipment often involves an upfront payment (or investment) before use. However, that cost is fixed as it does not vary with the quantity of treatment provided. The equipment can often be used over a number of years before it needs to be replaced.

Capital costs have two facets:

- Opportunity cost – the money spent on the equipment could have been invested in some other venture yielding positive benefits. This is calculated by applying an interest rate to the sum invested in the equipment.
- Depreciation cost – the equipment has a certain lifespan and depreciates over time. Eventually, the equipment has to be replaced.

In economic evaluation, the usual practice is to annuitise the initial capital outlay over the expected life of the equipment. This gives an ‘equivalent annual cost’, which can then be apportioned to the procedure on a pro rata basis based on the typical equipment use over the course of the year in order to derive a unit cost of using that equipment. Calculating the equivalent annual cost means making an allowance for the differential timing of costs by discounting.

The formula for calculating the equivalent annual cost is given below:

\[ E = \left( K - \frac{S}{(1 + r)^n}\right) \times A(n, r) \]

where:

- \( E \) = equivalent annual cost
- \( K \) = purchase price of equipment
- \( S \) = resale value
- \( r \) = discount (interest rate)
- \( n \) = equipment lifespan
- \( A(n, r) \) = annuity factor (\( n \) years at interest rate \( r \))

Assigning equipment costs to an individual procedure is less straightforward. Firstly, it is necessary to calculate an equivalent annual cost, reflecting that the initial purchase cost of the...
equipment. Table J.6 shows the values that were used to calculate the equipment cost per infusion for an annuity factor of 2.8.

**Table J.6 Equipment costs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Unit cost</th>
<th>Total Cost (K)</th>
<th>Resale Value (S)</th>
<th>Life (yrs)</th>
<th>Discount rate86 (r)</th>
<th>Infusion time (min)</th>
<th>Use per day (hrs)</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infusion pump</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>£977</td>
<td>£977</td>
<td>£0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3.5%</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Medisave UK Ltd87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Equipment cost per infusion £0.04**

**J.4 Results**

A comparison of the costs of the different antibiotics is shown in table J.7 and graphically in figure J.1. The calculation of these costs is described below:

**A. Drug cost**

The steps are as follows:

1. Calculate the total number of mg per dose = mg/kg x weight of child
2. Calculate the minimum number of vials to provide that dose89
3. Calculate the cost per dose
4. Calculate the total doses = doses per day x days of treatment
5. Calculate the total drugs cost = cost per dose x no. of doses

E.g. benzylpenicillin in the base case analysis:

- Weight of child = 20 kg
- Dose = 50mg/kg \( \Rightarrow 50 \times 20 = 1,000 \text{ mg per dose} \)
- Vial quantity = 600mg \( \Rightarrow 2 \text{ vial required} \)
- Cost per vial = £0.46 \( \Rightarrow £0.92 \text{ per dose} \)
- Frequency = 4 times per day
- Treatment duration = 2 days
- No. of doses = 4 x 2 = 8
- Drugs cost = £0.92 x 8 = £7.36

**B. Staffing cost**

Staffing costs relate to two tasks – placement of cannula and giving intravenous treatment. The cost of doing each of these tasks is calculated according to the staff doing them and the time it takes. The total staff cost is then calculated according to the number of times these tasks are

---

86 The discount rate is that stipulated in the 2009 NICE Guidelines Manual
87 http://www.medisave.co.uk/needles-amp-syringes-syringe-drivers-c-137_386.html
88 A more detailed breakdown of how these costs are derived is given in Appendix B
89 Costs are an increasing function of weight, but the increase in “lumpy” as it is determined by the number of vials rather than the total dosage

_Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009)_ Page 227 of 244
repeated in a course of treatment. In the base case analysis it is assumed that a child would
require two cannula placements with benzylpenicillin or a single cannula with ceftriaxone and
cефотаксим. The number of times intravenous treatment is given is the same as the total number
of doses (see calculation above).

(E.g. benzylpenicillin in the base case analysis):

For cannula placement:
One specialty registrar @ £41 per hour
Time to place cannula = 10 minutes \( \times \frac{£41}{10 + 60} = £6.83 \)
No. of cannula = 2
Cost of cannula placement = 2 \( \times £6.83 = £13.67 \)

For giving intravenous treatment:
One band 5 nurse @ £22 per hour
One band 6 nurse @ £25 per hour
Time to give IV treatment = 10 minutes \( \times £47 \times (10 + 60) = £7.83 \)
No. of doses = 8
Cost of IV treatment = 8 \( \times £7.83 = £62.67 \)

TOTAL STAFF COST
\( \text{\( ^{90} \)} \) = £13.67 + £62.67 = £76.33

C. Consumable cost

In addition to the drugs themselves other consumable resources are used for each antibiotic
dose given and for each cannula insertion.
In table J.5 this is calculated as:
Antibiotic dose = £1.16
Cannula insertion = £6.36

(E.g. benzylpenicillin in the base case analysis):
For cannula placement:
Number of cannulas = 2
Cannula consumable cost = 2 \( \times £6.36 = £12.72 \)

For antibiotics:
Number of doses = 8

\( ^{90} \) Totals may reflect rounding to two decimal places
Antibiotic consumable cost = 8 x £1.16 = £9.28

TOTAL CONSUMABLE COST = £22.00

TOTAL COST OF BENZYL PENICILLIN = £7.36 + £76.31 + £22.00 = £105.70

Table J.7 Total costs of antibiotic treatment for a 20 kg child

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>benzylpenicillin</th>
<th>cefotaxime</th>
<th>ceftriaxone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drug</td>
<td>£7.36</td>
<td>£25.68</td>
<td>£40.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staff</td>
<td>£76.33</td>
<td>£53.83</td>
<td>£22.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumable</td>
<td>£22.00</td>
<td>£13.32</td>
<td>£8.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTAL</td>
<td>£105.70</td>
<td>£92.84</td>
<td>£71.86</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure J.1 Total costs of antibiotic treatment for a 20 kg child

J.5 Sensitivity analysis
In economic evaluation a technique known as sensitivity analysis is used to assess the importance of uncertainty around baseline parameter values. If the model’s conclusions are not affected by changing assumptions and parameter values then there is greater confidence in the result suggested by the model. On the other hand if the model’s results are particularly sensitive to small changes in some parameter values this may indicate what the key driver’s of the results are and where further research is needed to resolve uncertainty. In this model there is some uncertainty around the timing and frequency of certain tasks. The results may also vary according to the weight of the child as drug dose is a function of weight. Two one-way sensitivity analyses are shown in Figure J.2 and J.3 respectively which indicate the effect of changing a single parameter value holding everything else in the model constant.
Sensitivity analysis
Variation in cost with child's weight

![Graph showing variation in cost with child's weight](image)

Sensitivity analysis
Variation in cannula insertion time

![Graph showing variation in cannula insertion time](image)

**J.6 Discussion**

With the base case assumptions ceftriaxone appears to be the cheapest antibiotic. This is because the saving in staff time associated with a treatment only administered once a day more than offsets the substantially higher cost of the drug itself. Sensitivity analyses generally showed that these results were not sensitive to one-way changes in model parameters, with ceftriaxone remaining the cheapest option under most scenarios. However, an exception was a sensitivity analysis suggesting that the results were sensitive to the weight of the child. Benzylpenicillin was cheaper than cefotaxime in children with a weight greater than 30 kg and cheaper than ceftriaxone in children with weighing more than 50 kg.
This analysis strongly suggests that ceftriaxone is the most cost-effective antibiotic for the treatment of suspected meningococcal disease or suspected meningitis in a majority of children as, despite a bi-modal age distribution of disease, peak incidence would occur in children less than 20 kg in weight. However, it should be borne in mind that the cost model did not take into account any complicated "downstream" effects on health or costs arising from antibiotic resistance, patterns of which may vary locally.

Cost of antibiotics for confirmed bacterial meningitis/meningococcal septicaemia

The model is essentially that used for empiric antibiotics for suspected disease. Treatment duration is longer and most costs increase as a linear function of duration. For patients treated with ceftriaxone earlier discharge may be possible, although actual practice varies, as only one dose per day is required. In the event of early discharge antibiotic treatment could be completed either by a home visit from a community nurse or as an out-patient in a ‘day-bed’ area of the hospital. In the absence of any increased risk early discharge is likely to increase the cost effectiveness of ceftriaxone relative to other antibiotic alternatives.

The results shown in Figure J.4 indicate why this is likely to be the case.

Figure J.4 Total costs of antibiotic treatment for a 20 kg child with confirmed bacterial meningitis or meningococcal septicaemia
Appendix K – Cost effectiveness of crystalloid versus colloid intravenous fluid for resuscitation in suspected meningococcal septicaemia

K.1 Introduction
The GDG concluded that there is insufficient evidence to decide whether crystalloid or colloid solutions have greater efficacy for volume resuscitation in children and young people with meningococcal septicaemia. An absence of evidence of a difference is not the same as evidence of no difference but it does mean that with the current state of knowledge the GDG felt unable to adequately assess the relative clinical effectiveness of the two alternatives.

However, there is a large cost differential between the two alternatives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Solution</th>
<th>Cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Crystalloid</td>
<td>£0.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colloid</td>
<td>£34.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As there is insufficient evidence to suggest better clinical effectiveness with colloid then there is a rationale for recommending crystalloid over colloid on economic grounds. However, we acknowledge that the alternatives may not in fact be equally effective and this is important because mortality is the primary outcome. If crystalloid were to prove the more effective option then the economic case would be clear cut, with crystalloid dominating colloid (cheaper and effective). However, if colloid were more effective then the cost effectiveness would depend on whether the additional benefit was worth the additional cost. Below we undertake a simple “what-if” threshold analysis to determine what additional benefit would be needed for colloid to be considered as the cost-effective option.
K.2 Calculations

The first step is to calculate the incremental cost of colloid relative to crystalloid:

Incremental cost: £34 - £0.49 = £33.51

The 2009 NICE guidelines manual advises that an intervention will generally be considered cost-effective if the incremental cost effectiveness ratio is £20,000 per QALY or less. In other words, the NHS is willing to pay up to at least £20,000 per QALY gained.

\[
\text{Incremental cost} + \text{Incremental QALY gain} = \text{Incremental cost per QALY}
\]

\[
£33.51 \div \text{Incremental QALY gain} = £20,000
\]

Or, rearranging

\[
£33.51 \div £20,000 = \text{Incremental QALY gain}
\]

\[
\text{Incremental QALY gain} = 0.0017
\]

This means that as long as a patient gains at least 0.0017 QALY as a result of having the more expensive colloid, it would still be considered cost-effective relative to colloid. However, what we are really talking about is the average QALY gain across all patients having colloid as opposed to crystalloid. For most patients it will make no difference (otherwise we’d have evidence to this effect) and in these the incremental QALY gain will be zero. However, if colloid is more effective, then in a very small minority of patients the difference is a matter of life and death and a very substantial gain would result. The average QALY gain of colloid over crystalloid is a weighted average of the QALY gain in patients for whom the treatment makes no difference and the patients for whom treatment is life saving. So, if we saved one patient as a result of colloid what total number of patients treated is needed to give an average QALY gain of 0.0017?

QALY gain from averted death

The Quality Adjusted Life Year (QALY) is NICE’s preferred measure of benefit for economic evaluation. This is because it can be seen as a generic measure of health which allows a comparison across treatments which affect different dimensions of health, e.g. morbidity v mortality.

It embodies the two principle objectives of health care

1. increase longevity
2. increase quality of life

Estimating a QALY involves placing a quality of life weight on a particular health state. This quality weight lies between 0-1, where 1 denotes full or ‘perfect health’ and 0 denotes death.

Assume that the mean age of children and young people covered by this guideline and requiring resuscitation is 10 years. The remaining life expectancy at age 10, taken from the ONS 2005-2007 interim life tables (http://www.statistics.gov.uk/StatBase/Product.asp?vlnk=14459), is approximately 70 years. If we further assume that all these years would be lived in a state of ‘perfect health’ we can obtain an upper bound estimate of the QALY gain from an averted death at age 10. However, in line with the NICE Guidelines Manual (2009) these QALY are discounted at a rate of 3.5% per annum. Figure K.1 shows the impact of discounting on the total QALY gain.

\[
\sum_{i=0}^{70} \frac{1}{1.035^i} = 26.91 \text{ QALYs}
\]

91 It is possible to give a QALY weight of ≤ 0 to health states if they are deemed to be no better or worse than death
This looks spuriously precise especially as we know that most lives are not lived in perfect health for their entirety. Therefore, it seems reasonable to round the above value down to give an approximate gain of 25 QALYs rising from an averted death.

N is the maximum total number treated to achieve the cost effectiveness threshold, for each additional death averted through use of colloid.

Average QALY gain = (25 x 1/N) + (0 x ((N-1)/N))

0.0017 = 25/N

Or, rearranging

N = 25/0.0017

N = 14,700

Figure K.1 Graphs to show annual and cumulative QALY gain of 70 years lived in perfect health
K.3 Discussion

The calculations above assume that the only outcome with an impact on health related quality of life is survival. For example, it is implicitly assumed that both alternatives have an identical side effect profile. Were this not the case, differences in morbidity, short and long term, would also have to be incorporated into calculating the differential QALY between these two treatments.

The “what-if” threshold analysis presented above suggests that colloid could be considered cost-effective, despite its much higher cost, providing that it saved at least one life per 14,700 treated patients. This is not to say that it is cost-effective, but rather it gives the level of clinical effectiveness relative to crystalloid that would be necessary given the current differential in cost and NICE’s willingness to pay threshold of £20,000 per QALY. However, given that there is no reason currently to prefer one treatment over the other in terms of their efficacy, then it makes sense at this moment in time to recommend crystalloid. This is a considerably cheaper option and thereby frees up resources for alternate NHS use and patient benefit.
Appendix L – Cost effectiveness of complement deficiency screening in survivors of meningococcal disease

L.1 Introduction

Deficiencies in the complement system are the most well-known of the inherited defects of the immune system reported in certain patients with meningococcal disease. Those with complement deficiency are prone to recurrent meningococcal disease or other serious bacterial diseases. It is argued that the potential benefits of identifying complement deficiency include lowering the threshold for diagnosis of subsequent infection and identifying family members who may be at risk of meningococcal disease or other infection. It is further posited that some improvement in health outcomes could be achieved in such people by offering immunisation and long-term antibiotic prophylaxis.

However, these potential benefits of screening and treatment entail an opportunity cost in that the resources used to identify and treat complement deficiency could be deployed in some alternate use which would also generate improvements in health outcomes. Therefore, it is important to consider the cost effectiveness of screening (and subsequent treatment\(^{92}\)) for complement deficiency. Clearly, as with any screening test the prevalence of the condition being screened for is an important determinant of cost effectiveness. The lower the prevalence the greater the resources used identifying a single case. Evidence on the prevalence of complement deficiency was estimated as part of a systematic review undertaken for this guideline.

Unfortunately there is insufficient evidence to reasonably estimate the cost effectiveness of screening for complement deficiency particularly in relation to treatment efficacy. Therefore, the GDG requested that a threshold cost effectiveness analysis be undertaken to aide guideline recommendations. A “what-if” approach allows the cost effectiveness to be explored under alternative scenarios and for the cost effectiveness thresholds for parameter values to be

\(^{92}\) The benefits of screening are contingent on effective treatment and therefore the cost effectiveness of screening cannot be adequately addressed in isolation from treatment costs and effects.
estimated in these scenarios. The GDG could use such results in conjunction with their clinical
ejudgement to ascertain the likely cost effectiveness of complement screening. This could then
form the basis of a practice or research recommendation.

**L.2 Method**

A model has been developed in Microsoft Excel® in order to evaluate the cost effectiveness of
complement screening under various “what-if” scenarios. A single worksheet allows the user to
simultaneously change model inputs whilst observing the impact these changes have on model
outcomes, see Figure L.1.

**Changing the models inputs**

On the left hand-side of the screen is a data entry grid which facilitates sensitivity and threshold
analyses. Most of the values can be changed within certain ranges by using a slider. All inputs
can additionally be entered directly in the “value” column and here the input values are not
restricted.

**The model results grid**

On the right hand side of the screen is a results grid. The ‘QALY gain necessary’ is the amount of
QALYs that are needed for cost effectiveness according to the Willingness to Pay (WTP) for a
QALY – which has a default value of £20,000. If the ‘QALY gain necessary’ is greater than the
actual ‘incremental QALY’ then the incremental cost effectiveness ratio will be greater than
£20,000 per QALY. Any change in the input(s) is immediately reflected in the results grid making it
easy to explore thresholds for cost effectiveness under different scenarios.

**Base-case inputs**

The base case inputs are given in table L.1. Some of these inputs can be considered evidence-
based but others simply reflect an illustrative “what-if” scenario. Therefore, no greater weight
should necessarily be given to the base case output than the output in different scenarios.

**Table L.1 Model inputs and values**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Slider Range</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Population</td>
<td>1,500</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>GDG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willingness to pay (WTP) for a QALY</td>
<td>£20,000</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>NICE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost of meningococcal disease</td>
<td>£2,838</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>NHS Tariff 2008-09 (HRG Code A25 Nervous system Infection)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test and test transport cost</td>
<td>£45</td>
<td>£10 to £100</td>
<td>Personal communication, Paul Holloway, GDG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Work-up cost if abnormality</td>
<td>£1,000</td>
<td>£500 to £2,500</td>
<td>Personal communication, Paul Holloway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotic prophylaxis cost</td>
<td>£900</td>
<td>£100 to £2,000</td>
<td>GDG, BNF (57) Netten (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complement deficiency prevalence Sensitivity</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>0.1% to 1.0%</td>
<td>Assumption, GDG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specificity</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>50% to 100%</td>
<td>Assumption, GDG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

93) The initial ‘screen’ for cases of meningococcal disease would include an evaluation of the Alternative Complement Pathway and thus in addition to the THC (or CH50) would include an AP50. The cost of this would be roughly the same as for the CH50 so the cost of the two would be approximately £30 plus the cost of the C3 & C4 at £5.50 - giving approximately £35.50 in total for initial testing plus £10 transport cost
94) Treatment is assumed to consist of a Meningococcal polysaccharide A, C, W135 and Y vaccine (£16.73) and an antibiotic prophylaxis phenoxymethylpenicillin (250mg) taken twice daily (£1.25 for 28 tablets) for 70 years, an approximation of the remaining life expectancy. Drug costs are taken from BNF 57 and discounted at 3.5% per annum where appropriate. It was additionally assumed that vaccination would require 10 minutes of a community nurse’s time.
### QALY estimate

Meningococcal disease is associated with a number of long term sequelae impacting on health related quality of life and a health state utility was assigned to each the sequelae identified in a review produced for this guideline. It was assumed that in the absence of meningococcal disease, children would live a further 70 years in perfect health. With the exception of death, it was assumed that the sequelae were lifelong but that they had no additional impact on life expectancy. It was then possible to estimate a discounted QALY loss associated with each outcome. QALYs were discounted an annual rate of 3.5% in accordance with the NICE Guidelines Manual. The review undertaken for this guideline produced estimates of the proportion of children with meningococcal disease with these sequelae. These proportions were used to produce a weighted average estimate for the QALY gain from an averted case of meningococcal disease (see table L.2).

#### Table L.2 Weighted QALY loss from a case of meningococcal disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcome</th>
<th>Health utility</th>
<th>QALY loss</th>
<th>weight</th>
<th>Weighted QALY loss</th>
<th>Source and Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>26.91</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>2.69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hearing loss</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>7.53</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>Shephard et al 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amputations</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>7.80</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>Shephard et al 2005 Based on single amputation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other orthopaedic complications</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.017</td>
<td>0.0002</td>
<td>Health state not clearly defined so ‘dummy’ estimate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin complications</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>Shephard et al 2005 Based on utility for ‘skin scarring’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurological sequelae</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>25.30</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>1.77</td>
<td>Shephard et al 2005 Based on utility for ‘neurological disability’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pain</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.002</td>
<td>Health state not clearly defined so ‘dummy’ estimate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total weighted QALY loss** 5.0

---

95 This is an approximation based on an assumption that the average age at infection is 10 years and that life expectancy at birth is 80 years.
L.3 Results

The results are presented below for a range of scenarios (tables L.3 to L.12). In all scenarios where an input is varied, all other model inputs are kept constant at their default value.

1. Base-case values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost</td>
<td>£72,474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental QALY</td>
<td>5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost/QALY</td>
<td>£12,884</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum QALY gain needed</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Varying the cost of a case of meningococcal disease

In this sensitivity analysis the cost of a meningococcal disease is varied between £0 and £60,000. The results are illustrated in Figure L.2. If the cost of a case were £67,600 or more then screening would generate net saving with costs of screening and treatment more than offset by the averted costs of meningococcal disease.

Figure L.2. Incremental cost per QALY varying the costs of meningococcal disease
3. Varying the initial screen/transport cost

In this analysis the cost of the initial screening test and transport is varied between a low of £10 and a high of £100.

Table L.4 Results varying the cost of the initial screen/transport cost

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Test cost £10</th>
<th>Test cost £100</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost</td>
<td>£19,974</td>
<td>£154,974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental QALY</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost/QALY</td>
<td>£3,551</td>
<td>£27,551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum QALY gain needed</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The threshold test/transport cost for an incremental cost effectiveness ratio of £20,000 per QALY is £71.

4. Varying the cost of work-up if an abnormality is found

In this analysis the cost of work-up if an abnormality is found is varied between £500 and £2,500.

Table L.5 Results varying the cost of work-up if an abnormality is found

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Work-up cost £500</th>
<th>Work-up cost £2,500</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost</td>
<td>£70,224</td>
<td>£79,224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental QALY</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost/QALY</td>
<td>£12,484</td>
<td>£14,084</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum QALY gain needed</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The work-up costs would have to exceed £9,900 in order to generate an incremental cost effectiveness ratio of £20,000 per QALY.

5. Varying the cost of treatment in identified cases of complement deficiency

Here the cost of treatment in identified cases is varied between £100 and £2,000.

Table L.6 Results varying the cost of treatment in identified cases of complement deficiency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Treatment cost £100</th>
<th>Treatment cost £2,000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost</td>
<td>£68,874</td>
<td>£77,424</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT ([October 2009]) Page 240 of 244
Output | Treatment cost £100 | Treatment cost £2,000
--- | --- | ---
Incremental QALY | 5.6 | 5.6
Incremental cost/QALY | £12,244 | £13,764
Minimum QALY gain needed | 3.4 | 3.9

1. Treatment costs would have to exceed £9,800 to give an incremental cost effectiveness ratio of £20,000 per QALY.

6. Varying the prevalence of disease

The impact of varying the prevalence of complement deficiency between 0.1% and 1.0% is assessed here.

Table L.7 Results varying the prevalence of complement deficiency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Prevalence</th>
<th>Prevalence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost</td>
<td>£69,158</td>
<td>£84,079</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental QALY</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>18.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost/QALY</td>
<td>£36,884</td>
<td>£4,484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum QALY gain needed</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>4.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. The threshold prevalence for an ICER of £20,000 per QALY is 0.2%.

7. Varying the screening test sensitivity

In this analysis we evaluate how estimates of cost effectiveness vary with the detection rate of the screening test between 50% and 100%.

Table L.8 Results varying the sensitivity of the screening test

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Sensitivity 50%</th>
<th>Sensitivity 100%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost</td>
<td>£69,987</td>
<td>£72,474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental QALY</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost/QALY</td>
<td>£24,884</td>
<td>£12,884</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum QALY gain needed</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14. The threshold for cost effectiveness at £20,000 per QALY for test sensitivity is 63% holding all other model values constant.

8. Varying the screening test specificity

Here the effect of varying the specificity of the initial screening test between 50% and 100% is assessed.

Table L.9 Results varying the specificity of the screening test

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Specificity 50%</th>
<th>Specificity 100%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost</td>
<td>£1,493,199</td>
<td>£72,474</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental QALY</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost/QALY</td>
<td>£265,458</td>
<td>£12,884</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum QALY gain needed</td>
<td>74.7</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 241 of 244
At a specificities of 98% and below the incremental cost effectiveness exceeds £20,000 per QALY.

9. Varying the probability of further infection if no treatment

This analysis explores the consequences of varying the probability of reinfection\(^6\) in the absence of treatment between 0% and 100%.

### Table L.10 Results varying the probability of reinfection in the absence of treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Probability of reinfection 0%</th>
<th>Probability of reinfection 100%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost</td>
<td>£76,050</td>
<td>£68,897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental QALY</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>11.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost/QALY</td>
<td>Dominated(^7)</td>
<td>£6,124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum QALY gain needed</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The threshold probability of reinfection to produce an ICER of £20,000 per QALY is 32%.

10. Varying the efficacy of treatment

This analysis investigates the relationship between treatment and efficacy and the cost effectiveness of screening for complement deficiency. The relative risk reduction from treatment is varied from 0% (treatment does not work) and 100% (treatment offers complete protection from future infection).

### Table L.11 Results varying the relative risk reduction with treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output</th>
<th>Relative risk reduction 0%</th>
<th>Relative risk reduction 100%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost</td>
<td>£76,050</td>
<td>£68,897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental QALY</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>11.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost/QALY</td>
<td>Dominated(^8)</td>
<td>£6,124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum QALY gain needed</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The threshold relative risk reduction for an ICER of £20,000 per QALY is 32%.

11. Varying the QALY gain from an averted meningitis case

Here we show how the cost effectiveness with changes in the assumptions about the QALY gain from an averted case of meningococcal disease from 0.1 QALY per case to 10 QALYs per case.

### Table L.12 Results varying the QALY gain from an averted case of meningococcal disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Output</th>
<th>QALY gain from averted case 0.1</th>
<th>QALY gain from averted case 10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost</td>
<td>£72,474</td>
<td>£72,4734</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental QALY</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>11.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incremental cost/QALY</td>
<td>£644,210</td>
<td>£6,442</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum QALY gain needed</td>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

\(^6\) A simplifying assumption is made that there would only be one further case of reinfection in the absence of treatment

\(^7\) More costly without any health gain, so unambiguously not cost-effective

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 242 of 244
The threshold QALY gain for an ICER of £20,000 per QALY is 3.1.

**L.4 Sensitivity analysis**

In addition to considerable uncertainty about any treatment effect size there is also uncertainty with respect to the savings and the QALY gain (which is a weighted average based on the incidence of all sequelae including death) from an averted meningitis case. Whilst there is published data on the cost and QALY implications of averted disease, children who are susceptible to repeat infection often have milder disease. Therefore, the sensitivity analysis presented below shows the threshold for cost effectiveness for both selective and routine testing strategies varying the gain from an averted case between 0-10 QALYs and the relative risk reduction with treatment between 0% and 100%. The analysis was undertaken using a lower bound estimate of the saving from an averted case of meningococcal disease (based on the treatment cost of an acute episode) and a higher saving of £10,000 per averted case. It was assumed that the prevalence of complement deficiency was 0.3% amongst all children with meningococcal disease, but 1% in the subgroup who accounted for 10% of all cases. The results are illustrated below in Figures L.3 to L.6.

1. Saving per averted case = £3,179

**Figure L.3. Threshold cost effectiveness for selective testing**

![Risk Reduction](image)

**Figure L.4. Threshold cost effectiveness for routine testing**

Bacterial meningitis and meningococcal septicaemia: full guideline DRAFT (October 2009) Page 243 of 244
1. Saving per averted case = £10,000

2. **Figure L.5.** Threshold cost effectiveness for selective testing

3. **Figure L.6.** Threshold cost effectiveness for routine testing
L.5 Discussion

This model provides insights into the type of scenarios in which screening for complement deficiency could be considered cost-effective. It also indicates where the model is most sensitive to changes in the input data and, therefore, where future research may best be directed.

However, considerable care needs to be exercised in interpreting the above results. Limitations with the data makes an accurate evidence based assessment of the cost effectiveness of screening for complement deficiency in children who have survived an episode of meningococcal disease problematic. In particular there is a lack of evidence on the effectiveness of treatment in those children identified with complement deficiency (e.g. vaccination, MedicAlert subscription, liberal precautionary use of antibiotics).

Various scenarios are explored above by varying a single input whilst keeping all other inputs constant at their default values. However, uncertainty is not necessarily confined to a single input and there are a huge number of scenarios that could potentially be assessed by varying many inputs simultaneously. It is especially important to note this because the sensitivity of the model’s results to changes in a single input value is not generally independent to the value of the other model inputs. So Figure L.2, for example, suggests that the cost effectiveness of screening for complement deficiency is fairly sensitive to the assumptions made about the costs of an averted case of meningococcal disease. However, if much lower treatment efficacy is assumed (i.e. a relative risk reduction from treatment of 4%), then changes to the incremental cost effectiveness ratio in response to changes in this assumption are much less marked. Conversely, the ICER becomes even more sensitive to changes in the assumptions about the costs of an averted case of meningococcal disease if higher treatment efficacy is assumed.

The results presented above suggest that the cost effectiveness of screening is not very sensitive to changes in the assumptions about the cost of work-up if an abnormality is found or the treatment costs. Neither of these inputs affects health outcomes and because of the small number of cases complement deficiency identified, their overall contribution to the total costs is relatively small. The importance of these costs would increase with declining test specificity as there would be increasing ‘downstream’ costs associated with false positives. However, this would merely tend to reinforce a view that screening in low prevalence populations is often inappropriate because of the poor positive predictive value of the test. In any event, not too much uncertainty surrounds these costs.
The model does suggest that results are sensitive to fairly small absolute changes in the costs of the initial screening. This is an intuitive finding given the importance of the screening cost to the total strategy costs, especially in the absence of false positives. However, this data is not subject to considerable uncertainty with the availability of a well sourced cost estimate.

Changes in assumptions concerning disease prevalence are also an important determinant of cost effectiveness. Clearly the more cases of complement deficiency the greater the potential health gain in identifying children who would benefit from preventative treatment. Whilst it is interesting to estimate a prevalence threshold for cost effectiveness, there is some evidence-base for the default model input.

The base-case analysis assumes a screening test with perfect diagnostic accuracy. Departures from this assumption inevitably would lessen the cost effectiveness of screening with more missed cases and/or costs associated with false positives. With other default inputs held constant the specificity seems a particularly important determinant of the cost effectiveness of screening with every percentage point fall in specificity producing a larger increase in the ICER than every percentage point fall in sensitivity. This reflects the importance of the costs of false positives in a low prevalence population.

Not surprisingly, the model shows that the cost effectiveness is sensitive to changes in assumptions regarding the probability of further infection in children with complement deficiency. This probability is a function of both the underlying risk of infection in the absence of treatment and the degree of protection from that risk provided by that treatment. Whilst, there is some data indicating the risk of reinfection, there is a lack of evidence on the clinical effectiveness of treatment in this group of children and research here could help establish the cost effectiveness of screening for complement deficiency. The model shows that screening for complement deficiency could be highly cost-effective in a scenario where there was a high risk of reinfection and where treatment was highly efficacious.

Varying the QALY gain from an averted meningococcal case is also an important determinant of the cost effectiveness of screening. Whilst some uncertainty surrounds the default input the threshold approach can indicate the likely importance of the uncertainty.

In the sensitivity analysis both the QALY gain and treatment efficacy were varied for different disease prevalence and savings per averted case. This shows that the cost effectiveness is not greatly influenced by the savings per case averted but that a considerably lower QALY gain and/or treatment efficacy is required for cost effectiveness at higher disease prevalence.

This analysis has compared screening for complement deficiency in children who survive a meningococcal disease versus no screening. The validity of ICER estimates always depends on the choice of the appropriate comparator and it should be borne in mind that the ICER for screening for complement deficiency in children who survive a meningococcal infection could be markedly different when compared against some alternative, possibly more appropriate, strategy. However, this is less of an issue if screening for complement deficiency in children who survive a meningococcal infection was judged not cost-effective relative to no screening. The rationale for selective testing is that there exists a clearly identified sub-group with a higher pre-test probability of complement deficiency. If selective testing is not cost-effective relative to no testing then routine testing will not be cost-effective. If selective testing is cost-effective relative to no testing the decision between selective and routine testing hinges on whether the additional cases identified by routine testing can be achieved at an acceptable cost, which we take to be £20,000 per QALY in this case. This analysis was not presented here because the GDG did not think the evidence justified a routine screening approach and the cost effectiveness of screening for complement deficiency could be highly cost-effective in a scenario where there was a high risk of reinfection and where treatment was highly efficacious.

A final point to note relates to the use of a £20,000 per QALY willingness to pay threshold. This is not an absolute decision rule as far as NICE is concerned. However, interventions with a cost per QALY of less than £20,000 per QALY would usually be considered cost-effective. If the intervention had a cost per QALY of more than £20,000 but less than £30,000 per QALY then it may be considered cost-effective under certain circumstances (see NICE Guidelines Manual.
If the intervention had an ICER of above £30,000 per QALY than a stronger case for considering other factors would have to be made to justify the intervention for NHS resource use.